

Mingchen Xia

# Singularities in global pluripotential theory

– Lectures at Zhejiang University –

March 20, 2024



# Preface

This book is an extended version of my lecture notes at Zhejiang university. The initial goal was to write a self-contained reference for the participants of the lectures.

In this book, I would like to present my point of view towards the *global* pluripotential theories. There are three different but interrelated theories which deserve this name. They are

- (1) the pluripotential theory on compact Kähler manifolds,
- (2) the pluripotential theory on the Berkovich analytification of projective varieties, and
- (3) the toric pluripotential theory on toric varieties.

We will begin by explaining the picture in the first case. Let us fix a connected compact Kähler manifold  $X$ . The central objects are the *quasi-plurisubharmonic functions* on  $X$ .

We are mostly interested in the *singularities* of such functions, that is, the places where a quasi-plurisubharmonic function  $\varphi$  tends to  $-\infty$  and how it tends to  $-\infty$ .

Singularities occur naturally in mathematics. In geometric applications,  $X$  should be regarded as the compactified moduli space of certain geometric objects. A Zariski open subset  $U \subseteq X$  would parametrize smooth objects. The natural metric on the associated polarizing line bundle is usually smooth only on  $U$ , not on  $X$ . In case we have suitable positivities, the classical Grauert–Riemann extension theorem allows us to extend the metric outside  $U$ , but at the cost of introducing singularities.

The classification of singularities is a huge project. Locally near the singularities we know that quasi-plurisubharmonic functions present very complicated behaviours. There are many local invariants associated with the singularities. The most notable ones are the Lelong numbers and the multiplier ideal sheaves. These invariants only reflect the rough behaviour of a quasi-plurisubharmonic function. As an example, a quasi-plurisubharmonic function with log-log singularities have the same local invariants as a bounded one.

The situation changes drastically in the global setting, namely on compact manifolds. In the global setting, there are three different ways to classify quasi-plurisubharmonic functions according to their singularities:

- (1) The singularity type characterizing the singularities up to a bounded term.
- (2) The  $P$ -singularity type associated with global masses.
- (3) The  $\mathcal{I}$ -singularity type associated with all non-Archimedean data.

The classification becomes rougher and rougher as we goes down. In the first case, we say two quasi-plurisubharmonic functions have the same singularity type if their difference lies in  $L^\infty$ . The corresponding equivalence class gives us essentially the finest information of the singularities we can expect. The other two relations are more delicate, we will study them in detail in [Chapter 6](#).

A natural ideal to study the singularities would consists of the following steps:

- (1) classify the  $\mathcal{I}$ -singularity types,
- (2) classify the  $P$ -singularity types within a given  $\mathcal{I}$ -singularity class, and
- (3) classify the singularity types within a given  $P$ -equivalence class.

The Step 3 is well-studied in the literature in the last decade under the name of pluripotential theory with prescribed singularities. There are a large number of excellent results in this direction. In some sense, this step is already well-understood.

We will give a complete answer to Step 1 in [Chapter 7](#), where we show that  $\mathcal{I}$ -singularity types can be described very explicitly.

It remains to consider Step 2. This is not an easy task. It is easy to construct examples where a given  $\mathcal{I}$ -equivalence class consists of a huge amount of  $P$ -equivalence classes.

On the other hand, by contrast, in the toric pluripotential theory and non-Archimedean pluripotential theory, Step 2 is essentially trivial: an  $\mathcal{I}$ -equivalence class consists of a single  $P$ -equivalence class.

This apparent anomaly and numerous examples show that in the pluripotential theory on compact Kähler manifolds, certain singularities are pathological. Within each  $\mathcal{I}$ -equivalence, we could pick up a canonical  $P$ -equivalence class, the quasi-plurisubharmonic functions in which are said to be  $\mathcal{I}$ -good. We will study the theory of  $\mathcal{I}$ -good singularities in [Chapter 7](#). As we will see later on, almost all (if not all) singularities occurring naturally are  $\mathcal{I}$ -good.

My personal impression is that we are in a situation quite similar to the familiar one in real analysis. There are many non-measurable functions, but in real life, unless you construct a pathological function by force, you only encounter measurable functions. Similarly, although there exist many non- $\mathcal{I}$ -good singularities, you would never encounter them in reality!

Having established this general principle, we could content ourselves in the framework of  $\mathcal{I}$ -good singularities. Then Step 2 is essentially solved and we have a pretty good understanding of the classification of singularities.

Of course, this classification is a bit abstract. To put it into use, we will introduce two general techniques allowing us to make induction on  $\dim X$ . For a prime divisor  $Y$  in general position, we have the so-called analytic Bertini theorem relation quasi-plurisubharmonic functions on  $X$  and on  $Y$ . For a non-generic  $Y$ , we have the technique of trace operators. These techniques will be explained in [Chapter 8](#).

In the toric situation, these constructions and methods are quite straightforward and are likely known to experts before I entered this field, see [Chapter 5](#) for the toric pluripotential theory on ample line bundles.

The corresponding toric pluripotential theory on big line bundles has never been written down in the literature. A foundational result was proved in my paper on partial Okounkov bodies, which allows us to treat this problem rigorously. We will develop the theory of partial Okounkov bodies in [Chapter 11](#) and the general toric pluripotential theory in [Chapter 12](#).

Finally, we give applications to non-Archimedean pluripotential theory in [Chapter 13](#) based on the theory of test curves developed in [Chapter 10](#).

*Minghen Xia*  
in Hangzhou, March 2024



## **Acknowledgements**

### Special acknowledgements

Finalement, je voudrais remercier Sébastien Boucksom et Madame Natalia Hristic à Sorbonne université, qui m'ont aidé à contacter le ministère de l'intérieur en France. Sans leur aide, je serais resté bloqué en France en raison de l'efficacité extraordinaire du gouvernement français, surtout de la préfecture de Créteil et ce livre n'aurait jamais vu le jour.





# Contents

## Part I Preliminaries

<b>1</b>	<b>Plurisubharmonic functions</b>	3
1.1	The definition of plurisubharmonic functions	3
1.1.1	The 1-dimensional case	3
1.1.2	The higher dimensional case	4
1.1.3	The manifold case	5
1.2	Properties of plurisubharmonic functions	6
1.3	Plurifine topology	10
1.3.1	Plurifine topology on domains	10
1.3.2	Plurifine topology on manifolds	13
1.4	Lelong numbers and multiplier ideal sheaves	14
1.5	Quasi-plurisubharmonic functions	18
1.6	Analytic singularities	19
1.7	The space of currents	22
1.8	Plurisubharmonic metrics on line bundles	23
<b>2</b>	<b>Non-pluripolar products</b>	25
2.1	Bedford–Taylor theory	25
2.2	The definition of non-pluripolar products	26
2.3	Properties of non-pluripolar products	28
<b>3</b>	<b>The envelope operators</b>	33
3.1	The $P$ -envelope	33
3.1.1	The definition of the $P$ -envelope	33
3.1.2	Properties of the $P$ -envelope	35
3.1.3	Relative full mass classes	39
3.2	The $\mathcal{I}$ -envelope	41
3.2.1	$\mathcal{I}$ -equivalence	41
3.2.2	The definition the $\mathcal{I}$ -envelope	42
3.2.3	Properties of the $\mathcal{I}$ -envelope	45

<b>4</b>	<b>Geodesic rays in the space of potentials</b>	47
4.1	Subgeodesics	47
4.2	Geodesics in the space of potentials	48
4.3	The relative setting	53
<b>5</b>	<b>Toric pluripotential theory on ample line bundles</b>	59
5.1	Toric plurisubharmonic functions	60
5.2	Envelopes	62
5.3	Full mass potentials	65
5.4	Geodesics	66
<b>Part II The theory of <math>\mathcal{I}</math>-good singularities</b>		
<b>6</b>	<b>Comparison of singularities</b>	71
6.1	The $P$ - and $\mathcal{I}$ -partial orders	71
6.1.1	The definitions of the partial orders	71
6.1.2	Properties of the partial orders	75
6.2	The $d_S$ -pseudometric	77
6.2.1	The definition of the $d_S$ -pseudometric	77
6.2.2	Convergence theorems	84
6.2.3	Continuity of invariants	91
<b>7</b>	<b><math>\mathcal{I}</math>-good singularities</b>	93
7.1	The notion of $\mathcal{I}$ -good singularities	93
7.2	Properties of $\mathcal{I}$ -good singularities	96
7.3	The volume of Hermitian big line bundles	98
<b>8</b>	<b>The trace operator</b>	103
8.1	The definition of the trace operator	103
8.2	Properties of the trace operator	105
8.3	Restricted volumes	108
8.4	Analytic Bertini theorem	114
<b>9</b>	<b>The theory of b-divisors</b>	119
9.1	The intersection theory of b-divisors	119
9.2	The singularity b-divisors	121
<b>10</b>	<b>Test curves</b>	127
10.1	The notion of test curves	127
10.2	Ross–Witt Nyström correspondence	130
10.3	$\mathcal{I}$ -model test curves	136
10.4	Operations on test curves	137

<b>11 The theory of Okounkov bodies</b>	147
11.1 The Okounkov bodies of almost semigroups	147
11.1.1 Generality on semigroups	147
11.1.2 Okounkov bodies of semigroups	149
11.1.3 Okounkov bodies of almost semigroups	151
11.2 Flags and valuations	153
11.2.1 The algebraic setting	153
11.2.2 The transcendental setting	154
11.3 Algebraic partial Okounkov bodies	158
11.3.1 Construction of partial Okounkov bodies	158
11.3.2 Basic properties of partial Okounkov bodies	161
11.3.3 The Hausdorff convergence property of partial Okounkov bodies	164
11.3.4 Recover Lelong numbers from partial Okounkov bodies	169
11.4 Transcendental partial Okounkov bodies	171
11.4.1 The traditional approach to the Okounkov body problem	171
11.4.2 Definitions of partial Okounkov bodies	172
11.4.3 The valuative characterization	177
11.5 Okounkov test curves	181
11.6 Okounkov bodies of $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisors	185
 <b>Part III Applications</b>	
<b>12 Toric pluripotential theory on big line bundles</b>	191
12.1 Toric partial Okounkov bodies	191
12.1.1 Newton bodies	191
12.1.2 Partial Okounkov bodies	192
12.2 The pluripotential theory	195
 <b>13 Non-Archimedean pluripotential theory</b>	199
13.1 The definition of non-Archimedean metrics	199
13.2 Operations on non-Archimedean metrics	202
13.3 Duistermaat–Heckman measures	208
 <b>A Convex functions and convex bodies</b>	211
A.1 The notion of convex functions	211
A.2 Legendre transform	214
A.3 Classes of convex functions	216
A.4 Monge–Ampère measures	218
A.5 Separation lemmata	219
A.6 Convex bodies	219
 <b>B Pluripotential theory on unibranch spaces</b>	223
B.1 Complex spaces	223
B.2 Plurisubharmonic functions	224
B.3 Extension of the results in the smooth setting	225

<b>Comments</b> .....	<b>227</b>
<b>References</b> .....	<b>231</b>

## Conventions

In the whole book we adopt the following conventions:

- A complex space is always assumed to be *reduced* and *Hausdorff*.
- A *modification* of a complex space  $X$  is proper bimeromorphic morphism  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  that is obtained from a finite composition of blow-ups with smooth centers.
- A *subnet* of a net refers to a cofinal subnet.
- A domain in  $\mathbb{C}^n$  refers to a connected open subset.
- A *submanifold* of a complex manifold means a complex submanifold.

We will use the following notations throughout the book:

- If  $I$  is a non-empty set, then  $\text{Fin}(I)$  denote the net of finite non-empty subsets of  $I$ , ordered by inclusion.
- $\text{dd}^c$  means  $(2\pi)^{-1}i\partial\bar{\partial}$ .



# **Part I**

## **Preliminaries**

In this part, we recall a few preliminaries about the notion of plurisubharmonic functions.



# Chapter 1

## Plurisubharmonic functions

chap:psh

### 1.1 The definition of plurisubharmonic functions

sec:pshdef

In this section, we recall the notion of plurisubharmonic functions. We will also take care of the 0-dimensional case, which makes a number of induction arguments easier to carry out.

#### 1.1.1 The 1-dimensional case

Let  $\Omega$  be a domain (a connected non-empty open subset) in  $\mathbb{C}$ .

def:subhar1

**Definition 1.1.1** A *subharmonic function* on  $\Omega$  is a function  $\varphi: \Omega \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  satisfying the following three conditions:

- (1)  $\varphi \not\equiv -\infty$ ;
- (2)  $\varphi$  is upper semi-continuous;
- (3)  $\varphi$  satisfies the *sub-mean value inequality*: for any  $a \in \Omega$  and  $r > 0$  such that  $B(a, r) \Subset \Omega$ , we have

$$\varphi(a) \leq \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \varphi(a + re^{i\theta}) d\theta.$$

We will denote the set of subharmonic functions on  $\Omega$  as  $\text{SH}(\Omega)$ .

In fact, for each  $a \in \Omega$ , in 3, it suffices to require the sub-mean value inequality for all small enough  $r$ .

Intuitively, at a specific point  $a \in \Omega$ , the second condition gives a lower bound of the value of  $\varphi(a)$  using the nearby values of  $\varphi$ , while the third condition gives an upper bound. This intuition leads to the following rigidity theorem:

thm:sh\_rigid

**Theorem 1.1.1** Let  $\varphi: \Omega \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  be a measurable function. Then the following are equivalent:

- (1)  $\varphi$  is locally integrable and  $\Delta\varphi \geq 0$ ;
- (2)  $\varphi$  coincides almost everywhere with a subharmonic function  $\psi$  on  $\Omega$ .

Moreover, the subharmonic function  $\psi$  is unique.

Here in condition 1,  $\Delta\varphi$  is the Laplacian in the sense of currents. This is a special case of [Theorem 1.1.2](#) below.

This theorem gives a very useful way to construct subharmonic functions.

### 1.1.2 The higher dimensional case

We will fix  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and a domain  $\Omega$  (non-empty connected open subset) in  $\mathbb{C}^n$ .

def:psh

**Definition 1.1.2** When  $n \geq 1$ , a *plurisubharmonic function* on  $\Omega$  is a function  $\varphi: \Omega \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  satisfying the following three conditions:

- (1)  $\varphi \not\equiv -\infty$ ;
- (2)  $\varphi$  is upper semi-continuous;
- (3) For any complex line  $L \subseteq \mathbb{C}^n$  and any connected component  $U$  of  $L \cap \Omega$ , the restriction  $\varphi|_U$  is subharmonic.

When  $n = 0$ , the only domain  $\Omega$  is the singleton. A *plurisubharmonic function* on  $\Omega$  is a real-valued function on  $\Omega$ .

The set of plurisubharmonic functions on  $\Omega$  is denoted by  $\text{PSH}(\Omega)$ .

A plurisubharmonic function is also called a psh function for short.

*Example 1.1.1* When  $n = 0$ , we have a canonical bijection  $\text{PSH}(\Omega) \cong \mathbb{R}$ .

*Example 1.1.2* When  $n = 1$ , we have  $\text{PSH}(\Omega) = \text{SH}(\Omega)$ .

Similar to [Theorem 1.1.1](#), we have a rigidity theorem for plurisubharmonic functions as well.

thm:psh\_rigid

**Theorem 1.1.2** Let  $\varphi: \Omega \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  be a measurable function. Then the following are equivalent:

- (1)  $\varphi$  is locally integrable and  $\text{dd}^c \varphi \geq 0$ ;
- (2)  $\varphi$  coincides almost everywhere with a plurisubharmonic function  $\psi$  on  $\Omega$ .

Moreover, the plurisubharmonic function  $\psi$  is unique.

For the proof, we refer to [\[GZ17, Proposition 1.43\]](#).

Plurisubharmonic functions have nice functorialities:

prop:func\_domain

**Proposition 1.1.1** Let  $n' \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $\Omega' \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n'}$  be a domain. Given any holomorphic map  $f: \Omega' \rightarrow \Omega$  and any  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(\Omega')$  exactly one of the following cases occurs:

- (1)  $f^* \varphi \equiv -\infty$ ;
- (2)  $f^* \varphi \in \text{PSH}(\Omega)$ .

We refer to [GZ17, Proposition 1.44] for the proof<sup>1</sup>.

For each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $a \in \mathbb{C}^n$  and  $r > 0$ , we write

$$B_n(a, r) = \{z \in \mathbb{C}^n : |z - a| < r\}.$$

prop:ballpshconvex

**Proposition 1.1.2** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(B_n(a, r_0))$  for some  $r_0 > 0$ . Then the function*

$$(-\infty, \log r_0) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, \quad \log r \mapsto \sup_{B_n(a, r)} \varphi$$

*is convex and increasing.*

See [Bou17, Corollary 2.4].

### 1.1.3 The manifold case

Let  $X$  be a complex manifold.

def:pshmfd

**Definition 1.1.3** A *plurisubharmonic function* on  $X$  is a function  $\varphi: X \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  if for any  $x \in X$ , there is an open neighbourhood  $U$  of  $x$  in  $X$ , an integer  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , a domain  $\Omega \subseteq \mathbb{C}^n$  and a biholomorphic map  $F: \Omega \rightarrow U$  such that  $F^*(\varphi|_U) \in \text{PSH}(X, \Omega)$ .

The set of plurisubharmonic functions on  $X$  is denoted by  $\text{PSH}(X)$ .

*Example 1.1.3* When  $X$  is a domain in  $\mathbb{C}^n$ , the notions of plurisubharmonic functions in **Definition 1.1.3** and in **Definition 1.1.2** coincide.

*Example 1.1.4* Write  $\{X_i\}_{i \in I}$  for the set of connected components of  $X$ . Then we have a natural bijection

$$\text{PSH}(X) \cong \prod_{i \in I} \text{PSH}(X_i).$$

Here the product is in the category of sets. In particular, if  $X = \emptyset$ , then  $\text{PSH}(X) = \emptyset$ .

This example allows us to reduce to the case of connected manifolds when studying general plurisubharmonic functions.

prop:pullbackpsh

**Proposition 1.1.3** *Let  $Y$  be another complex manifold and  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  be a holomorphic map. Then for any  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ , exactly one of the following cases occurs:*

- (1)  $f^*\varphi$  is identically  $-\infty$  on some connected component of  $Y$ ;
- (2)  $f^*\varphi \in \text{PSH}(Y)$ .

This proposition follows easily from **Proposition 1.1.1**. We leave the details to the readers.

**Theorem 1.1.2** implies immediately the general form of the rigidity theorem.

<sup>1</sup> We remind the readers that the statement of [GZ17, Proposition 1.44] is flawed.

thm:psh\_rigid\_gen

**Theorem 1.1.3** Let  $\varphi: X \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  be a measurable function. Then the following are equivalent:

- (1)  $\varphi$  is locally integrable and  $\text{dd}^c \varphi \geq 0$ ;
- (2)  $\varphi$  coincides almost everywhere with a plurisubharmonic function  $\psi$  on  $X$ .

Moreover, the plurisubharmonic function  $\psi$  is unique.

def:pluripolarsets

**Definition 1.1.4** A subset  $E \subseteq X$  is *pluripolar* if for any  $x \in X$ , there is an open neighbourhood  $U$  of  $x$  in  $X$  and a function  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(U)$  such that

$$\psi|_{E \cap U} \equiv -\infty.$$

A subset  $F \subseteq X$  is *co-pluripolar* if  $X \setminus F$  is pluripolar.

prop:pluripolarunion

**Proposition 1.1.4** Let  $\{E_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}}$  be a sequence of pluripolar sets in  $X$ . Then

$$E := \bigcup_{i=1}^{\infty} E_i$$

is pluripolar.

**Proof** The problem is local, so we may assume that  $X \subseteq \mathbb{C}^n$  is a domain. In this case, by Josefson's theorem [GZ17, Corollary 4.41] that we can choose  $\psi_i \in \text{PSH}(\Omega)$  such that

$$\psi_i|_{E_i} \equiv -\infty, \quad \psi_i \leq 0$$

for all  $i > 0$ . After shrinking  $X$ , we may guarantee that  $\psi_i \in L^1(\Omega)$  for all  $i > 0$ . After rescaling, we may also assume that  $\|\psi_i\|_{L^1} \leq 1$  for all  $i > 0$ .

We then define

$$\psi = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} 2^{-i} \psi_i.$$

Then  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  according to [Proposition 1.2.1](#) and  $\psi|_E = -\infty$ .  $\square$

## 1.2 Properties of plurisubharmonic functions

In this section, we explore the basic properties of plurisubharmonic functions.

Let  $X$  be a complex manifold in this section.

prop:pshfunction\_closedseq

**Proposition 1.2.1**

- (1) Assume that  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i \in I}$  is a non-empty family in  $\text{PSH}(X)$  that is locally uniformly bounded from above. Then  $\sup_{i \in I} \varphi_i \in \text{PSH}(X)$ ;
- (2) Assume that  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i \in I}$  is a decreasing net in  $\text{PSH}(X)$  such that  $\lim_{i \in I} \varphi_i$  is not identically  $-\infty$  on each connected component of  $X$ , then  $\lim_{i \in I} \varphi_i \in \text{PSH}(X)$ .

Here  $\sup^*$  denotes the upper semicontinuous regularization of the supremum. When  $I$  is a finite family, observe that

$$\sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_i = \sup_{i \in I} \varphi_i.$$

When  $I = \{1, \dots, m\}$ , we write

$$\varphi_1 \vee \dots \vee \varphi_m := \sup_{i \in I} \varphi_i.$$

We refer to [\[GZ17, Proposition 1.28, Proposition 1.40\]](#)<sup>2</sup>.

prop:Choquet

**Proposition 1.2.2 (Choquet's lemma)** *Assume that  $X$  admits a countable covering by open balls. Assume that  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i \in I}$  is a non-empty family in  $\text{PSH}(X)$  that is locally uniformly bounded from above. There exists a countable subfamily  $J \subseteq I$  such that*

$$\sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_i = \sup_{j \in J}^* \varphi_j.$$

See [\[GZ17, Lemma 4.31\]](#) for the proof.

prop:supsupstardiff

**Proposition 1.2.3** *Let  $\{\varphi_i\}$  be a family in  $\text{PSH}(X)$  that is locally uniformly bounded from above. Then the set*

$$\left\{ x \in X : \sup_{i \in I} \varphi_i < \sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_i \right\}$$

*is pluripolar.*

See [\[GZ17, Corollary 4.28\]](#).

prop:pshlocLp

**Proposition 1.2.4** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ , then for any  $p \geq 1$ ,  $\varphi \in L_{\text{loc}}^p(X)$ .*

See [\[GZ17, Theorem 1.46, Theorem 1.48\]](#).

prop:pshfuncdetdense

**Proposition 1.2.5** *Suppose that  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ . Assume that there is a dense subset  $E \subseteq X$  such that  $\varphi|_E \leq \psi|_E$ , then  $\varphi \leq \psi$ .*

**Proof** The problem is local, so we may assume that  $X$  is a domain in  $\mathbb{C}^n$ .

We may assume that  $\varphi|_E = \psi|_E$  after replacing  $\varphi$  by  $\varphi \vee \psi$ . Then we need to show that

$$\varphi = \psi.$$

It follows from [\[GZ17, Theorem 4.20\]](#) that this holds outside a pluripolar set  $Y \subseteq X$ . In particular,  $\varphi = \psi$  almost everywhere. It follows from the uniqueness statement in [Theorem 1.1.3](#) that  $\varphi = \psi$ .  $\square$

<sup>2</sup> In [\[GZ17, Proposition 1.28\]](#), the second part is only stated for sequences, the net version is obvious using the sub-mean value inequality

thm:GReuten

**Theorem 1.2.1 (Grauert–Remmert)** *Let  $Z$  be an analytic subset in  $X$  and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X \setminus Z)$ . Then function  $\varphi$  admits an extension to  $\text{PSH}(X)$  in the following two cases:*

- (1) *The set  $Z$  has codimension at least 2 everywhere;*
- (2) *The set  $Z$  has codimension at least 1 everywhere and is locally bounded from above on an open neighbourhood of  $Z$ .*

*In both cases, the extension is unique.*

**Proof** The extension is unique thanks to [Proposition 1.2.5](#).

(2). The problem is local, so we may assume that  $X$  is a domain in  $\mathbb{C}^n$  and there is a non-zero holomorphic function  $f$  vanishing identically on  $Z$ . For each  $\epsilon > 0$ , we claim that the function  $\varphi_\epsilon$  defined by

$$\varphi_\epsilon(x) := \begin{cases} \varphi(x) + \epsilon \log |f(x)|^2, & x \in X \setminus Z; \\ -\infty, & x \in Z \end{cases}$$

is plurisubharmonic on  $X$ . By [Definition 1.1.2](#), it suffices to verify the case  $n = 1$ . In this case, we may assume that  $Z = \{0\}$ . It is clear that  $\varphi_\epsilon \in \text{PSH}(X \setminus Z)$ . It suffices to verify the sub-mean value inequality at 0, which is immediate.

Next observe that the sequence  $\varphi_\epsilon$  is increasing as  $\epsilon \searrow 0$  and  $\varphi_\epsilon$  is locally uniformly bounded from above. It follows from [Proposition 1.2.1](#) that  $\tilde{\varphi} := \sup_{\epsilon > 0} \varphi_\epsilon \in \text{PSH}(X)$ . Moreover,  $\tilde{\varphi}$  clearly extends  $\varphi$ .

(1). It suffices to verify that  $\varphi$  is locally bounded from above near each point of  $Z$ . The problem is local, so we may assume that  $X$  is a domain in  $\mathbb{C}^n$ .

Assume that our assertion fails. Take  $z \in Z$  so that there exists a sequence  $(x_j)_j$  in  $X \setminus Z$  such that

$$\lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} \varphi(x_j) = \infty.$$

Since  $Z$  has codimension at least 2, we could take a complex line  $L$  passing through  $z$  and intersects  $Z$  only on a discrete set. After shrinking  $X$ , we may assume that

$$L \cap Z = \{z\}.$$

Take an open ball  $B_n(z, r) \Subset X$ . After adding a constant to  $\varphi$ , we may guarantee that  $\varphi < 0$  on  $L \cap \partial B_n(z, r)$ . Since  $\varphi$  is upper semi-continuous, we could find an open neighbourhood  $U$  of  $L \cap \partial B_n(z, r)$  such that

$$\varphi|_U < 0.$$

For each  $j \geq 1$ , take a complex line  $L_j$  passing through  $x_j$  such that  $L_j \rightarrow L$  as  $j \rightarrow \infty$ . Here the convergence is in the obvious sense. Then for large enough  $j$ , we know have

$$L_j \cap \partial B_n(z, r) \subseteq U.$$

It follows from the sub-mean value inequality that  $\varphi(x_j) < 0$  for large enough  $j$ , which is a contradiction.  $\square$

lma:invariantpshfunfinite

**Lemma 1.2.1** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}((\Delta^*)^n)$  be an  $(S^1)^n$ -invariant psh function. Then  $\varphi$  is finite everywhere.*

**Proof** It clearly suffices to handle the case  $n = 1$ . In this case, by [HK76, Theorem 2.12], the map

$$\log r \mapsto \int_0^1 \varphi(r \exp(2\pi i \theta)) d\theta = \varphi(r)$$

is a convex function of  $\log r$ . So the set  $\{r \in (0, 1) : \varphi(r) = -\infty\}$  is convex. But  $\varphi$  is almost everywhere finite by Proposition 1.2.4. Since  $\varphi$  is  $S^1$ -invariant,  $\varphi|_{(0,1)}$  is almost everywhere finite. It follows from the convexity that it is everywhere finite.  $\square$

cor:L1limipp

**Corollary 1.2.1** *Let  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}}$  be a sequence in  $\text{PSH}(X)$  such that  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{L^1_{\text{loc}}} \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ . Then the set*

$$\left\{ x \in X : \varphi(x) \neq \overline{\lim_{j \rightarrow \infty}} \varphi_j(x) \right\}$$

*is pluripolar.*

**Proof** We first observe that  $(\varphi_j)_j$  is locally uniformly bounded from above. This follows from [GZ17, Exercise 1.20].

For each  $j \geq 1$ , let

$$\psi_j = \sup_{k \geq j}^* \varphi_k.$$

Then  $\psi_j \in \text{PSH}(X)$  by Proposition 1.2.1. Moreover,  $(\psi_j)_j$  is a decreasing sequence and  $\psi_j \geq \varphi_j$  for all  $j$ . So by Proposition 1.2.1 again,  $\psi := \inf_j \psi_j \in \text{PSH}(X)$ . On the other hand, by Proposition 1.2.3, there is a pluripolar set  $Z \subseteq X$  such that for any  $x \in X \setminus Z$ , we have  $\psi(x) = \overline{\lim_j} \varphi_j(x)$ . Since  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{L^1_{\text{loc}}} \varphi$ , we can find a set  $Y \subseteq X$  with zero Lebesgue measure such that  $\varphi_j(x) \rightarrow \varphi(x)$  for all  $x \in X \setminus Y$ .

In particular, for any  $x \in X \setminus (Y \cup Z)$ , we have

$$\psi(x) = \varphi(x).$$

But thanks to Proposition 1.2.5, the equality holds everywhere. Therefore, for all  $x \in X \setminus Z$ ,

$$\varphi(x) = \overline{\lim_{j \rightarrow \infty}} \varphi_j(x).$$

prop:Kis

**Proposition 1.2.6 (Kiselman's principle)** *Let  $\Omega \subseteq \mathbb{C}^m \times \mathbb{C}^n$  be a pseudoconvex domain. Assume that for each  $z \in \mathbb{C}^m$ , the set*

$$\Omega_z := \{w \in \mathbb{C}^n : (z, w) \in \Omega\}$$

*has the form  $E + i\mathbb{R}^n$ , where  $E \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  is a subset. Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(\Omega)$ , assume that  $\varphi$  is independent of the imaginary part of the variable in  $\mathbb{C}^n$ . Let  $\Omega'$  be the projection of  $\Omega$  to  $\mathbb{C}^m$ . Define  $\psi : \Omega' \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  as follows:*

$$\psi(z) = \inf_{w \in \Omega_z} \varphi(z, w).$$

Then either  $\psi \equiv -\infty$  or  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(\Omega')$ .

See [DemBook](#) [DemT2b, Theorem 7.5].

## 1.3 Plurifine topology

### 1.3.1 Plurifine topology on domains

Let  $\Omega \subseteq \mathbb{C}^n$  ( $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ) be a domain.

def:pftopologydomain

**Definition 1.3.1** The *plurifine topology* on  $\Omega$  is the weakest topology making all finite psh functions on  $\Omega$  continuous.

We want to distinguish the Euclidean topology from the plurifine topology. In the whole book, topological notions without adjectives refer to those with respect to the Euclidean topology. We always include the word  $\mathcal{F}$  in order to denote those with respect to the plurifine topology. For example, we will say  $\mathcal{F}$ -open subset,  $\mathcal{F}$ -neighbourhood,  $\mathcal{F}$ -closure, etc. The  $\mathcal{F}$ -closure of a set  $E \subseteq \Omega$  will be denoted by  $\bar{E}^{\mathcal{F}}$ .

A priori, we should include  $\Omega$  into the notations as well, but as we will see shortly in [Corollary 1.3.1](#), this is usually unnecessary.

prop:pf\_finer

**Proposition 1.3.1** *The plurifine topology is finer than the Euclidean topology.*

**Proof** It suffices to show that the unit ball  $\{z \in \mathbb{C}^n : |z| < 1\}$  is  $\mathcal{F}$ -open. This follows from the observation that this set can be written as

$$\{\psi < 0\} \text{ with } \psi(z) := (\log |z|) \vee (-1).$$

**Definition 1.3.2** A subset  $E \subseteq \Omega$  is *thin* at  $x \in \Omega$  if one of the following conditions holds:

- (1)  $x \notin \bar{E}$ ;
- (2)  $x \in \bar{E}$  and there is an open neighbourhood  $U \subseteq \Omega$  of  $x$  and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(U)$  such that

$$\overline{\lim}_{y \rightarrow x, y \in E} \varphi(y) < \varphi(x).$$

We say  $E$  is *thin* if it is thin at all  $x \in \Omega$ .

In the second case, the function  $\varphi$  can be very much improved.

prop:BTthin

**Proposition 1.3.2 (Bedford–Taylor)** *Consider a set  $E \subseteq \Omega$  and  $x \in \bar{E}$ . Assume that  $E$  is thin at  $x$ , then there is  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(\mathbb{C}^n)$  satisfying the following properties:*



- (1)  $\varphi$  is locally bounded outside a neighbourhood of  $x$ ;
- (2)  $\varphi(x) > -\infty$ ;
- (3)  $\lim_{y \rightarrow x, y \in E} \varphi(y) = -\infty$ .

**Proof** By definition, there is an open neighbourhood  $U \subseteq \Omega$  of  $x$  and  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(U)$  such that

$$\overline{\lim}_{y \rightarrow x, y \in E} \psi(y) < \psi(x).$$

Without loss of generality, we may assume that  $x = 0$ ,  $U$  is the unit ball in  $\mathbb{C}^n$ ,  $\psi < 0$  and  $\psi|_{U \cap E} < -1$ , while  $\psi(0) = -\eta > -1$ .

As  $\psi$  is upper semicontinuous, we may choose  $\delta_j > 0$  for all large enough  $j \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  such that  $\psi(y) < -\eta + 2^{-j-1}$  when  $y \in \mathbb{C}^n$  satisfies  $|y| < \delta_j$ . Now we let

$$\varphi_j(z) := \begin{cases} \left( \frac{2^{-j-1}}{\log |\delta_j|} \log |z| \right) \vee (\psi(z) + 2^{-j}), & \text{if } |z| < \delta_j, \\ \frac{2^{-j-1}}{\log |\delta_j|} \log |z|, & \text{if } |z| \geq \delta_j. \end{cases}$$

Then  $\varphi_j \in \text{PSH}(\mathbb{C}^n)$  and  $\varphi_j(0) = 2^{-j}$ . It suffices to take  $\varphi = \sum_j \varphi_j$ .

thm:Cartan

**Theorem 1.3.1 (Cartan)** Consider  $x \in \Omega$  and a set  $E \subseteq \Omega$ . Assume that  $x \in E$ . Then the following are equivalent:

- (1)  $E$  is an  $\mathcal{F}$ -neighbourhood of  $x$ ;
- (2)  $\Omega \setminus E$  is thin at  $x$ .

**Proof** (2)  $\implies$  (1). We may assume that  $x \in \overline{\Omega \setminus E}$ . Otherwise, our assertion follows from [Proposition 1.3.1](#).

By [Proposition 1.3.2](#), there is  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(\mathbb{C}^n)$  and an open neighbourhood  $U \subseteq \Omega$  of  $x$  such that

$$\varphi(x) > \sup_{y \in U \cap (\Omega \setminus E)} \varphi(y) =: \lambda.$$

Let  $F = \{y \in \Omega : \varphi(y) > \lambda\}$ . Then  $x \in F$  and  $F$  is  $\mathcal{F}$ -open. Moreover,  $U \cap F \subseteq E$ . By [Proposition 1.3.1](#), we conclude (1).

(1)  $\implies$  (2). We may always replace  $E$  by smaller  $\mathcal{F}$ -neighbourhoods of  $x$ . In particular, we may assume that  $E$  has the following form

$$\{y \in U : \varphi_1(y) > \lambda_1, \dots, \varphi_m(y) > \lambda_m\},$$

where  $U \subseteq \Omega$  is an open neighbourhood of  $x$ ,  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_m$  are finite psh functions on  $\Omega$  and  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_m \in \mathbb{R}$ . Since a finite union of thin sets is still thin, we may assume that  $m = 1$ . In this case,  $\Omega \setminus E$  is clearly thin at  $x$ .  $\square$

thm:pf\_basis

**Theorem 1.3.2** A basis of the plurifine topology on  $\Omega$  is given by sets of the following form

$$\{x \in U : \varphi(x) > 0\}, \tag{1.1}$$

{eq:basis\_fine}

where  $U \subseteq \Omega$  is an open subset and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(U)$ .

**Proof** We first show that sets of the form (1.1) are  $\mathcal{F}$ -open. By [Theorem 1.3.1](#), it suffices to show its complement in  $\Omega$  is thin at  $x$ , which is obvious.

Now consider  $x \in \Omega$  and an  $\mathcal{F}$ -open neighbourhood  $V \subseteq \Omega$  of  $x$ . We want to find a set of the form (1.1) contained in  $V$  and containing  $x$ .

Write  $E = \Omega \setminus V$ . In case  $a \in \text{Int } V$ , there is nothing to prove. So we may assume that  $a \in \bar{E}$ . By [Theorem 1.3.1](#),  $E$  is thin at  $x$ . By definition, there is an open neighbourhood  $U \subseteq \Omega$  of  $x$  and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(U)$  such that

$$\lim_{y \rightarrow x, y \in E \cap U} \varphi(y) < \varphi(x).$$

We may assume that  $\varphi|_{E \cap U} \leq 0 < \varphi(x)$ , Then the set  $\{y \in U : \varphi(y) > 0\}$  suffices for our purpose.  $\square$

cor:pf\_compatible

**Corollary 1.3.1** *Let  $\Omega_1 \subseteq \Omega_2 \subseteq \mathbb{C}^n$  be two non-empty open subsets. Then the plurifine topology on  $\Omega_1$  is the same as the subspace topology induced from the plurifine topology on  $\Omega_2$ .*

**Corollary 1.3.2** *Let  $L$  be an affine subspace of  $\mathbb{C}^n$ , then the plurifine topology on  $L$  is the same as the subspace topology induced from the plurifine topology on  $\mathbb{C}^n$ .*

**Proof** We may assume that  $L = \mathbb{C}^k \times \{0\}$  for some  $k \leq n$ . We write the coordinate  $z$  on  $\mathbb{C}^n$  as  $(z', z'')$  with  $z' \in \mathbb{C}^k$  and  $z'' \in \mathbb{C}^{n-k}$ .

Consider an  $\mathcal{F}$ -open set  $U \subseteq \mathbb{C}^n$  and  $x = (x', 0) \in U \cap L$ . We want to show that  $U \cap L$  (identified with a subset of  $\mathbb{C}^k$ ) is an  $\mathcal{F}$ -neighbourhood of  $x'$  in  $L$ . By [Theorem 1.3.2](#), we may assume that there are open subsets  $U' \subseteq \mathbb{C}^k$  containing  $x'$  and  $U'' \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n-k}$  containing 0 together with a psh function  $\psi$  on  $U' \times U''$  such that

$$x \in \{(z', z'') \in U' \times U'' : \psi(z', z'') > 0\} \subseteq \Omega.$$

It follows that

$$x' \in \{z' \in U' : \psi(z', 0) > 0\} \subseteq U \cap L.$$

Conversely, if  $U \subseteq \mathbb{C}^k$  is an  $\mathcal{F}$ -open subset, we claim that  $U \times \mathbb{C}^{n-k}$  is  $\mathcal{F}$ -open in  $\mathbb{C}^n$ . In fact, suppose that  $(x', x'') \in U \times \mathbb{C}^{n-k}$ . By [Theorem 1.3.1](#), we can find an open neighbourhood  $V \subseteq \mathbb{C}^k$  of  $x'$  and a psh function  $\varphi$  on  $V$  such that

$$x' \in \{y \in V : \varphi(y) > 0\} \subseteq U.$$

We define  $\psi(z', z'') := \varphi(z')$ . Then

$$(x', x'') \in \{y \in U \times \mathbb{C}^{n-k} : \psi(y) > 0\} \subseteq U \times \mathbb{C}^{n-k}.$$

cor:compactnhformbase

**Corollary 1.3.3** *Let  $\Omega \subseteq \mathbb{C}^n$  be an  $\mathcal{F}$ -open subset and  $x \in \Omega$ . Then  $x$  has a compact  $\mathcal{F}$ -neighbourhood contained in  $\Omega$ .*

**Proof** By [Theorem 1.3.2](#), we may assume that there is a locally compact open set  $U \subseteq \mathbb{C}^n$  and a psh function  $\varphi$  on  $U$  such that  $\Omega = \{y \in U : \varphi(y) > 0\}$ .

Take a compact neighbourhood  $K$  of  $x$  in  $U$ . Now  $\{y \in K : \varphi(y) \geq \varphi(x)/2\}$  is a compact  $\mathcal{F}$ -neighbourhood of  $x$  contained in  $\Omega$ .  $\square$

cor:holomappfcont

**Corollary 1.3.4** *Let  $\Omega \in \mathbb{C}^n$ ,  $\Omega' \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n'}$  be two domains and  $F: \Omega' \rightarrow \Omega$  be a surjective holomorphic map. Then  $F$  is continuous with respect to the plurifine topology.*

**Proof** It suffices to show that the inverse image  $F^{-1}(U)$  of each plurifine open subset  $U \subseteq \Omega$  is plurifine open. By [Theorem 1.3.2](#), after possibly shrinking  $\Omega$  and  $\Omega'$ , we may assume that  $U$  has the form  $\{x \in \Omega : \psi(x) > 0\}$ , where  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(\Omega)$ . Since  $F^*\psi \in \text{PSH}(\Omega')$  by [Proposition 1.1.3](#), we find that

$$F^{-1}(U) = \{y \in \Omega' : F^*\psi(y) > 0\}$$

is a plurifine open subset.  $\square$

### 1.3.2 Plurifine topology on manifolds

Let  $X$  be a complex manifold.

def:pftopologygeneral

**Definition 1.3.3** The *plurifine topology* on  $X$  is the topology with a basis consisting of sets of the form  $F^{-1}(V)$ , where  $U \subseteq X$  is an open subset and  $F: U \rightarrow \Omega$  is a biholomorphic morphism with  $\Omega \subseteq \mathbb{C}^n$  for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $V \subseteq \Omega$  is a plurifine open subset.

It follows from [Corollary 1.3.4](#) that the plurifine topologies on domains defined in [Definition 1.3.3](#) and in [Definition 1.3.1](#) coincide.

prop:pshfunFcont

**Proposition 1.3.3** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ , then  $\varphi|_{\{\varphi \neq -\infty\}}$  is  $\mathcal{F}$ -continuous.*

**Proof** The problem is local, so we may assume that  $X \subseteq \mathbb{C}^n$  is a domain and  $\varphi = \psi + g$ , where  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X)$  and  $g \in C^\infty(X)$  and  $|g| \leq C$  for some  $C > 0$ . Take an open interval  $(a, b) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ , it suffices to show that

$$U := \{x \in X : a < \varphi(x) < b\} = \{x \in X : a - g(x) < \psi(x) < b - g(x)\}$$

is  $\mathcal{F}$ -open. Take  $x \in U$ , we can find an open neighbourhood  $V$  of  $x$  in  $U$  such that

$$\sup_{y \in V} (a - g(y)) < \psi(x) < \inf_{y \in V} (b - g(y)).$$

Therefore,

$$\left\{ z \in V : \sup_{y \in V} (a - g(y)) < \psi(z) < \inf_{y \in V} (b - g(y)) \right\}$$

is an  $\mathcal{F}$ -open neighbourhood of  $z$  in  $U$ . We conclude that  $U$  is  $\mathcal{F}$ -open.  $\square$

ma:pshfunfinitelocuspdfdense

**Lemma 1.3.1** *Let  $Z \subseteq X$  be a pluripolar subset. Then*

$$\overline{X \setminus Z}^{\mathcal{F}} = X.$$

**Proof** The problem is local, so we may assume that  $X$  be a domain in  $\mathbb{C}^n$  and  $Z = \{\varphi = -\infty\}$  for some  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ . We need to show that  $\{\varphi > -\infty\}$  is  $\mathcal{F}$ -dense.

Let  $x \in X$  such that  $\varphi(x) = -\infty$  and  $U \subseteq X$  be a plurifine open neighbourhood of  $x$  in  $X$ . We need to show that  $U \cap \{\varphi > -\infty\} \neq \emptyset$ .

Thanks to **Theorem 1.3.2**, after shrinking  $U$ , we may assume that there is  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X)$  such that  $U = \{\psi > 0\}$ . Observe that  $U$  is not a pluripolar set: otherwise,  $\psi \leq 0$  almost everywhere hence everywhere by **Proposition 1.2.5**. So  $\varphi|_U \neq -\infty$ . We conclude.  $\square$

r:diffsupinfindepluripolar

**Corollary 1.3.5** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ . Set*

$$W = \{x \in X : \min\{\varphi(x), \psi(x)\} = -\infty\}$$

*Then for any pluripolar set  $Z \subseteq X$ , we have*

$$\sup_{X \setminus W} (\varphi - \psi) = \sup_{X \setminus W \cup Z} (\varphi - \psi), \quad \inf_{X \setminus W} (\varphi - \psi) = \inf_{X \setminus W \cup Z} (\varphi - \psi).$$

**Proof** This is an immediate consequence of **Lemma 1.3.1** and **Proposition 1.3.3**.  $\square$

## 1.4 Lelong numbers and multiplier ideal sheaves

There are two useful characterizations of the local singularities of plurisubharmonic functions. We will apply both of them in the sequel.

Let  $X$  be a complex manifold.

**Definition 1.4.1** Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$  and  $x \in X$ . The *Lelong number*  $\nu(\varphi, x)$  of  $\varphi$  at  $x$  is defined as follows: take an open neighbourhood  $U$  of  $x$  in  $X$  and a biholomorphic map  $F: U \rightarrow \Omega$ , where  $\Omega$  is a domain in  $\mathbb{C}^n$ . Then we define

$$\nu(\varphi, x) := \sup \left\{ \gamma \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} : \varphi|_U(F^{-1}(y)) \leq \gamma \log |y - F(x)|^2 + O(1) \text{ as } y \rightarrow F(x) \right\}. \quad (1.2)$$

{eq:nuvarphix}

Observe that  $\nu(\varphi, x)$  does not depend on the choice of  $F$ . Furthermore, it follows from **Proposition 1.4.1** below that the supremum in (1.2) is a maximum.

**Remark 1.4.1** Our definition of the Lelong number is not standard. It differs from the standard definition by a factor of 2.

prop:Lelongreform

**Proposition 1.4.1** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(B_n(0, 1))$ . Then*

$$\nu(\varphi, 0) = \lim_{r \rightarrow 0+} \frac{\sup_{B_n(0, r)} \varphi}{\log r^2} \in [0, \infty). \quad (1.3)$$

{eq:Lelongnewdef}

**Proof** It follows from [Proposition 1.1.2](#) that the limit in [\(1.3\)](#) exists and is finite. We shall denote the limit by  $v'(\varphi, 0)$  for the time being.

We first observe that by [\(1.3\)](#),

$$\varphi(x) \leq v'(\varphi, 0) \log |x|^2 + \sup_{B_n(0,1)} \varphi \quad (1.4)$$

`{eq:varphixlocalupperbd}`

when  $x \in B_n(0, 1)$ . In particular,  $v(\varphi, x) \geq v'(\varphi, 0)$ .

In order to argue the reverse inequality, we may assume that  $v(\varphi, x) > 0$ .

Next observe that by [\(1.2\)](#), for each small enough  $\epsilon > 0$ , we can find  $r_0 \in (0, 1)$  and  $C > 0$  so that for all  $x \in B_n(0, r_0)$ , we have

$$\varphi(x) \leq (v(\varphi, 0) - \epsilon) \log |x|^2 + C.$$

It follows that  $v'(\varphi, 0) \geq v(\varphi, 0) - \epsilon$ . Letting  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0+$ , we conclude.  $\square$

We recall Siu's semicontinuity theorem.

`thm:Siusemi`

**Theorem 1.4.1** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ , then the map  $X \ni x \mapsto v(\varphi, x)$  is upper semi-continuous with respect to the Zariski topology.*

[Dem12](#)

For an elegant proof we refer to [\[Dem12a, Theorem 2.10\]](#).

`prop:Lelongmax`

**Proposition 1.4.2** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ ,  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$  and  $x \in X$ , then*

$$\begin{aligned} v(\varphi \vee \psi, x) &= \min\{v(\varphi, x), v(\psi, x)\}, \\ v(\varphi + \psi, x) &= v(\varphi, x) + v(\psi, x), \\ v(\lambda\varphi, x) &= \lambda v(\varphi, x). \end{aligned}$$

**Proof** All properties are local, so we may assume that  $X = B_n(0, 1)$  for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . All properties follow directly from [Proposition 1.4.1](#).  $\square$

`cor:supslelong`

**Corollary 1.4.1** *Let  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}$  be a non-empty family in  $\text{PSH}(X)$  uniformly bounded from above and  $x \in X$ , then*

$$v\left(\sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_i, x\right) = \inf_{i \in I} v(\varphi_i, x).$$

**Proof** We observe that the  $\leq$  inequality. It remains to argue the reverse inequality.

It follows from [Proposition 1.2.2](#) that we may assume that  $I$  is countable. When  $I$  is finite, this is already proved in [Proposition 1.4.2](#). Otherwise, we may further assume that  $I = \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ . Thanks to [Proposition 1.4.2](#), we may further assume that  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}}$  is an increasing sequence. Furthermore, since the problem is local, we may assume that  $X = B_n(0, 1)$  for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . In this case, by [\(1.4\)](#), we have

$$\varphi_i(x) \leq v(\varphi_i, 0) \log |x|^2 + C$$

for all  $x \in B_n(0, 1)$  and all  $i \geq 1$  and  $C$  is a constant independent of  $i$ . In particular, thanks to [Proposition 1.2.3](#), for almost all  $x \in B_n(0, 1)$ , we have

$$\varphi(x) \leq \lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} v(\varphi_i, 0) \log |x|^2 + C.$$

Thanks of [Proposition 1.2.5](#), the same holds for all  $x$  and hence

$$v(\sup_{i \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}}^* \varphi_i, x) \geq \lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} v(\varphi_i, x).$$

We conclude. □

**Definition 1.4.2** Let  $F \subseteq X$  be an analytic subset. Then we define the generic Lelong number of  $\varphi$  along  $F$  as

$$v(\varphi, F) := \min_{x \in F} v(\varphi, x).$$

Note that the minimum is obtained by [Theorem 1.4.1](#).

**Definition 1.4.3** Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ . Let  $E$  be a prime divisor over  $X$  (see [Definition B.1.1](#)). Take a proper bimeromorphic morphism  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  from a complex manifold  $Y$  such that  $E$  is a prime divisor on  $Y$ , then we define the *generic Lelong number* of  $\varphi$  along  $E$  as

$$v(\varphi, E) := v(\pi^* \varphi, E).$$

It follows from [Theorem 1.4.1](#) that  $v(\varphi, E)$  does not depend on the choice of  $\pi$ .

**Definition 1.4.4** Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ , the *multiplier ideal sheaf*  $\mathcal{I}(\varphi)$  of  $\varphi$  is by definition the ideal sheaf given by

$$\Gamma(U, \mathcal{I}(\varphi)) = \{f \in \mathcal{O}_X(U) : |f|^2 \exp(-\varphi) \in L_{\text{loc}}^1(U)\}$$

for any open subset  $U \subseteq X$ .

*Remark 1.4.2* This definition is different from a few standard references, where instead of  $\exp(-\varphi)$ , they use  $2\varphi$ . The conventions adopted in the current book is the most convenient one as far as the author knows. It simplifies a number of formulae.

**Proposition 1.4.3 (Nadel)** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ . Then  $\mathcal{I}(\varphi)$  is coherent.*

See [Dem12](#), Proposition 5.7].

thm:multisubadd

**Theorem 1.4.2** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ , then*

$$\mathcal{I}(\varphi + \psi) \subseteq \mathcal{I}(\varphi) \cdot \mathcal{I}(\psi).$$

See [Dem12](#), Theorem 14.2].

The two invariants are related by the following simple result:

**Proposition 1.4.4** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$  and  $E$  be a prime divisor over  $X$ . Then*

$$v(\varphi, E) = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k} \text{ord}_E \mathcal{I}(k\varphi).$$

prop:Lelongnumfrommis

See [DX21, Proposition 2.14].

Also observe the following simple lemma:

lma:blowupLelong

**Lemma 1.4.1** *Let  $x \in X$  and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ . Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be the blow-up of  $X$  at  $x$  with exceptional divisor  $E$ . Then*

$$v(\varphi, x) = v(\varphi, E),$$

See [Bou02a, Corollaire 1.1.8].

Conversely, the information of the generic Lelong numbers determines the multiplier ideal sheaves:

thm:valuativemulti

**Theorem 1.4.3** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ . Let  $x \in X$  and  $f \in \mathcal{O}_{X,x}$ . Then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $f \in \mathcal{I}(\varphi)_x$ ;
- (2) *there exists  $\epsilon > 0$  such that for any prime divisor  $E$  over  $X$  such that  $x$  is contained in the center of  $E$  on  $X$ , we have*

$$\text{ord}_E(f) \geq (1 + \epsilon)v(\varphi, E) - \frac{1}{2}A_X(E).$$

Here  $A_X$  denotes the log discrepancy. We refer to [Bou17, Corollary 10.18] for the proof and the precise definition of  $A_X$ .

thm:stongopen

**Theorem 1.4.4 (Guan–Zhou)** *Let  $\varphi, \psi_j \in \text{PSH}(X)$  ( $j \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ ) such that  $\psi_j$  is an increasing sequence converging to  $\varphi$  almost everywhere. Then for any  $x \in X$ , the germs satisfy*

$$\mathcal{I}(\psi_j)_x = \mathcal{I}(\varphi)_x$$

when  $j$  is large enough.

See [GZ15, Hiep14] for the proof.

prop:pull-backmis

**Proposition 1.4.5** *Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a smooth morphism between complex manifolds. Assume that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ , then*

$$\mathcal{I}(\pi^* \varphi) = \pi^* \mathcal{I}(\varphi).$$

**Proof** It follows from [SHC6, Théorème 3.10] that locally  $\pi$  can be written as the composition of an étale morphism and a projection. It suffices to handle the two cases separately.

Recall that in the complex analytic setting, an étale morphism is locally biholomorphic, so there is nothing to prove in this case.

Next, assume that  $Y = X \times U$ , where  $U \subseteq \mathbb{C}^n$  is a domain and  $\pi$  is the natural projection. It follows from Fubini's theorem that

$$\mathcal{I}(\pi^* \varphi) \subseteq \pi^* \mathcal{I}(\varphi).$$

The reverse inequality is proved in [Dem12](#), Proposition 14.3]<sup>3</sup>.  $\square$

def:restidealsheaf

**Definition 1.4.5** Given a coherent ideal sheaf  $\mathcal{I}$  on  $X$ , the *restriction*  $\text{Res}_Y \mathcal{I}$  is the inverse image ideal sheaf given by

$$\text{Res}_Y \mathcal{I} := \mathcal{I} / (\mathcal{I} \cap \mathcal{I}_Y), \quad (1.5)$$

{eq:RestI}

where  $\mathcal{I}_Y$  is the ideal sheaf defining  $Y$ .

In the literature, it is common to denote this sheaf by the misleading notation  $\mathcal{I}|_Y$ .

thm:OT

**Theorem 1.4.5 (Ohsawa–Takegoshi)** *Let  $Y$  be a submanifold of  $X$  and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X)$ . Assume that  $\varphi|_Y \not\equiv -\infty$ , then*

$$\mathcal{I}(\varphi|_Y) \subseteq \text{Res}_Y \mathcal{I}(\varphi).$$

See [Dem12](#), Theorem 14.1].

## 1.5 Quasi-plurisubharmonic functions

In practice, it is important to consider a variant of plurisubharmonic functions. We will fix a complex manifold  $X$  together with a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$ .

**Definition 1.5.1** A  $\theta$ -*plurisubharmonic function* on  $X$  is a function  $\varphi: X \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  such that for each  $x \in X$  and each open neighbourhood  $U$  of  $x$  in  $X$  satisfying the condition that  $\theta = \text{dd}^c g$  for some smooth function  $g$  on  $U$ , we have  $g + \varphi|_U \in \text{PSH}(U)$ . The set of  $\theta$ -psh functions on  $X$  is denoted by  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

A *quasi-plurisubharmonic function* on  $X$  is a function  $\varphi: X \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  such that there exists a smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta'$  on  $X$  such that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta')$ . The set of quasi-plurisubharmonic functions on  $X$  is denoted by  $\text{QPSH}(X)$ .

There is a natural non-strict partial order on  $\text{QPSH}(X)$  defined as follows:

def:parorder

**Definition 1.5.2** Assume that  $X$  is compact. Given  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ , we say that  $\varphi$  is *more singular* than  $\psi$  and write  $\varphi \leq \psi$  if there is  $C \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $\varphi \leq \psi + C$ . We also say  $\psi$  is *less singular* than  $\varphi$  and write  $\psi \leq \varphi$ .

In case  $\varphi \leq \psi$  and  $\psi \leq \varphi$ , we say  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  has the same singularity types. We write  $\varphi \sim \psi$  in this case.

**Remark 1.5.1** The proceeding results concerning plurisubharmonic functions can be extended *mutatis mutandis* to quasi-plurisubharmonic functions. We will apply these extensions without further explanations.

<sup>3</sup> In [Dem12](#), Proposition 14.3], Demailly used the highly non-standard notation  $f^* \mathcal{I}(\varphi)$  to denote the image of  $f^* \mathcal{I}(\varphi) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X$ .



prop:L1compa

**Proposition 1.5.1** *Let  $\theta$  be a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . Then for any  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $a \leq b$ , the set*

$$\left\{ \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) : \sup_X \varphi \in [a, b] \right\}$$

*is compact with respect to the  $L^1$ -topology. Moreover,  $\varphi \mapsto \sup_X \varphi$  is  $L^1$ -continuous for  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .*

This is an immediate consequence of [GZ17, Proposition 8.5, Exercise 1.20].

prop:Lelongnumberupperbound

**Proposition 1.5.2** *Let  $\theta$  be a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  and  $E$  be a prime divisor over  $X$ . Then*

$$\sup \{ \nu(\varphi, E) : \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) \} < \infty.$$

**Proof** It follows from the proof of [Corollary 1.4.1](#) that  $\nu(\bullet, E)$  is upper semi-continuous with respect to the  $L^1$ -topology on  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Thus, the desired upper bound follows from [Proposition 1.5.1](#).  $\square$

prop:PSHpullbij

**Proposition 1.5.3** *Let  $\pi : Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism from a compact Kähler manifold  $Y$ . Let  $\theta$  be a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . Then the pull-back gives a bijection*

$$\pi^* : \text{PSH}(X, \theta) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{PSH}(Y, \pi^*\theta).$$

This follows from a more general result [Theorem B.1.1](#).

## 1.6 Analytic singularities

def:neatanasing

**Definition 1.6.1** We say  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  has *analytic singularities* if for each  $x \in X$ , we can find an open neighbourhood  $U$  of  $x$  such that  $\varphi|_U$  has the form:

$$c \log(|f_1|^2 + \cdots + |f_N|^2) + R, \tag{1.6}$$

{eq:anasinglocal}

where  $f_1, \dots, f_N$  are holomorphic functions on  $U$ ,  $c \in \mathbb{Q}_{>0}$  and  $R$  is a bounded function on  $U$ .

When  $R$  can be taken to be smooth, we say  $\varphi$  has *neat analytic singularities*.

Suppose that there is a coherent ideal  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_X$  on  $X$  such that we can choose  $U$  so that the  $f_1, \dots, f_N$  can be chosen as the generators of  $\Gamma(U, \mathcal{I})$  and  $c$  is independent of the choice of  $U$ , we say  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities of *type*  $(c, \mathcal{I})$ .

Each potential with analytic singularities has a type. We refer to [\[Bou02a\]](#) and [\[Bou02b\]](#) for the details.

prop:analysingclosed

**Proposition 1.6.1** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  be potentials with analytic singularities, then so are  $\lambda\varphi$  ( $\lambda \in \mathbb{Q}_{>0}$ ),  $\varphi + \psi$  and  $\varphi \vee \psi$ .*

**Proof** The  $\lambda\varphi$  assertion is trivial. The  $\vee$  assertion is proved in [Dem15, Proposition 4.1.8]. The addition assertion is easy and is left to the readers.  $\square$

**Definition 1.6.2** Let  $D$  be an effective  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor on  $X$ . We say  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  has *log singularities* (along  $D$ ) on  $X$  if for each  $x \in X$ , there is an open neighbourhood  $U$  of  $x$  such that

- (1)  $D|_U$  has finitely many irreducible components and can be written as

$$D|_U = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i D_i$$

with  $D_i$  being prime divisors on  $D$ ,  $a_i \in \mathbb{Q}_{>0}$  and there is a holomorphic function  $s_i$  on  $U$  defining  $D_i$ ;

- (2)

$$\varphi|_U = a_i \sum_i \log |s_i|^2 + R, \quad (1.7)$$

{eq:logsingreminder}

where  $R$  is a bounded function on  $U$ .

By Proposition 1.6.1,  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities.

lma:logsingrem

**Lemma 1.6.1** Suppose that  $\theta$  is a closed smooth real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ , a compact Kähler manifold and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Suppose that  $\varphi$  has log singularities along an effective  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $D$  on  $X$ . Then the cohomology class  $[\theta] - [D]$  is nef.

**Proof** This follows immediately from the fact that  $R$  in (1.7) has bounded coefficients.  $\square$

**Proposition 1.6.2** Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism from a complex manifold  $Y$ . Suppose that  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  has analytic singularities (resp. has log singularities along an effective  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $D$ ). Then  $\pi^*\varphi$  has analytic singularities (resp. has log singularities along  $\pi^*D$ ).

thm:resolvelogsing

**Theorem 1.6.1** Assume that  $X$  is compact. Suppose that  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  has analytic singularities. Then there is a modification  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $\pi^*\varphi$  has log singularities.

For a proof, we refer to the arguments on [MM07, Page 104].

MM07

def:quasiequasing

**Definition 1.6.3** Let  $X$  be a compact Kähler manifold and  $\theta$  be a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . Consider  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . A sequence  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}}$  in  $\text{QPSH}(X)$  is *quasi-equisingular approximation* of  $\varphi$  if

- (1)  $\varphi_j$  has analytic singularities for each  $j$ ;
- (2)  $\varphi_j$  is decreasing with limit  $\varphi$ ;
- (3) there is a decreasing sequence  $\epsilon_j \geq 0$  with limit 0 and a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$  such that  $\varphi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta + \epsilon_j \omega)$ ;

(4) for each  $\lambda' > \lambda > 0$ , there is  $j > 0$  such that

$$I(\lambda' \varphi_j) \subseteq I(\lambda \varphi).$$

We also say  $\theta_{\varphi_j}$  is a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\theta_\varphi$ .

def:analy-sing

**Definition 1.6.4** Let  $I \subseteq \mathcal{O}_X$  be an analytic coherent ideal sheaf and  $c \in \mathbb{Q}_{>0}$ . A function  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  is said to have *gentle analytic singularities* (of type  $(c, I)$ ) if

- (1)  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities of type  $(c, I)$ ,
- (2)  $e^{\varphi/c} : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  is a smooth function, and
- (3) there is a proper bimeromorphic morphism  $\pi : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  from a Kähler manifold  $\tilde{X}$  and an effective  $\mathbb{Z}$ -divisor  $D$  on  $\tilde{X}$  such that one can write  $\pi^* \varphi$  locally as

$$\pi^* \varphi = c \log |g|^2 + h,$$

where  $g$  is a local equation of the divisor  $D$  and  $h$  is smooth.

thm:qequi

**Theorem 1.6.2** Let  $X$  be a compact Kähler manifold and  $\theta$  be a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . Then any  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  admits a quasi-equisingular approximation  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}}$ .

Moreover, we can guarantee that  $\varphi_j$  has gentle analytic singularities of type  $(2^{-j}, I(2^j \varphi))$ .

We refer to [\[DPS01\]](#) for the proof.

Quasi-equisingular approximations are essentially unique in the following sense:

prop:compqequi

**Proposition 1.6.3** Let  $X$  be a compact Kähler manifold and  $\theta$  be a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . Consider  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Let  $(\varphi_j)_j$  and  $(\psi_j)_j$  be two quasi-equisingular approximations of  $\varphi$ . Then for any  $\epsilon > 0$  and any  $j > 0$ , we can find  $k_0 > 0$  such that for any  $k \geq k_0$ , we have

$$\psi_k \leq (1 - \epsilon) \varphi_j.$$

See [\[Dem15\]](#), Corollary 4.1.7].

def:Iinfy

**Definition 1.6.5** Assume that  $X$  is compact. Let  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  be a potential with analytic singularities. Then we define  $\mathcal{I}_\infty(\varphi)$  as the ideal sheaf consisting of germs  $f$  of holomorphic functions such that  $|f|^2 \exp(-\varphi)$  is locally bounded.

**Lemma 1.6.2** Assume that  $X$  is compact. Let  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  be a potential with analytic singularities. The sheaf  $\mathcal{I}_\infty(\varphi)$  is a coherent sheaf.

**Proof** By [Theorem 1.6.1](#), we may find a modification  $\pi : Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $\pi^* \varphi$  has log singularities. Observe that

$$\mathcal{I}_\infty(\varphi) = \pi_* \mathcal{I}(\pi^* \varphi),$$

so we may replace  $X$  and  $\varphi$  by  $Y$  and  $\pi^*\varphi$  and assume that  $\varphi$  has log singularities along an effective  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $D$ . We decompose  $D$  into its irreducible components:

$$D = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i D_i.$$

In this case, observe that

$$\mathcal{I}_\infty(\varphi) = \mathcal{O}\left(-\sum_{i=1}^N (\lceil a_i \rceil D_i)\right)$$

is clearly coherent.  $\square$

lma:IandIinf

**Lemma 1.6.3** *Assume that  $X$  is compact. Let  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  be a potential with analytic singularities. Then for any  $\epsilon > 0$ , we can find  $k_0 > 0$  such that for each  $k \geq k_0$ , we have*

$$\mathcal{I}(k(1+\epsilon)\varphi) \subseteq \mathcal{I}_\infty(k\varphi).$$

See [Dem15, Proposition 4.1.6].

thm:CT-thm-refined'

**Theorem 1.6.3** *Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold and  $Y \subseteq X$  be a connected positive dimensional submanifold. Take a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$  and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(Y, \omega|_Y)$  such that  $\omega|_Y + \text{dd}^c \varphi$  is a Kähler current and that  $e^\varphi$  is a Hölder continuous function on  $V$ . Then there exists  $\tilde{\varphi} \in \text{PSH}(X, \omega)$  satisfying*

- (1)  $\tilde{\varphi}|_Y = \varphi$ .
- (2)  $\omega_{\tilde{\varphi}}$  is a Kähler current.

*In addition, if  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities, then so does  $\tilde{\varphi}$ .*

See [DRWN<sup>+</sup>23, Theorem 6.1].

## 1.7 The space of currents

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $\alpha \in H^{1,1}(X, \mathbb{R})$ .

**Definition 1.7.1** We say  $\alpha$  is *pseudo-effective* if there is a closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current in  $\alpha$ .

We say  $\alpha$  is *big* if there is a closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current  $T$  in  $\alpha$  dominating a Kähler form. Such currents are called *Kähler currents*.

def:spaceofcurrents

**Definition 1.7.2** We introduce the following notations:

- (1)  $\mathcal{Z}_+(X)$  denotes the space of closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -currents on  $X$ ;
- (2) Given a pseudo-effective  $(1, 1)$ -class  $\alpha$  on  $X$ , we write  $\mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$  for the set of  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X)$  such that  $[T] = \alpha$ ;

Given  $T, T' \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X)$ , we write

$$T \leq T'$$

and say  $T$  is more singular than  $T'$  if when we write  $T = \theta + dd^c \varphi$ ,  $T' = \theta' + dd^c \varphi'$ , we have  $\varphi \leq T'$ . We write

$$T \sim T'$$

if  $T \leq T'$  and  $T' \leq T$ . In this case, we say  $T$  and  $T'$  have the same singularity types.

rmk:qpshtocurrents

*Remark 1.7.1* Observe that

$$\mathcal{Z}_+(X)/\sim \cong \text{QPSH}(X)/\sim$$

canonically. We will adopt the following convention: whenever we have a notion for quasi-plurisubharmonic functions which depends only on the singularity type, we use the same notation and the same definition of a closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current.

## 1.8 Plurisubharmonic metrics on line bundles

A natural source of quasi-plurisubharmonic functions is the metrics on line bundles.

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold and  $L$  be a holomorphic line bundle on  $X$ . Usually, we do not distinguish  $L$  from the associated invertible sheaf  $\mathcal{O}_X(L)$ .

**Definition 1.8.1** Let  $V$  be a 1-dimensional complex linear space. A *Hermitian form*  $h$  on  $V$  is a map  $h: V \times V \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  such that

- (1)  $h$  is  $\mathbb{C}$ -linear in the second variable and conjugate linear in the first, and
- (2)

$$|v|_h := h(v, v) \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$$

for each  $v \in V \setminus \{0\}$ .

We usually identify  $h$  with the quadratic form  $V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  sending  $v$  to  $|v|_h$ .

The *singular Hermitian form* on  $V$  is the map  $V \rightarrow \{0, \infty\}$  sending 0 to 0 and other elements to  $\infty$ .

**Definition 1.8.2** A *Hermitian metric*  $h$  on  $L$  is a family of Hermitian forms  $(h_x)_{x \in X}$ , such that

- (1) for each  $x \in X$ ,  $h_x$  is a Hermitian form on  $L_x$ , and
- (2) for each local section  $s$  of  $\mathcal{O}_X(L)$ , the map  $x \mapsto |s(x)|_{h_x}$  is smooth.

We shall write  $c_1(L, h)$  for the first Chern form of  $h$ , normalized so that

$$[c_1(L, h)] = c_1(L).$$

The map  $x \mapsto |s(x)|_{h_x}$  will be denoted by  $|s|$ .

prop:LelongPoincare

**Proposition 1.8.1 (Lelong–Poincaré)** *Let  $s \in H^0(X, L)$  be non-zero,  $h$  be a Hermitian metric on  $L$ . Then*

$$c_1(L, h) + \text{dd}^c \log |s|_h^2 = [Z(s)],$$

where  $Z(s)$  is the prime divisor defined by  $s$  and  $[\bullet]$  denote the associated current of integration.

See [Dem12](#)  
See [\[Dem12a, \(3.11\)\]](#).

**Definition 1.8.3** A plurisubharmonic metric  $h$  on  $L$  is a family  $(h_x)_x$  such that

- (1) for each  $x \in X$ ,  $h_x$  is either a Hermitian form on  $L_x$  or the singular Hermitian form, and
- (2) there is a Hermitian metric  $h_0$  on  $L$  and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, c_1(L, h_0))$  such that for each  $x \in X$  and each  $v \in L_x$ , we have

$$|v|_{h_x}^2 = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } v = 0; \\ |v|_{h_{0,x}}^2 e^{-\varphi(x)}, & \text{if } v \neq 0. \end{cases} \quad (1.8) \quad \{\text{eq:htwist}\}$$

The (first) Chern current of  $h$  is by definition

$$\text{dd}^c h = c_1(L, h) := c_1(L, h_0) + \text{dd}^c \varphi.$$

We shall write the plurisubharmonic metric defined by (1.8) as  $h \exp(-\varphi)$ . As the readers can easily verify, our conventions guarantee that  $c_1(L, h)$  does not depend on the choice of  $h_0$ .

*Remark 1.8.1* In the literature, some people prefer the convention that in (1.8), neither sides have the square.

thm: OT\_ext

**Theorem 1.8.1** *Assume that  $L$  is big and  $T$  is a holomorphic line bundle on  $X$ . Fix a Hermitian metric  $r$  on  $T$ . Take a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . Let  $Y \subseteq X$  be a connected submanifold of dimension  $m$ . Suppose that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta - \delta\omega)$  for some  $\delta > 0$  and  $\varphi|_Y \not\equiv -\infty$ . Then there exists  $k_0(\delta, r) > 0$  such that for all  $k \geq k_0$  and  $s \in H^0(Y, T \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes I(k\varphi|_Y))$ , there exists an extension  $\tilde{s} \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(k\varphi))$  such that*

$$\int_X (h^k \otimes r)(\tilde{s}, \tilde{s}) e^{-k\varphi} \omega^n \leq C \int_Y (h^k \otimes r)(s, s) e^{-k\varphi|_Y} \omega|_Y^m,$$

where  $C > 0$  is an absolute constant, independent of the data  $(\varphi, s, k)$ .

This is a special case of [\[His12\]](#)  
This is a special case of [\[His12, Theorem 1.4\]](#).

## Chapter 2

### Non-pluripolar products

chap:npp

Let  $X$  be a complex manifold and  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_m \in \text{PSH}(X)$  ( $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ ). When the functions  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_m$  are all smooth, there is an obvious definition of a current

$$\text{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \dots \wedge \text{dd}^c \varphi_m \quad (2.1)$$

{eq:mixedMAtype}

by the usual differential calculus. It is of interest to extend this construction to the case where the  $\varphi_i$ 's have worse regularities.

There are a number of different approaches to this problem. In this book, we will choose the so-called non-pluripolar theory due to Bedford–Taylor, Guedj–Zeriahi and Boucksom–Eyssidieux–Guedj–Zeriahi. The reason is that the non-pluripolar theory is the only known theory satisfying the following two features: it is defined for all psh singularities (at least in the global setting); it satisfies a monotonicity theorem.

#### 2.1 Bedford–Taylor theory

Let  $X$  be a connected complex manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_m \in \text{PSH}(X)$  ( $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ ) be locally bounded plurisubharmonic functions on  $X$ . In this case, there is a canonical definition of the Monge–Ampère type product (2.1) as follows:

**Definition 2.1.1** We define the closed positive  $(m, m)$ -current (2.1) on  $X$  as follows: we make an induction on  $m \geq 1$ . When  $m = 1$ , we define  $\text{dd}^c \varphi_1$  using the current calculus. Recall that  $\varphi_1$  is locally integrable by [Proposition 1.2.4](#), so we can regard it as a distribution on  $X$ . When  $m > 1$  and the case  $m - 1$  is defined, we let

$$\text{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \dots \wedge \text{dd}^c \varphi_m := \text{dd}^c (\varphi_1 \text{dd}^c \varphi_2 \wedge \dots \wedge \text{dd}^c \varphi_m).$$

This definition is due to Bedford–Taylor and is usually called the Bedford–Taylor product.

**Proposition 2.1.1** *The product  $\mathrm{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathrm{dd}^c \varphi_m$  is a closed positive<sup>1</sup>  $(m, m)$ -current on  $X$ . Moreover, the product is symmetric in the  $\varphi_i$ 's.*

See [GZ17, Proposition 3.3, Corollary 3.12].

The Bedford–Taylor theory has many satisfactory properties.

thm:contMA

**Theorem 2.1.1** *Let  $(\varphi_i^j)_j$  be decreasing sequences (resp. increasing sequences) of locally bounded psh functions on  $X$  converging (resp. converging a.e.) to locally bounded psh function  $\varphi_i$ , where  $i = 1, \dots, m$ . Then*

$$\varphi_0^j \mathrm{dd}^c \varphi_1^j \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathrm{dd}^c \varphi_m^j \rightarrow \varphi_0 \mathrm{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathrm{dd}^c \varphi_m$$

as  $j \rightarrow \infty$ . In particular, if  $\varphi_0^j$  is the constant sequence 1, we have

$$\mathrm{dd}^c \varphi_1^j \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathrm{dd}^c \varphi_m^j \rightarrow \mathrm{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathrm{dd}^c \varphi_m.$$

We refer to [GZ17, Theorem 3.18, Theorem 3.23] for the proofs.

**Theorem 2.1.2** *The Bedford–Taylor product (2.1) puts no mass on pluripolar sets (Definition 1.1.4) in  $X$ .*

**Theorem 2.1.3** *The Bedford–Taylor product is local with respect to the plurifine topology.*

These results are also special cases of the more general results below.

## 2.2 The definition of non-pluripolar products

The proof of all results in this section can be found in [BEGZ10].

Let  $X$  be a complex manifold.

**Definition 2.2.1** Let  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_p \in \mathrm{PSH}(X)$ . We set

$$O_k := \bigcap_{j=1}^p \{\varphi_j > -k\}, \quad k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}.$$

We say that  $\mathrm{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \mathrm{dd}^c \varphi_p$  is *well-defined* if for each open subset  $U \subseteq X$  such that there is a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $U$  such that for each compact subset  $K \subseteq U$ , we have

<sup>1</sup> Recall that we say an  $(m, m)$ -current  $T$  on  $X$  is positive if either  $m > n$  or for any smooth  $(1, 0)$ -forms  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{n-m}$  on  $X$ , the measure

$$T \wedge i\alpha_1 \wedge \overline{\alpha_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge i\alpha_{n-m} \wedge \overline{\alpha_{n-m}}$$

is positive.



$$\sup_{k \geq 0} \int_{K \cap O_k} \left( \bigwedge_{j=1}^p \text{dd}^c \max\{\varphi_j, -k\} \right) \Big|_U \wedge \omega^{n-p} < \infty. \quad (2.2) \quad \{\text{eq:welldefinepluri}\}$$

In this case, we define  $\text{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \text{dd}^c \varphi_p$  by

$$\mathbb{1}_{O_k} \langle \text{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \text{dd}^c \varphi_p \rangle = \mathbb{1}_{O_k} \bigwedge_{j=1}^p \text{dd}^c \max(\varphi_j \vee (-k)) \quad (2.3) \quad \{\text{eq:npp}\}$$

on  $\bigcup_{k \geq 0} O_k$  and make a zero-extension to  $X$ .

prop:npp1

**Proposition 2.2.1** *Let  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_p \in \text{PSH}(X)$ .*

- (1) *The product  $\text{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \text{dd}^c \varphi_p$  is local in plurifine topology. In the following sense: let  $O \subseteq X$  be a plurifine open subset, let  $\psi_1, \dots, \psi_p \in \text{PSH}(X)$ , assume that*

$$\varphi_j|_O = \psi_j|_O, \quad j = 1, \dots, p.$$

*Assume that*

$$\bigwedge_{j=1}^p \text{dd}^c u_j \text{ and } \bigwedge_{j=1}^p \text{dd}^c v_j$$

*are both well-defined, then*

$$\bigwedge_{j=1}^p \text{dd}^c \varphi_j \Big|_O = \bigwedge_{j=1}^p \text{dd}^c \psi_j \Big|_O. \quad (2.4) \quad \{\text{eq:ppp1}\}$$

*If  $O$  is open in the usual topology, then the product*

$$\bigwedge_{j=1}^p \text{dd}^c \varphi_j|_O$$

*on  $O$  is well-defined and*

$$\bigwedge_{j=1}^p \text{dd}^c \varphi_j \Big|_O = \bigwedge_{j=1}^p \text{dd}^c \psi_j|_O. \quad (2.5) \quad \{\text{eq:ppp2}\}$$

*Let  $\mathcal{U}$  be an open covering of  $X$ . Then  $\text{dd}^c u_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \text{dd}^c u_p$  is well-defined if and only if each of the following product is well-defined*

$$\bigwedge_{j=1}^p \text{dd}^c u_j|_U, \quad U \in \mathcal{U}.$$

- (2) *The current  $\text{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge \text{dd}^c \varphi_p$  and the fact that it is well-defined depend only on the currents  $\text{dd}^c \varphi_j$ , not on specific  $\varphi_j$ .*

- (3) When  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_p \in L_{\text{loc}}^\infty(X)$ ,  $\text{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \dots \wedge \text{dd}^c \varphi_p$  is well-defined and is equal to the Bedford–Taylor product.
- (4) Assume that  $\text{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \dots \wedge \text{dd}^c \varphi_p$  is well-defined, then  $\text{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \dots \wedge \text{dd}^c \varphi_p$  puts not mass on pluripolar sets.
- (5) Assume that  $\text{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \dots \wedge \text{dd}^c \varphi_p$  is well-defined, then

$$\bigwedge_{j=1}^p \text{dd}^c \varphi_j$$

is a closed positive  $(p, p)$ -current on  $X$ .

- (6) The product is multi-linear: let  $\psi_1 \in \text{PSH}(X)$ , then

$$\text{dd}^c(\varphi_1 + \psi_1) \wedge \bigwedge_{j=2}^p \text{dd}^c \varphi_j = \text{dd}^c \varphi_1 \wedge \bigwedge_{j=2}^p \text{dd}^c \varphi_j + \text{dd}^c \psi_1 \wedge \bigwedge_{j=2}^p \text{dd}^c \varphi_j \quad (2.6) \quad \{\text{eq:ppp6}\}$$

in the sense that left-hand side is well-defined if and only if both terms on right-hand side are well-defined, and the equality holds in that case.

**Definition 2.2.2** Let  $T_1, \dots, T_p$  be closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -currents on  $X$ . We say that  $T_1 \wedge \dots \wedge T_p$  is well-defined if there exists an open covering  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $X$ , such that on each  $U \in \mathcal{U}$ , we can find  $\varphi_j^U \in \text{PSH}(U)$  ( $j = 1, \dots, p$ ) such that

$$\text{dd}^c \varphi_j^U = T_j, \quad j = 1, \dots, p$$

and such that  $\text{dd}^c \varphi_1^U \wedge \dots \wedge \text{dd}^c \varphi_p^U$  is well-defined. In this case, we define  $T_1 \wedge \dots \wedge T_p$  as the closed positive  $(p, p)$ -current on  $X$  defined by

$$(T_1 \wedge \dots \wedge T_p)|_U = \text{dd}^c \varphi_1^U \wedge \dots \wedge \text{dd}^c \varphi_p^U, \quad U \in \mathcal{U}. \quad (2.7) \quad \{\text{eq:ppp5}\}$$

**Proposition 2.2.1** can be formulated in terms of currents without any difficulty.

**Proposition 2.2.2** Let  $X$  be a compact Kähler manifold and  $T_1, \dots, T_p$  are closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -currents on  $X$ . Then  $T_1 \wedge \dots \wedge T_p$  is well-defined.

## 2.3 Properties of non-pluripolar products

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $\theta, \theta_1, \dots, \theta_n$  be closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -forms on  $X$ .

We write

$$\text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0} = \left\{ \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) : \int_X \theta_\varphi^n > 0 \right\}. \quad (2.8) \quad \{\text{eq:PSHpos}\}$$

thm:semicon

**Theorem 2.3.1** Let  $\varphi_j, \varphi_j^k \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_j)$  ( $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ ,  $j = 1, \dots, n$ ). Let  $\chi \geq 0$  be a bounded function such that there are  $\eta_1, \eta_2 \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  such that  $\eta_1 + \chi = \eta_2$ .

Assume that for any  $j = 1, \dots, n$  and  $i = 1, \dots, m$ , as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ , either  $\varphi_j^k$  decreases to  $\varphi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  or increases to  $\varphi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  almost everywhere. Then for any open set  $U \subseteq X$ , we have

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_U \chi \theta_{1, \varphi_1^k} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n^k} \geq \int_U \chi \theta_{1, \varphi_1} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n}. \quad (2.9)$$

{eq:semicon1}

See [DDNL18mono, Theorem 2.3].

thm:mono

**Theorem 2.3.2** Let  $\varphi_j, \psi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_j)$  for  $j = 1, \dots, n$ . Assume that  $\varphi_j \geq \psi_j$  for every  $j$ , then

$$\int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n} \geq \int_X \theta_{1, \psi_1} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, \psi_n}.$$

See [DDNL18mono, Theorem 1.1].

As a corollary, we obtain that

cor:incseqnppcont

**Corollary 2.3.1** Fix a directed set  $I$ . For each  $j = 1, \dots, n$ , take an increasing net  $(\varphi_j^i)_{i \in I}$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta_j)$ , uniformly bounded from above. Set

$$\varphi_j := \sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_j^i.$$

Then

$$\lim_{i \in I} \int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1^i} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n^i} = \int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n}. \quad (2.10)$$

{eq:increseqnppcont}

**Proof** We may assume that  $I$  is infinite as there is nothing to prove otherwise. Thanks to [Theorem 2.3.2](#), we already know the  $\leq$  inequality in (2.10). We prove the reverse inequality. When  $I \cong \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  as directed sets, the reverse inequality follows from [Theorem 2.3.1](#). In general, by Choquet's lemma [Proposition 1.2.2](#), we can find a countable infinite subset  $R \subseteq I$  such that

$$\sup_{r \in R}^* \varphi_j^r = \sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_j^i$$

for all  $j = 1, \dots, n$ . We fix a bijection  $R \cong \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ . We will then denote elements  $\varphi_k^r$  ( $r \in R$ ) by  $\varphi_k^1, \varphi_k^2, \dots$ . We shall write

$$\psi_k^a = \varphi_k^1 \vee \dots \vee \varphi_k^a$$

for each  $a \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ .

It follows from the fact that  $I$  is a directed set and [Theorem 2.3.2](#) that

$$\lim_{i \in I} \int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1^i} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n^i} \geq \lim_{a \rightarrow \infty} \int_X \theta_{1, \psi_1^a} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, \psi_n^a}.$$

From the special case mentioned above, we know that the right-hand side is exactly the right-hand side of (2.10), so we conclude.  $\square$

lma:pathoenvelope

**Lemma 2.3.1** Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ ,  $\varphi \leq \psi$  and  $\int_X \theta_\varphi^n > 0$ . Then for any

$$a \in \left(1, \left(\frac{\int_X \theta_\psi^n}{\int_X \theta_\psi^n - \int_X \theta_\varphi^n}\right)^{1/n}\right), \quad (2.11) \quad \{\text{eq:arangetemp}\}$$

there is  $\eta \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  such that

$$a^{-1}\eta + (1 - a^{-1})\psi \leq \varphi.$$

The fraction in (2.11) is understood as  $\infty$  if  $\int_X \theta_\psi^n = \int_X \theta_\varphi^n$ . We write

$$P(a\varphi + (1 - a)\psi) = \sup^* \{\eta \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) : a^{-1}\eta + (1 - a^{-1})\psi \leq \varphi\} \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta). \quad (2.12)$$

Observe that

$$a^{-1}P(a\varphi + (1 - a)\psi) + (1 - a^{-1})\psi \leq \varphi. \quad (2.13)$$

In fact, this equation holds outside a pluripolar set by [Proposition 1.2.3](#), hence it holds everywhere by [Proposition 1.2.5](#).

**Proof** Without loss of generality, we may assume that  $\varphi \leq \psi \leq 0$ .

We refer to [\[DDNE216, Lemma 4.3\]](#) for the proof of the existence of  $\eta \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  satisfying the given inequality. Next we argue that  $P(a\varphi + (1 - a)\psi) \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Choose

$$a' \in \left(a, \left(\frac{\int_X \theta_\psi^n}{\int_X \theta_\psi^n - \int_X \theta_\varphi^n}\right)^{1/n}\right).$$

It follows that

$$P(a\varphi + (1 - a)\psi) \geq \frac{a}{a'}P(a'\varphi + (1 - a')\psi) + \frac{a' - a}{a'}\varphi.$$

Therefore, by [Theorem 2.3.2](#), we have

$$\int_X \theta_{P(a\varphi + (1 - a)\psi)}^n \geq \frac{(a' - a)^n}{a'^n} \int_X \theta_\varphi^n > 0.$$

lma:kahcurrentposmass

**Lemma 2.3.2** Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  then there is  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that

- (1)  $\theta_\psi$  is a Kähler current;
- (2)  $\psi \leq \varphi$ .

**Proof** Using [Lemma 2.3.1](#), we can find  $\epsilon > 0$  and  $\gamma \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that

$$\frac{\epsilon}{1 + \epsilon}V_\theta + \frac{1}{1 + \epsilon}\gamma \leq \varphi.$$

Take  $\eta \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that  $\theta_\eta$  is a Kähler current and  $\eta \leq 0$ . Then we may take

$$\psi = \frac{\epsilon}{1+\epsilon}\eta + \frac{1}{1+\epsilon}\gamma.$$

lma:existsecposmass

**Lemma 2.3.3** *Let  $L$  be a holomorphic line bundle on  $X$  with  $\theta \in c_1(L)$ . Assume that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , then there exists  $k_0 > 0$  such that for each  $k \geq k_0$ , we have*

$$H^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) \neq 0.$$

**Proof** By [Lemma 2.3.2](#), we may further assume that  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current. In this case, the result follows from [Dem12](#), Theorem 13.21].  $\square$

thm:logconc

**Theorem 2.3.3** *Let  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Then the map*

$$[0, 1] \ni t \mapsto \log \int_X \theta_{t\varphi_1 + (1-t)\varphi_0}^n$$

*is concave.*

See [DDNL19log](#) and [DDNL21a](#) for the proof.

**Remark 2.3.1** Here and in the sequel, when we write expressions like  $t\varphi + (1-t)\psi$  for  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ , we will follow the convention that when  $t = 0$ , the value is  $\psi$  and when  $t = 1$ , the value is  $\varphi$ .



## Chapter 3

### The envelope operators

chap:enve

#### 3.1 The $P$ -envelope

In this section,  $X$  will denote a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$ .

##### 3.1.1 The definition of the $P$ -envelope

We recall that a non-strict partial order  $\text{QPSH}(X)$  is introduced in [Definition 1.5.2](#). We will fix a smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$ .

def:rooftop

**Definition 3.1.1** Given  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , we define their *rooftop operator* as follows:

$$\varphi \wedge \psi = \sup \{ \eta \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) : \eta \leq \varphi, \eta \leq \psi \}.$$

When we want to be more specific, we could also write  $\varphi \wedge_\theta \psi$ . Suppose that  $\varphi \wedge \psi$  is not identically  $-\infty$  on each connected component of  $X$ , we have  $\varphi \wedge \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  by [Proposition 1.2.1](#).

def:Penv

**Definition 3.1.2** Given  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , we define its  $P$ -envelope as follows

$$P_\theta[\varphi] := \sup^* \{ \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) : \psi \leq 0, \psi \leq \varphi \}. \quad (3.1)$$

{eq:Pthetaavarphi}

Observe that by [Proposition 1.2.1](#), we have  $P_\theta[\varphi] \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Moreover, the definition can be equivalently described as

$$P_\theta[\varphi] = \sup_{C \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}}^* (\varphi + C) \wedge V_\theta. \quad (3.2)$$

{eq:Penvsups}

Here  $\wedge$  is the rooftop operator defined in [Definition 3.1.1](#). Observe that for any  $C \in \mathbb{R}$ , we have  $(\varphi + C) \wedge V_\theta \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and

$$(\varphi + C) \wedge V_\theta \sim \varphi.$$

prop:Penvindeptheta

**Proposition 3.1.1** *Let  $\theta' = \theta + \text{dd}^c g$  for some  $g \in C^\infty(X)$ . Then for any  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , we have  $\varphi - g \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta')$  and*

$$P_\theta[\varphi] \sim P_{\theta'}[\varphi'].$$

**Proof** By symmetry, it suffices to show that

$$P_\theta[\varphi] \leq P_{\theta'}[\varphi'].$$

We may assume that  $g \geq 0$ . Then for any  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  with  $\psi \leq \varphi$  and  $\psi \leq 0$ , we set  $\psi' := \psi - g$ . Then  $\psi' \leq \varphi'$  and  $\psi' \leq 0$ , so  $\psi' \leq P_{\theta'}[\varphi']$ . Since  $\psi$  is arbitrary, it follows that

$$P_\theta[\varphi] - g \leq P_{\theta'}[\varphi'].$$

prop:Ppresmass

**Proposition 3.1.2** *Suppose that  $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_n$  be smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -forms on  $X$ . Let  $\varphi_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_i)$  for each  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . Then*

$$\int_X \theta_{1, P_{\theta_1}[\varphi_1]} \wedge \cdots \wedge \theta_{n, P_{\theta_n}[\varphi_n]} = \int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n}. \quad (3.3)$$

{eq:Penvpresmass}

**Proof** For each  $C \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  and each  $i = 1, \dots, n$ , we have

$$(\varphi_i + C) \wedge V_{\theta_i} \sim \varphi_i.$$

It follows from [Theorem 2.3.2](#) that

$$\int_X \theta_{1, (\varphi_1 + C) \wedge V_{\theta_1}} \wedge \cdots \wedge \theta_{n, (\varphi_n + C) \wedge V_{\theta_n}} = \int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n}.$$

So (3.3) follows from (3.2) and [Corollary 2.3.1](#).  $\square$

thm:Pvarphidiffdef

**Theorem 3.1.1** *Assume that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , then*

$$P_\theta[\varphi] = \sup \left\{ \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) : \psi \leq 0, \varphi \leq \psi, \int_X \theta_\varphi^n = \int_X \theta_\psi^n \right\}. \quad (3.4)$$

{eq:Penvdef}

*In particular, in this case,*

$$P_\theta[P_\theta[\varphi]] = P_\theta[\varphi]. \quad (3.5)$$

{eq:Penvprojop}

We refer to [\[DDNL23, Theorem 3.14\]](#) for the proof. In general, we do not know if (3.5) holds when  $\int_X \theta_\varphi^n > 0$ . We expect it to be wrong. According to our general philosophy, the  $P$ -envelope operator is the correct object only when the non-pluripolar mass is positive. We will avoid using the degenerate case in the whole book.

**Definition 3.1.3** If  $\varphi = P_\theta[\varphi]$  and  $\int_X \theta_\varphi^n > 0$ , we say  $\varphi$  is a *model potential*.

We remind the readers that the notion of model potentials depends heavily on the choice of  $\theta$ . When there is a risk of confusion, we also say  $\varphi$  is a model potential in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .



This definition is different from the common definition in the literature: we impose the extra condition  $\int_X \theta_\varphi^n > 0$ . The author believes that this is the only case where this notion is natural. We sometimes emphasize this point by saying  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  is a model potential.

**Corollary 3.1.1** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , then  $P_\theta[\varphi]$  is a model potential in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .*

**Proof** This follows immediately from [Theorem 3.1.1](#).  $\square$

### 3.1.2 Properties of the $P$ -envelope

Let  $\theta, \theta_1, \theta_2$  be smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -forms on  $X$ .

**Proposition 3.1.3** *Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism from a Kähler manifold  $Y$  to  $X$ . Then for any  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , we have*

$$P_{\pi^*\theta}[\pi^*\varphi] = \pi^*P_\theta[\varphi].$$

*In particular, a potential  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  is model if and only if  $\pi^*\varphi \in \text{PSH}(Y, \pi^*\theta)_{>0}$  is model.*

**Proof** This follows immediately from [Proposition 1.5.3](#).  $\square$

We have the following concavity property of the  $P$ -envelope.

**Proposition 3.1.4**

(1) *Suppose that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ , then*

$$P_{\lambda\theta}[\lambda\varphi] = \lambda P_\theta[\varphi];$$

(2) *Suppose that  $\varphi_1 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_1)$  and  $\varphi_2 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_2)$ , then*

$$P_{\theta_1+\theta_2}[\varphi_1 + \varphi_2] \geq P_{\theta_1}[\varphi_1] + P_{\theta_2}[\varphi_2].$$

**Proof** (1). This is obvious by definition.

(2). Suppose that  $\psi_1 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_1)$  and  $\psi_2 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_2)$  satisfy

$$\psi_i \leq 0, \quad \psi_i \leq \varphi_i$$

for  $i = 1, 2$ . Then

$$\psi_1 + \psi_2 \leq 0, \quad \psi_1 + \psi_2 \leq \varphi_1 + \varphi_2.$$

It follows from [\(3.1\)](#) that

$$\psi_1 + \psi_2 \leq P_{\theta_1+\theta_2}[\varphi_1 + \varphi_2].$$

Since  $\psi_1$  and  $\psi_2$  are arbitrary, we conclude.  $\square$

prop:landpresmodel

**Proposition 3.1.5** Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Assume that

$$\varphi = P_\theta[\varphi], \quad \psi = P_\theta[\psi], \quad \varphi \wedge \psi \not\equiv -\infty.$$

Then

$$P_\theta[\varphi \wedge \psi] = \varphi \wedge \psi. \quad (3.6)$$

{eq:P\theta\varphi\wedge\psi}

**Proof** Observe that we obviously have

$$P_\theta[\varphi \wedge \psi] \leq P_\theta[\varphi] = \varphi, \quad P_\theta[\varphi \wedge \psi] \leq P_\theta[\psi] = \psi.$$

So the  $\leq$  direction in (3.6) holds. The reverse direction is trivial.  $\square$

thm:Pvarphisupport

**Theorem 3.1.2** Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Then

$$\theta_{P_\theta[\varphi]}^n \leq \mathbb{1}_{\{P_\theta[\varphi]=0\}} \theta^n.$$

See [DDNL18mono, Theorem 3.8] for the proof.

prop:landfinitecond1

**Proposition 3.1.6** Assume that  $\varphi, \psi, \eta \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and

$$\int_X \theta_\varphi^n + \int_X \theta_\psi^n > \int_X \theta_\eta^n, \quad \varphi \vee \psi \leq \eta.$$

Then  $\varphi \wedge \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

We refer to [DDNLmetric, Lemma 5.1] for the proof.

thm:diamond

**Theorem 3.1.3** Assume that  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\varphi \wedge \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Then

$$\int_X \theta_\varphi^n + \int_X \theta_\psi^n \leq \int_X \theta_{\varphi \vee \psi}^n + \int_X \theta_{\varphi \wedge \psi}^n.$$

We refer to [DDNLmetric, Theorem 5.4] for the proof.

prop:decseqmodel

**Proposition 3.1.7** Let  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$  be a decreasing net of potentials in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  satisfying  $P_\theta[\varphi_j] = \varphi_j$  for each  $j \in I$  and  $\varphi := \inf_j \varphi_j \not\equiv -\infty$ . Then  $P_\theta[\varphi] = \varphi$ .

**Proof** It follows from Proposition 1.2.1 that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Therefore, for each  $j \in I$ ,

$$\varphi \leq P_\theta[\varphi] \leq P_\theta[\varphi_j] = \varphi_j.$$

Therefore,  $\varphi = P_\theta[\varphi]$ .  $\square$

prop:vol\_limit\_model

**Proposition 3.1.8** Let  $(\epsilon_j)_{j \in I}$  be a decreasing net in  $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  with limit 0. Take a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . Consider a decreasing net  $\varphi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta + \epsilon_j \omega)$  ( $j \in I$ ) satisfying

$$P_{\theta + \epsilon_j \omega}[\varphi_j] = \varphi_j \quad (3.7)$$

{eq:Palmostmodeltemp}

with pointwise limit  $\varphi \not\equiv -\infty$ . Then

$$\lim_{j \in I} \int_X (\theta + \epsilon_j \omega)_{\varphi_j}^n = \int_X \theta_{\varphi}^n. \quad (3.8)$$

{eq:massmodeldec}

Moreover, if  $\int_X \theta_{\varphi}^n > 0$ , then for any prime divisor  $E$  over  $X$ , we have

$$\lim_{j \in I} v(\varphi_j, E) = v(\varphi, E). \quad (3.9)$$

{eq:Lelongcontdecseq}

**Proof** Observe that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . By [Theorem 2.3.2](#), we have

$$\lim_{j \in I} \int_X (\theta + \epsilon_j \omega)_{\varphi_j}^n \geq \lim_{j \in I} \int_X (\theta + \epsilon_j \omega)_{\varphi}^n = \int_X \theta_{\varphi}^n.$$

We now argue the reverse inequality.

Fix  $j_0 \in I$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\lim}_{j \in I} \int_X (\theta + \epsilon_j \omega)_{\varphi_j}^n &= \overline{\lim}_{j \in I} \int_{\{\varphi_j=0\}} (\theta + \epsilon_j \omega)_{\varphi_j}^n \\ &\leq \overline{\lim}_{j \in I} \int_{\{\varphi_j=0\}} (\theta + \epsilon_{j_0} \omega)_{\varphi_j}^n \\ &\leq \int_{\{\varphi=0\}} (\theta + \epsilon_{j_0} \omega)_{\varphi}^n, \end{aligned}$$

where in the first line we used [\(3.7\)](#) and [Theorem 3.1.2](#), and in the last line we have used the fact that  $\varphi_j \searrow \varphi$  and [\[DDNL216, Proposition 4.6\]](#) (see also [\[DDNL23, Lemma 2.11\]](#)). Taking limit with respect to  $j_0$ , we arrive at the desired conclusion:

$$\overline{\lim}_{j \in I} \int_X (\theta + \epsilon_j \omega)_{\varphi_j}^n \leq \lim_{j_0 \in I} \int_{\{\varphi=0\}} (\theta + \epsilon_{j_0} \omega)_{\varphi}^n = \int_{\{\varphi=0\}} \theta_{\varphi}^n \leq \int_X \theta_{\varphi}^n.$$

This finishes the proof of [\(3.8\)](#).

It remains to argue [\(3.9\)](#). By [Lemma 2.3.1](#) and [\(3.8\)](#), for any  $\epsilon \in (0, 1)$  and  $j$  big enough there exists  $\psi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta + \epsilon_j \omega)$  such that  $(1 - \epsilon)\varphi_j + \epsilon\psi_j \leq \varphi$ . This implies that for  $j$  big enough we have

$$(1 - \epsilon)v(\varphi_j, E) + \epsilon v(\psi_j, E) \geq v(\varphi, E) \geq v(\varphi_j, E).$$

On the other hand, the Lelong numbers  $v(\psi_j, E)$  admit an upper bound for various  $j$  by [Proposition 1.5.2](#). So taking limit with respect to  $j$ , we conclude [\(3.9\)](#).  $\square$

cor:Pprojdec

**Corollary 3.1.2** Let  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$  be a decreasing net of potentials in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  with pointwise limit  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Then

$$P_{\theta}[\varphi] = \inf_{j \in I} P_{\theta}[\varphi_j].$$

**Proof** Let  $\eta = \inf_{i \in I} P_{\theta}[\varphi_i]$ . We clearly have  $\eta \geq P_{\theta}[\varphi]$ .

By [Proposition 3.1.8](#), we have

$$\lim_{i \in I} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i}^n = \int_X \theta_{\varphi}^n > 0.$$

So by [Lemma 2.3.1](#), we can find a decreasing net  $\epsilon_i \searrow 0$  ( $i \in I$ ) and  $\psi_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that for all  $i \in I$ ,

$$(1 - \epsilon_i)\varphi_i + \epsilon_i\psi_i \leq \varphi.$$

By [Proposition 3.1.4](#), we have

$$(1 - \epsilon_i)\eta + \epsilon_i P_{\theta}[\psi_i] \leq (1 - \epsilon_i)P_{\theta}[\varphi_i] + \epsilon_i P_{\theta}[\psi_i] \leq P_{\theta}[\varphi].$$

Taking limit with respect to  $i \in I$ , we conclude that  $\eta \leq P_{\theta}[\varphi]$  outside a pluripolar set and hence everywhere by [Proposition 1.2.5](#).  $\square$

*Remark 3.1.1* The arguments like the last sentence in the proof of [Corollary 3.1.2](#) is very common. We will usually omit the details.

**Corollary 3.1.3** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  be a model potential. Let  $\omega$  be a Kähler form on  $X$ . Then*

$$\varphi = \inf_{\epsilon > 0} P_{\theta + \epsilon \omega}[\varphi].$$

**Proof** Clearly, we have the  $\leq$  direction and the right-hand side is non-positive. So by [Theorem 3.1.1](#), it suffices to show that they have the same mass, which follows from [Proposition 3.1.8](#).  $\square$

**Proposition 3.1.9** *Let  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}$  be an increasing net of potentials in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  uniformly bounded from above. Let  $\varphi := \sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_i$ . Then*

$$\sup_{i \in I}^* P_{\theta}[\varphi_i] = P_{\theta}[\varphi].$$

*In particular, if  $\varphi_i$  is model for all  $i \in I$ , then so is  $\varphi$ .*

**Proof** We write

$$\eta := \sup_{i \in I}^* P_{\theta}[\varphi_i].$$

Then it is clear that  $\eta \leq P_{\theta}[\varphi]$ .

By [Corollary 2.3.1](#), we have

$$\lim_{i \in I} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i}^n = \int_X \theta_{\varphi}^n > 0.$$

So by [Lemma 2.3.1](#), we can find a decreasing net  $\epsilon_i \searrow 0$  ( $i \in I$ ) and  $\psi_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that for all  $i \in I$ ,

$$(1 - \epsilon_i)\varphi + \epsilon_i\psi_i \leq \varphi_i.$$

By [Proposition 3.1.4](#), we have

$$(1 - \epsilon_i)P_{\theta}[\varphi] + \epsilon_i P_{\theta}[\psi_i] \leq \eta \leq P_{\theta}[\varphi].$$

Taking limit with respect to  $i$ , we conclude that  $P_{\theta}[\varphi] \leq \eta$ .  $\square$

prop:varhiperturbtheta

prop:incnetmodel

### 3.1.3 Relative full mass classes

subsec:fullmass

Let  $\theta$  be a smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing a big cohomology class. Fix a model potential  $\phi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . We shall write

$$V_\theta = \sup \{ \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) : \varphi \leq 0 \}. \quad (3.10)$$

It follows from [Proposition 1.2.1](#) that  $V_\theta \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

**Definition 3.1.4** We define

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PSH}(X, \theta; \phi) &:= \{ \eta \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) : \eta \leq \phi \}, \\ \mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi) &:= \{ \eta \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) : \eta \sim \phi \}, \\ \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi) &:= \left\{ \eta \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta; \phi) : \int_X \theta_\eta^n = \int_X \theta_\phi^n \right\}, \\ \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi) &:= \left\{ \eta \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi) : \int_X |\phi - \eta| \theta_\eta^n < \infty \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

rmk:intwelldef

*Remark 3.1.2* Note that this integral

$$\int_X |\phi - \eta| \theta_\eta^n$$

is defined: the locus where  $\phi - \eta$  is undefined is a pluripolar set, while the product  $\theta_\eta^n$  puts no mass on pluripolar sets ([Proposition 2.2.1](#)).

Similar remarks apply when we talk about similar integrals in the sequel.

When  $\phi = V_\theta$ , we usually write

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; V_\theta) &= \mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta), \\ \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; V_\theta) &= \mathcal{E}(X, \theta), \\ \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; V_\theta) &= \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta). \end{aligned}$$

Potentials in the three classes are said to have *minimal singularities*, *full mass* and *finite energy* respectively.

The  $P$ -envelope can be used to characterize the full mass class.

prop:fullmassP

**Proposition 3.1.10** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $\varphi \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$ ;
- (2)  $P_\theta[\varphi] = \phi$ .

**Proof** (2)  $\implies$  (1). This follows from [Proposition 3.1.2](#).

(1)  $\implies$  (2). Note that  $\phi$  is a candidate of  $P_\theta[\varphi]$  as in [\(3.4\)](#). So  $P_\theta[\varphi] = \phi$ .  $\square$

In order to handle the finite energy classes, it is convenient to introduce the following quantity:

def:MAenergy

**Definition 3.1.5** We define the *Monge–Ampère energy*  $E_\theta^\phi : \mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  as follows

$$E_\theta^\phi(\varphi) := \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{j=0}^n \int_X (\varphi - \phi) \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_\phi^{n-j}. \quad (3.11)$$

{eq:Edefbdd}

More generally, we extend  $E_\theta^\phi$  to a functional  $E_\theta^\phi : \text{PSH}(X, \theta; \phi) \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  as follows

$$E_\theta^\phi(\varphi) := \inf \left\{ E_\theta^\phi(\psi) : \psi \in \mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi), \varphi \leq \psi \right\}. \quad (3.12)$$

{eq:Eextendgeneral}

We write  $E_\theta$  instead of  $E_\theta^\phi$  when  $\phi = V_\theta$ .

prop:cocycE1

**Proposition 3.1.11** Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta; \phi)$ . The following are equivalent:

- (1)  $\varphi \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ ;
- (2)  $E_\theta^\phi(\varphi) > -\infty$ .

When the conditions are satisfied, (3.11) holds.

Given  $\varphi, \psi \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ , we have the following cocycle equality

$$E_\theta^\phi(\psi) - E_\theta^\phi(\varphi) = \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{j=0}^n \int_X (\psi - \varphi) \theta_\psi^j \wedge \theta_\varphi^{n-j}. \quad (3.13)$$

{eq:Ecocyc}

See [BEGZ10, Proposition 2.11] and [DDNL18big, Proposition 2.5] for the proofs.<sup>1</sup>

prop:relrooftopclosed

**Proposition 3.1.12** Assume that  $\varphi, \psi \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$  (resp.  $\mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ ,  $\mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$ ), then so is  $\varphi \wedge \psi$ .

**Proof** The case of  $\mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$  is trivial.

We consider the case  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$ . It follows from Proposition 3.1.6 that  $\varphi \wedge \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . By Theorem 3.1.3, we have

$$\int_X \theta_{\varphi \wedge \psi}^n \geq \int_X \theta_\phi^n.$$

By Theorem 2.3.2, equality holds. By Theorem 3.1.1, we conclude that

$$P_\theta[\varphi \wedge \psi] = \phi.$$

Finally, the case  $\mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$  is proved in [Xia23Mabuchi, Theorem 4.13] (the arXiv version).  $\square$

prop:relativeEupperclosed

**Proposition 3.1.13** Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  be potentials such that  $\psi \leq \phi$  and  $\varphi \leq \psi$ . Assume that  $\varphi \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$  (resp.  $\mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ ,  $\mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$ ), then so is  $\psi$ .

**Proof** The case  $\mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$  is trivial. The case  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$  follows from Theorem 2.3.2. The case  $\mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$  follows from [Xia23a, Proposition 4.5] (arXiv version).  $\square$

<sup>1</sup> In these references, they took  $\phi = V_\theta$ , but the proof of the general case is almost identical.

prop:supseE1

**Proposition 3.1.14** *Let  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}$  be a uniformly bounded from above non-empty family in  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$  (resp.  $\mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ ,  $\mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$ ), then so is  $\sup^*_i \varphi_i$ .*

**Proof** It suffices to handle the case where  $\varphi_i \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$  for all  $i \in I$ . The remaining two cases follow from [Proposition 3.1.13](#).

**Step 1.** We first assume that  $I$  is finite. In this case, we can easily further reduce to the case where  $I = \{0, 1\}$ . Assume that  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$ . Observe that  $\varphi_0 \leq \phi$  and  $\varphi_1 \leq \phi$ , hence  $\varphi_0 \vee \varphi_1 \leq \phi$ . On the other hand, by [Theorem 2.3.2](#),  $\varphi_0 \vee \varphi_1$  and  $\phi$  have the same mass.

**Step 2.** We come back to the case where  $I$  is infinite.

By [Proposition 1.2.2](#), we may assume that  $I = \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  as an ordered set. Moreover, by Step 1, we may assume that the sequence  $(\varphi_i)_i$  is increasing. Furthermore, we may assume that  $\varphi_i \leq 0$  for all  $i$ . Then we know that  $\varphi_i \leq \phi$ . Therefore,  $\sup^*_i \varphi_i \leq \phi$ . But they have the same mass as a consequence of [Corollary 2.3.1](#). So we conclude using [Theorem 3.1.1](#).  $\square$

prop:envrelfullmass

**Proposition 3.1.15** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$ . Then*

$$\sup_{C \geq 0}^*(\varphi + C) \wedge \psi = \psi.$$

**Proof** Since for each  $C \geq 0$ ,

$$(\varphi \wedge \psi + C) \wedge \psi \leq (\varphi + C) \wedge \psi \leq \psi,$$

we may replace  $\varphi$  by  $\varphi \wedge \psi$  (c.f. [Proposition 3.1.12](#)) and assume that  $\varphi \leq \psi$ . In this case, the result is proved in [\[DDNL18, Theorem 3.8, Corollary 3.11\]](#).  $\square$

## 3.2 The $I$ -envelope

From the algebraic point of view, a more natural envelope operator is given by the  $I$ -envelope.

### 3.2.1 $I$ -equivalence

prop:Iequivchar

**Proposition 3.2.1** *Given  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ , the following are equivalent:*

(1) *for any  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ , we have*

$$I(k\varphi) = I(k\psi),$$

(2) *for any  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ , we have*

$$I(\lambda\varphi) = I(\lambda\psi),$$

(3) *for any modification  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  and any  $y \in Y$ , we have*

$$v(\pi^* \varphi, y) = v(\pi^* \psi, y),$$

(4) for any proper bimeromorphic morphism  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  from a Kähler manifold and any  $y \in Y$ , we have

$$v(\pi^* \varphi, y) = v(\pi^* \psi, y),$$

and

(5) for any prime divisor  $E$  over  $X$ , we have

$$v(\varphi, E) = v(\psi, E).$$

See [Definition B.1.1](#) for the definition of prime divisors over  $X$ .

**Proof**  $4 \iff 5$ : this follows from [Lemma 1.4.1](#).

$3 \iff 5$ : this follows from [Corollary B.1.1](#).

$1 \implies 5$ : this follows from [Proposition 1.4.4](#).

$5 \implies 2$ : this follows from [Theorem 1.4.3](#).

$2 \implies 1$ : This is trivial.  $\square$

`def:Iequiv`

**Definition 3.2.1** Given  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ , we say they are  $I$ -equivalent and write  $\varphi \sim_I \psi$  if the equivalent conditions in [Proposition 3.2.1](#) are satisfied.

`prop:Ienvbimero`

**Proposition 3.2.2** Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism from a connected Kähler manifold  $Y$  to  $X$ . Then for  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ , we the following are equivalent:

- (1)  $\varphi \sim_I \psi$ ;
- (2)  $\pi^* \varphi \sim_I \pi^* \psi$ .

**Proof**  $1 \implies 2$ : This follows from 4 in [Proposition 3.2.1](#).

$2 \implies 1$ : This follows from the simple fact that

$$I(k\varphi) = \pi_* (\omega_{Y/X} \otimes I(k\pi^* \varphi)), \quad I(k\psi) = \pi_* (\omega_{Y/X} \otimes I(k\pi^* \psi)).$$

`prop:Iequivmax`

**Proposition 3.2.3** Let  $\varphi, \varphi', \psi, \psi' \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  and  $\lambda > 0$ . Assume that  $\varphi \sim_I \psi$  and  $\varphi' \sim_I \psi'$ , then

$$\varphi \vee \varphi' \sim_I \psi \vee \psi', \quad \varphi + \varphi' \sim_I \psi + \psi', \quad \lambda \varphi \sim_I \lambda \psi.$$

**Proof** This follows from [Proposition 1.4.2](#).  $\square$

### 3.2.2 The definition the $I$ -envelope

We will fix a smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$ .



`def:Ienv`

**Definition 3.2.2** Given  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , we define its  $I$ -envelope as follows:

$$P_\theta[\varphi]_I := \sup\{\psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) : \psi \leq 0, \psi \sim_I \varphi\}.$$

If  $\varphi = P_\theta[\varphi]_I$ , we say  $\varphi$  is an  $I$ -model potential (in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ ).

Note that by [Proposition 1.2.1](#),  $P_\theta[\varphi]_I \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

`prop:Ienvindeptheta`

**Proposition 3.2.4** Let  $\theta' = \theta + \text{dd}^c g$  for some  $g \in C^\infty(X)$ . Then for any  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , we have  $\varphi - g \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta')$  and

$$P_\theta[\varphi]_I \sim P_{\theta'}[\varphi']_I.$$

The proof is similar to that of [Proposition 3.1.1](#), so we omit it.

`prop:Ienvelopebimero`

**Proposition 3.2.5** Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism from a connected Kähler manifold  $Y$  to  $X$ . Then for  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , we have

$$P_{\pi^*\theta}[\pi^*\varphi]_I = \pi^*P_\theta[\varphi]_I.$$

*Proof* The proof is similar to that of [Proposition 3.1.3](#) in view of [Proposition 3.2.2](#).  $\square$

`prop:Ienvprojection`

**Proposition 3.2.6** Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , then

$$\varphi \sim_I P_\theta[\varphi]_I.$$

In particular,

$$P_\theta[P_\theta[\varphi]_I]_I = P_\theta[\varphi]_I.$$

*Proof* In view of [Proposition 3.2.1](#), it suffices to show that for  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ , we have

$$I(k\varphi) = I(kP_\theta[\varphi]_I). \quad (3.14)$$

`{eq:IenvelopepreservLelong}`

By [Proposition 1.2.2](#), we can find  $\psi_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  ( $i \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ ) such that  $\psi_i \leq 0$ ,  $\psi_i \sim_I \varphi$  and

$$\sup_{i>0}^* \psi_i = P_\theta[\varphi]_I.$$

By [Proposition 3.2.3](#), we may replace  $\psi_i$  by  $\psi_1 \vee \cdots \vee \psi_i$  and assume that the sequence  $\psi_i$  is increasing. In this case, it follows from the strong openness theorem [Theorem 1.4.4](#) that for each  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ , we have

$$I(k\varphi) = I(k\psi_j) = I(kP_\theta[\varphi]_I)$$

for  $j$  large enough.  $\square$

`def:volqps`

**Definition 3.2.3** Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , we define the *volume*  $\text{vol}(\theta, \varphi)$  as

$$\text{vol}(\theta, \varphi) = \int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c P_\theta[\varphi]_I)^n.$$

In view of the following proposition, we could write

$$\text{vol } \theta_\varphi = \text{vol}(\theta, \varphi).$$

**Proposition 3.2.7** *Let  $\theta' = \theta + \text{dd}^c g$  for some  $g \in C^\infty(X)$ . Then for any  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , we have  $\varphi - g \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta')$  and*

$$\text{vol}(\theta, \varphi) = \text{vol}(\theta', \varphi').$$

**Proof** This follows immediately from [Proposition 3.2.4](#) and [Theorem 2.3.2](#).  $\square$

The  $I$ -envelope and the  $P$ -envelope are related in a simple manner.

`prop:PandPI`

**Proposition 3.2.8** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , then*

$$P_\theta[\varphi] \leq P_\theta[\varphi]_I.$$

*In particular,  $\varphi \sim_I P_\theta[\varphi]$ .*

**Proof** It suffices to show that  $\varphi \sim_I P_\theta[\varphi]$ . Namely, for each  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ , we have

$$I(k\varphi) = I(kP_\theta[\varphi]). \quad (3.15) \quad \{\text{eq:IkvarphiIkP}\}$$

It follows from [\(3.2\)](#) and the strong openness theorem [Theorem 1.4.4](#) that

$$I(kP_\theta[\varphi]) = I((k\varphi + C) \wedge V_{k\theta})$$

when  $C$  is large enough. Since  $(k\varphi + C) \wedge V_{k\theta} \sim k\varphi$ , we have

$$I((k\varphi + C) \wedge V_{k\theta}) = I(k\varphi)$$

and [\(3.15\)](#) follows.  $\square$

`cor:compnpmassandvol`

**Corollary 3.2.1** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , then*

$$\int_X \theta_\varphi^n \leq \text{vol } \theta_\varphi.$$

**Proof** This follows from [Proposition 3.2.8](#), [Theorem 2.3.2](#) and [Proposition 3.1.2](#).  $\square$

We note the following special case.

`prop:analysingcompPandPI`

**Proposition 3.2.9** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Assume that  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities, then*

$$\varphi \sim P_\theta[\varphi] \sim_P P_\theta[\varphi]_I.$$

**Proof** In view of [Proposition 3.2.8](#), it suffices to show that

$$P_\theta[\varphi]_I \leq \varphi. \quad (3.16) \quad \{\text{eq:Pprecvarphitemp1}\}$$

By [Proposition 3.2.5](#) and [Theorem 1.6.1](#), we may assume that  $\varphi$  has log singularities along an effective  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $D$ . By rescaling using [Proposition 3.2.10](#), we may assume that  $D$  is a divisor. Take quasi-equisingular approximations  $\eta_j$  and  $\varphi_j$  of  $P_\theta[\varphi]_I$  and of  $\varphi$  respectively. Recall that by [Theorem 1.6.2](#), we can guarantee that  $\eta_j$  and  $\varphi_j$  both have the singularity type  $(2^{-j}, I(2^j\varphi))$  and hence  $\eta_j \sim \varphi_j$ . On the other hand, it is clear that  $\varphi_j \sim \varphi$ . So [\(3.16\)](#) follows.  $\square$

### 3.2.3 Properties of the $I$ -envelope

Let  $\theta, \theta_1, \theta_2$  be smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -forms on  $X$ .

We have the following concavity property of the  $P$ -envelope.

prop:PIconc

#### Proposition 3.2.10

(1) Suppose that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ , then

$$P_{\lambda\theta}[\lambda\varphi]_I = \lambda P_\theta[\varphi]_I;$$

(2) Suppose that  $\varphi_1 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_1)$  and  $\varphi_2 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_2)$ , then

$$P_{\theta_1+\theta_2}[\varphi_1 + \varphi_2]_I \geq P_{\theta_1}[\varphi_1]_I + P_{\theta_2}[\varphi_2]_I.$$

(3) Suppose that  $\varphi_1 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_1)$  and  $\varphi_2 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_2)$ , then

$$P_{\theta_1+\theta_2}[\varphi_1 + \varphi_2]_I \sim_I P_{\theta_1}[\varphi_1]_I + P_{\theta_2}[\varphi_2]_I.$$

(4) Suppose that  $\varphi_1, \varphi_2 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , then

$$P_\theta[\varphi \vee \varphi]_I \sim_I P_\theta[\varphi_1]_I + P_\theta[\varphi_2]_I.$$

**Proof** 1. This is obvious by definition.

2. Suppose that  $\psi_1 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_1)$  and  $\psi_2 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_2)$  satisfy

$$\psi_i \leq 0, \quad \psi_i \sim_I \varphi_i$$

for  $i = 1, 2$ . Then

$$\psi_1 + \psi_2 \leq 0, \quad \psi_1 + \psi_2 \sim_I \varphi_1 + \varphi_2.$$

It follows that

$$\psi_1 + \psi_2 \leq P_{\theta_1+\theta_2}[\varphi_1 + \varphi_2]_I.$$

Since  $\psi_1$  and  $\psi_2$  are arbitrary, we conclude.

3. This follows easily from [Proposition 1.4.2](#) and [3.2.1](#).

4. The proof is similar to that of 3. We omit the details.  $\square$

prop:decnetmodelPI

**Proposition 3.2.11** Let  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}$  be a decreasing net of model potentials in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Suppose that  $\varphi := \inf_{i \in I} \varphi_i \not\equiv -\infty$  and  $\int_X \theta_\varphi^n > 0$ . Then

$$\inf_{i \in I} P_\theta[\varphi_i]_I = P_\theta[\varphi]_I.$$

**Proof** Let  $\eta = \inf_{i \in I} P_\theta[\varphi_i]_I$ . We clearly have  $\eta \geq P_\theta[\varphi]_I$ .

By [Proposition 3.1.8](#), we have

$$\lim_{i \in I} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i}^n = \int_X \theta_\varphi^n > 0.$$

So by [Lemma 2.3.1](#), we can find a decreasing net  $\epsilon_i \searrow 0$  ( $i \in I$ ) and  $\psi_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that for all  $i \in I$ ,

$$(1 - \epsilon_i)\varphi_i + \epsilon_i\psi_i \leq \varphi.$$

By [Proposition 3.2.10](#), we have

$$(1 - \epsilon_i)\eta + \epsilon_i P_\theta[\psi_i]_I \leq (1 - \epsilon_i)P_\theta[\varphi_i]_I + \epsilon_i P_\theta[\psi_i]_I \leq P_\theta[\varphi]_I.$$

Taking limit with respect to  $i$ , we conclude that  $\eta \leq P_\theta[\varphi]_I$ .  $\square$

prop:incnetmodelPI

**Proposition 3.2.12** *Let  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}$  be an increasing net in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  uniformly bounded from above. Let  $\varphi := \sup^*_{i \in I} \varphi_i$ . Then*

$$\sup^*_{i \in I} P_\theta[\varphi_i]_I = P_\theta[\varphi]_I.$$

**Proof** Let  $\eta = \sup^*_{i \in I} P_\theta[\varphi_i]_I$ . We clearly have  $\eta \leq P_\theta[\varphi]_I$ .

By [Corollary 2.3.1](#), we have

$$\lim_{i \in I} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i}^n = \int_X \theta_\varphi^n > 0.$$

So by [Lemma 2.3.1](#), we can find a decreasing net  $\epsilon_i \searrow 0$  ( $i \in I$ ) and  $\psi_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that for all  $i \in I$ ,

$$(1 - \epsilon_i)\varphi + \epsilon_i\psi_i \leq \varphi_i.$$

By [Proposition 3.2.10](#), we have

$$(1 - \epsilon_i)P_\theta[\varphi]_I + \epsilon_i P_\theta[\psi_i]_I \leq P_\theta[\varphi_i]_I \leq \eta.$$

Taking limit with respect to  $i$ , we conclude that  $\eta \geq P_\theta[\varphi]_I$ .  $\square$

## Chapter 4

### Geodesic rays in the space of potentials

chap:rays

#### 4.1 Subgeodesics

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $\theta$  be a smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing a big cohomology class.

def:subgeod

**Definition 4.1.1** Let us fix  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . A *subgeodesic* from  $\varphi_0$  to  $\varphi_1$  is a curve  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that

(1) if we define

$$\Phi: X \times \{z \in \mathbb{C} : e^{-1} < |z| < 1\} \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty), \quad (x, z) \mapsto \varphi_{-\log |z|}(x),$$

then  $\Phi$  is  $p_1^* \theta$ -psh, where  $p_1: X \times \{z \in \mathbb{C} : e^{-1} < |z| < 1\} \rightarrow X$  is the natural projection;

(2) When  $t \rightarrow 0+$  (resp. to  $1-$ ),  $\varphi_t$  converges to  $\varphi_0$  (resp.  $\varphi_1$ ) with respect to the  $L^1$ -topology.

By abuse of notation, we also say  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in [0,1]}$  is a subgeodesic.

We say  $\Phi$  is the *complexification* of the subgeodesic  $(\varphi_t)_t$ .

prop:convexsubgeod

**Proposition 4.1.1** Let  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  be a subgeodesic from  $\varphi_0$  to  $\varphi_1$ . Then for each  $x \in X$ ,  $[0, 1] \ni t \mapsto \varphi_t(x)$  is a convex function.

**Proof** The convexity on the interval  $(0, 1)$  follows simply from [Definition 4.1.1](#) 1. In order to verify the convexity at the boundary, let us fix  $s \in (0, 1)$ . We need to show that

$$\varphi_s(x) \leq s\varphi_1(x) + (1-s)\varphi_0(x) \tag{4.1}$$

{eq:varphisconvextempl}

for all  $x \in X$ . Thanks to [Proposition 1.2.5](#), it suffices to prove this for almost all  $x$ .

Take a set  $Z \subseteq X$  with zero Lebesgue measure such that for all  $x \in X \setminus Z$ , we have

- (1)  $\varphi_t(x) \neq -\infty$  for all  $t \in [0, 1] \cap \mathbb{Q}$ ;
- (2)  $\varphi_t(x) \rightarrow \varphi_0(x)$  as  $t \rightarrow 0+$  and  $\varphi_t(x) \rightarrow \varphi_1(x)$  as  $t \rightarrow 1-$ .

For all such  $x$ , the convexity of  $\varphi$  guarantees that  $\varphi_t(x) \neq -\infty$  for all  $t \in [0, 1]$  and  $t \mapsto \varphi_t(x)$  is convex for  $t \in [0, 1]$ . In particular, (4.1) holds.  $\square$

prop:maxsubgeod

**Proposition 4.1.2** *Let  $(\varphi_0^i)_{i \in I}$ ,  $(\varphi_1^i)_{i \in I}$  be two non-empty uniformly bounded from above families in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Let  $(\varphi_t^i)_{t \in (0,1)}$  be subgeodesics from  $\varphi_0^i$  to  $\varphi_1^i$  for each  $i \in I$ . Then*

$$\left( \sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_t^i \right)_{t \in (0,1)}$$

*is a subgeodesic from  $\sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_0^i$  to  $\sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_1^i$ .*

**Proof** We may assume that  $\varphi_0^i, \varphi_1^i \leq 0$  for all  $i \in I$ . Then it follows that  $\varphi_t^i \leq 0$  for all  $t \in (0, 1)$  and all  $i \in I$  from **Proposition 4.1.1**.

We define

$$\varphi_t := \sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_t^i \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$$

for all  $t \in [0, 1]$ . Observe that  $[0, 1] \ni t \mapsto \varphi_t$  by the same argument leading to (4.1).

Let  $(\psi_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  be the subgeodesic whose complexification  $\Phi_\psi$  corresponds to  $\sup_{i \in I}^* \Phi_{\varphi^i}$ , the complexification of  $(\varphi_t^i)_{t \in (0,1)}$ . Then clearly,  $\varphi_t \leq \psi_t$  for each  $t \in (0, 1)$ . On the other hand, by **Proposition 1.2.3**,

$$\psi_t = \sup_{i \in I} \varphi_t^i = \varphi_t \quad \text{almost everywhere}$$

for almost all  $t \in (0, 1)$ . Therefore, using **Proposition 1.2.5**,  $\psi_t = \varphi_t$  for almost all  $t \in (0, 1)$ . Since both functions are convex in  $t$ , we conclude that  $\psi_t = \varphi_t$  for all  $t \in (0, 1)$ .

It remains to argue that  $\varphi_t \xrightarrow{L^1} \varphi_0$  as  $t \rightarrow 0+$  and  $\varphi_t \xrightarrow{L^1} \varphi_1$  as  $t \rightarrow 1-$ . By symmetry, it suffices to argue the former. In fact, we know that for any  $t \in (0, 1)$  and any  $j \in I$ ,

$$\varphi_t^j \leq \varphi_t \leq t\varphi_1 + (1-t)\varphi_0,$$

where the latter inequality follows from **Proposition 4.1.1**. Letting  $t \rightarrow 0+$  and then taking limit with respect to  $j$ , we conclude.  $\square$

## 4.2 Geodesics in the space of potentials

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $\theta$  be a smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing a big cohomology class.

**Definition 4.2.1** Let  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta)$ . The *geodesic*  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  from  $\varphi_0$  to  $\varphi_1$  is a collection of potentials  $\varphi_t \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_t = \sup \{ \eta_t : (\eta_s)_s \text{ is a subgeodesic from } \psi_0 \text{ to } \psi_1, \\ \psi_0, \psi_1 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta), \psi_0 \leq \varphi_0, \psi_1 \leq \varphi_1 \}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.2)$$

{eq:Perron}

The construction is known as the *Perron–Bremermann envelope*.

def:geod

**Definition 4.2.2** Let  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in [a,b]}$  ( $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $a \leq b$ ) be a curve in  $\mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta)$ . We say  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in [a,b]}$  is a *geodesic* if the curve  $(\psi_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  is a geodesic from  $\varphi_a$  to  $\varphi_b$ , where

$$\psi_t = \varphi_{t(b-a)+a}, \quad t \in [0, 1].$$

We also say  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in [a,b]}$  is a geodesic in  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta)$  or is the geodesic in  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta)$  from  $\varphi_a$  to  $\varphi_b$ .

prop:perronenvissubgeod

**Proposition 4.2.1** Given  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta)$ , the geodesic  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  from  $\varphi_0$  to  $\varphi_1$  is a subgeodesic from  $\varphi_0$  to  $\varphi_1$  and  $\varphi_t \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta)$  for each  $t \in (0, 1)$ .

Moreover, for any  $0 \leq a \leq b \leq 1$ , the restriction  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in [a,b]}$  is a geodesic.

If furthermore  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta)$  (resp.  $\mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta)$ ), then  $\varphi_t \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta)$  (resp.  $\mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta)$ ) for all  $t \in (0, 1)$ .

We will prove a more general result in [Proposition 4.3.1](#).

prop:energylinear

**Proposition 4.2.2** Let  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in [a,b]}$  be a geodesic in  $\mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta)$ , then  $t \mapsto E_\theta(\varphi_t)$  is a linear function of  $t \in [a, b]$ .

**Proof** This follows from [\[DDNL18fullmass, Theorem 3.12\]](#) and [\[DDNL18big, Proposition 3.13\]](#).  $\square$

**Definition 4.2.3** Let  $\ell = (\ell_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be a curve in  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta)$ . We say  $\ell$  is a *geodesic ray* in  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta)$  emanating from  $\ell_0$  if for each  $0 \leq a \leq b$ , the restriction  $(\ell_t)_{t \in [a,b]}$  is a geodesic.

The set of geodesic rays in  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta)$  emanating from  $V_\theta$  is denoted by  $\mathcal{R}(X, \theta)$ .

We say  $\ell \in \mathcal{R}(X, \theta)$  has *finite energy* if  $\ell_t \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta)$  for all  $t > 0$ . The set of finite energy rays in  $\mathcal{R}(X, \theta)$  is denoted by  $\mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta)$ . The set of rays  $\ell \in \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta)$  such that  $\ell_t \in \mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta)$  for all  $t > 0$  is denoted by  $\mathcal{R}^\infty(X, \theta)$ .

Given  $\ell, \ell' \in \mathcal{R}(X, \theta)$ , we write  $\ell \leq \ell'$  if for each  $t \geq 0$ ,  $\ell_t \geq \ell'_t$ .

prop:supsged

**Proposition 4.2.3** Let  $(\varphi_0^i)_{i \in I}$ ,  $(\varphi_1^i)_{i \in I}$  be two uniformly bounded from above increasing nets in  $\mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta)$ . Let  $(\varphi_t^i)_{t \in (0,1)}$  be the geodesic from  $\varphi_0^i$  to  $\varphi_1^i$  for each  $i \in I$ . Then

$$\left( \sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_t^i \right)_{t \in (0,1)}$$

is the geodesic from  $\sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_0^i$  to  $\sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_1^i$ .

**Proof** By [Proposition 1.2.2](#) and [Proposition 4.1.2](#), we may assume that  $I$  is countable. In this case, the assertion follows from [\[DDNL18fullmass, Proposition 3.3\]](#) and [Theorem 2.1.1](#).  $\square$

**Definition 4.2.4** We define the *radial Monge–Ampère energy*  $\mathbf{E}: \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  as follows:  $\mathbf{E}(\ell)$  is the slope of  $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \ni t \mapsto E_\theta(\ell_t)$ .

The energy  $E_\theta(\ell_t)$  is linear in  $t$  by [Proposition 4.2.2](#).

Recall that the  $d_1$ -metric on  $\mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta)$  is introduced in [Definition 4.3.5](#).

**Proposition 4.2.4** Let  $\ell, \ell' \in \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta)$ . Then the map

$$t \mapsto d_1(\ell_t, \ell'_t)$$

is convex.

See [DDNLmetric, Proposition 2.10] for the proof. In particular, we can introduce

def:d1rays

**Definition 4.2.5** Let  $\ell, \ell' \in \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta)$ . We define

$$d_1(\ell, \ell') := \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{t} d_1(\ell_t, \ell'_t).$$

thm:d1raycomplete

**Theorem 4.2.1** The function  $d_1$  defined in Definition 4.2.5 is a metric and  $(\mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta), d_1)$  is a complete metric space.

See [DDNLmetric, Theorem 2.14] for the proof.

prop:d1geod\_diff\_E

**Proposition 4.2.5** Let  $\ell, \ell' \in \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta)$  and  $\ell \leq \ell'$ . Then

$$d_1(\ell, \ell') = \mathbf{E}(\ell') - \mathbf{E}(\ell). \quad (4.3)$$

{eq:d1rayscompa}

*Proof* This is a direct consequence of (4.14).  $\square$

ex:rayasspsh

**Example 4.2.1** Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . For each  $C > 0$ , let  $(\ell_t^{\varphi, C})_{t \in [0, C]}$  be the geodesic from  $V_\theta$  to  $(V_\theta - C) \vee \varphi$ . For each  $t \geq 0$ , the potential  $\ell_t^{\varphi, C}$  is increasing in  $C \in [t, \infty)$ . We let

$$\ell_t^\varphi := \sup_{C \geq t}^* \ell_t^{\varphi, C}. \quad (4.4)$$

{eq:ellvarphiraydef}

Then  $\ell^\varphi \in \mathcal{R}^\infty(X, \theta)$  and

$$\mathbf{E}(\ell^\varphi) = \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{j=0}^n \left( \int_X \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_{V_\theta}^n \right). \quad (4.5)$$

{eq:Elphi}

*Proof* We first show that for each fixed  $t \geq 0$ ,  $\ell_t^{\varphi, C}$  is increasing in  $C \geq t$ .

To see this, choose  $t \leq C_1 < C_2$ . We need to show that

$$\ell_t^{\varphi, C_1} \leq \ell_t^{\varphi, C_2}.$$

Since both sides are geodesics for  $t \in [0, C_1]$ , it suffices to show that

$$(V_\theta - C_1) \vee \varphi \leq \ell_{C_1}^{\varphi, C_2}. \quad (4.6)$$

{eq:VthetaminusC1temp1}

Then  $((V_\theta - t) \vee \varphi)_{t \in [0, C_2]}$  is a subgeodesic from  $V_\theta$  to  $(V_\theta - C_2) \vee \varphi$  by Proposition 4.1.2. At  $t = 0$  and  $t = C_1$ , it is dominated by the geodesic  $\ell_t^{\varphi, C_2}$ , hence by (4.2.1), we conclude that the same holds at  $t = C_1$ , which is exactly (4.6).

From Proposition 4.1.1, we know that for any  $C \geq t > 0$ , we have



$$\ell_t^{\varphi, C} \leq t((V_\theta - C) \vee \varphi) + (1-t)V_\theta \leq 0.$$

So in (4.4),  $\ell_t^\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  for any  $t > 0$ . Also observe that by [Proposition 4.3.1](#), we have  $\ell_t^\varphi \in \mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta)$  for all  $t > 0$ . It follows from [Proposition 4.2.3](#) that  $\ell^\varphi \in \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta)$ .

It remains to compute the energy of  $\ell^\varphi$ .

We first fix  $C \geq t > 0$  and compute

$$E_\theta(\ell_t^{\varphi, C}) = \frac{t}{C} E_\theta((V_\theta - C) \vee \varphi).$$

Letting  $C \rightarrow \infty$  and applying [Theorem 4.3.1](#), we find that

$$E_\theta(\ell_t^\varphi) = \lim_{C \rightarrow \infty} \frac{t}{C} E_\theta((V_\theta - C) \vee \varphi).$$

It follows that

$$\mathbf{E}(\ell^\varphi) = \lim_{C \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{C} E_\theta((V_\theta - C) \vee \varphi).$$

Using the definition of  $E_\theta$ , it suffices to show that for each  $j = 0, \dots, n$ , we have

$$\lim_{C \rightarrow \infty} \int_X \frac{(V_\theta - C) \vee \varphi - V_\theta}{C} \theta_{(V_\theta - C) \vee \varphi}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} = \int_X \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_{V_\theta}^n. \quad (4.7)$$

{eq:limCintXtemp1}

For this purpose, for each  $C > 0$ , we decompose  $X$  as  $\{\varphi > V_\theta - C\}$  and  $\{\varphi \leq V_\theta - C\}$ .

We have

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{\{\varphi > V_\theta - C\}} \frac{(V_\theta - C) \vee \varphi - V_\theta}{C} \theta_{(V_\theta - C) \vee \varphi}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} \\ &= \int_{\{\varphi > V_\theta - C\}} \frac{\varphi - V_\theta}{C} \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j}. \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand,

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{\{\varphi \leq V_\theta - C\}} \frac{(V_\theta - C) \vee \varphi - V_\theta}{C} \theta_{(V_\theta - C) \vee \varphi}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} \\ &= - \int_{\{\varphi \leq V_\theta - C\}} \theta_{(V_\theta - C) \vee \varphi}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} \\ &= - \int_X \theta_{V_\theta}^n + \int_{\{\varphi > V_\theta - C\}} \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j}. \end{aligned}$$

Observe that for  $C > 0$ , the functions  $\mathbb{1}_{\{\varphi > V_\theta - C\}} C^{-1}(\varphi - V_\theta)$  is defined almost everywhere and is bounded. When  $C \rightarrow \infty$ , these functions converge to 0 almost everywhere. Therefore, (4.7) follows.  $\square$

prop:raysublinear1

**Proposition 4.2.6** *Let  $\ell \in \mathcal{R}(X, \theta)$ , then there is  $C > 0$  such that*

$$\sup_X \ell_t \leq Ct.$$

A more general result will be proved in [Proposition 4.3.4](#).

Next we recall that  $\vee$  operator at the level of geodesic rays.

`def:larray1`

**Definition 4.2.6** Let  $\ell, \ell' \in \mathcal{R}(X, \theta)$ . We define  $\ell \vee \ell'$  as the minimal ray in  $\mathcal{R}(X, \theta)$  lying above both  $\ell$  and  $\ell'$ .

`prop:larrays`

**Proposition 4.2.7** Given  $\ell, \ell' \in \mathcal{R}(X, \theta)$ . Then  $\ell \vee \ell' \in \mathcal{R}(X, \theta)$  exists. Moreover, if  $\ell, \ell' \in \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta)$ , then so is  $\ell \vee \ell'$  and

$$\mathbf{E}(\ell \vee \ell') = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{t} E_\theta(\ell_t \vee \ell'_t). \quad (4.8)$$

`{eq:Elor}`

Furthermore, if both  $\ell, \ell' \in \mathcal{R}^\infty(X, \theta)$ , then so is  $\ell \vee \ell'$ .

**Proof** For each  $t > 0$ , let  $(\ell_s'')_{s \in [0, t]}$  be the geodesic from  $V_\theta$  to  $\ell_t \vee \ell'_t$ . Then clearly, for each fixed  $s \geq 0$ ,  $\ell_s''$  is increasing in  $t \in [s, \infty)$ . Moreover, [Proposition 4.2.6](#) guarantees that  $(\sup_X \ell_s'')_t$  is bounded from above for a fixed  $s$ . Let  $(\ell \vee \ell')_s = \sup_{t \geq s}^* \ell_s''$ . Then [Proposition 4.2.3](#) guarantees that  $\ell \vee \ell'$  is a geodesic ray. It is clear that this ray is minimal among all rays dominating  $\ell$  and  $\ell'$ .

Assume that  $\ell, \ell' \in \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta)$ , it follows from [Proposition 3.1.13](#) that  $\ell \vee \ell' \in \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta)$ . Next we compute its energy:

$$\mathbf{E}(\ell \vee \ell') = E_\theta(\ell \vee \ell')_1 = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} E_\theta(\ell_1'') = \frac{1}{t} E_\theta(\ell_t \vee \ell'_t),$$

where we applied [Proposition 4.2.2](#) and [Theorem 4.3.1](#).

The last assertion is trivial. □

`lma:d1rayineq`

**Lemma 4.2.1** For any  $\ell, \ell' \in \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta)$ , we have

$$d_1(\ell, \ell') \leq d_1(\ell, \ell \vee \ell') + d_1(\ell', \ell \vee \ell') \leq C_n d_1(\ell, \ell'), \quad (4.9)$$

`{eq:d1maxineq}`

where  $C_n = 3(n+1)2^{n+2}$ .

**Proof** The first inequality is trivial. As for the second, we estimate

$$\begin{aligned} d_1(\ell, \ell \vee \ell') &= \mathbf{E}(\ell \vee \ell') - \mathbf{E}(\ell) \\ &= \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{t} \mathbf{E}(\ell_t \vee \ell'_t) - \mathbf{E}(\ell) \\ &= \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{t} d_1(\ell_t \vee \ell'_t, \ell_t), \end{aligned}$$

where on the first line, we applied [Proposition 4.2.5](#), on the second line, we used [\(4.8\)](#), the first and the third lines follow from [Proposition 4.2.5](#). In all, we find

$$d_1(\ell, \ell \vee \ell') + d_1(\ell', \ell \vee \ell') \leq \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{t} (d_1(\ell_t \vee \ell'_t, \ell_t) + d_1(\ell_t \vee \ell'_t, \ell'_t)).$$

By [\[PDNL18big, Theorem 3.7\]](#),

$$d_1(\ell_t \vee \ell'_t, \ell_t) + d_1(\ell_t \vee \ell'_t, \ell'_t) \leq 3(n+1)2^{n+2}d_1(\ell_t, \ell'_t).$$

Now (4.9) follows.  $\square$

### 4.3 The relative setting

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $\theta$  be a smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing a big cohomology class. Fix a model potential  $\phi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ .

The proceeding discussions can also be carried out in this setting. The proofs can be modified *mutadis mutandis*. We leave the details to the readers.

**Definition 4.3.1** Let  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$ . The *geodesic*  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  from  $\varphi_0$  to  $\varphi_1$  is a collection of potentials  $\varphi_t \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_t &= \sup \{ \eta_t : (\eta_s)_s \text{ is a subgeodesic from } \psi_0 \text{ to } \psi_1, \\ &\quad \psi_0, \psi_1 \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta), \psi_0 \leq \varphi_0, \psi_1 \leq \varphi_1 \}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.10)$$

{eq:Perron2}

def:geod2

**Definition 4.3.2** Let  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in [a,b]}$  ( $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$   $a \leq b$ ) be a curve in  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$ . We say  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in [a,b]}$  is a *geodesic* if the curve  $(\psi_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  is a geodesic from  $\varphi_a$  to  $\varphi_b$ , where

$$\psi_t = \varphi_{t(b-a)+a}, \quad t \in [0, 1].$$

We also say  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in [a,b]}$  is a geodesic in  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$  or is the geodesic in  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$  from  $\varphi_a$  to  $\varphi_b$ .

prop:perronenvissubgeod2

**Proposition 4.3.1** Given  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$ , the geodesic  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  is a subgeodesic from  $\varphi_0$  to  $\varphi_1$  and  $\varphi_t \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$  for each  $t \in (0, 1)$ .

Moreover, for any  $0 \leq a \leq b \leq 1$ , the restriction  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in [a,b]}$  is a geodesic.

If furthermore  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$  (resp.  $\mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$ ), then  $\varphi_t \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$  (resp.  $\mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$ ) for all  $t \in (0, 1)$ .

**Proof** Without loss of generality, we may assume that  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \leq \phi$ . It follows from **Proposition 4.1.1** that  $\varphi_t \leq \phi$  for all  $t \in (0, 1)$ . In fact,

$$\varphi_t \leq t\varphi_1 + (1-t)\varphi_0 \quad (4.11)$$

{eq:geodesicconvextemp1}

for all  $t \in (0, 1)$ .

We first observe that when  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$ , so is  $\varphi_0 \wedge \varphi_1$ , see **Proposition 3.1.12**. In particular, the constant subgeodesic  $t \mapsto \varphi_0 \wedge \varphi_1$  is a candidate in (4.10). So  $\varphi_t \geq \varphi_0 \wedge \varphi_1$  for all  $t \in (0, 1)$ . It follows from **Proposition 3.1.13** that  $\varphi_t \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$  for all  $t \in (0, 1)$ . By **Proposition 4.1.2**,  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  is a subgeodesic.

Next, we show that as  $t \rightarrow 0+$ ,  $\varphi_t \xrightarrow{L^1} \varphi_0$ . The corresponding result at  $t = 1$  is similar.

We first argue the special case where  $\varphi_0 \leq \varphi_1$ . Take a constant  $C > 0$  such that

$$\varphi_0 - C \leq \varphi_1.$$

Then  $(\varphi_0 - Ct)_{t \in (0,1)}$  is clearly a candidate in (4.10). Therefore, for all  $t \in (0, 1)$ ,

$$\varphi_0 - Ct \leq \varphi_t \leq t\varphi_1 + (1-t)\varphi_0. \quad (4.12)$$

{eq:varphi@andvarphit}

It is clear that  $\varphi_t \xrightarrow{L^1} \varphi_0$  as  $t \rightarrow 0+$ .

Let us come back to the general case. By (4.11), we know that for all  $t \in (0, 1)$ ,

$$\sup_X \varphi_t \leq (\sup_X \varphi_0) \vee (\sup_X \varphi_1)$$

On the other hand,  $\sup_X \varphi_t \geq \sup_X \varphi_0 \wedge \varphi_1$ . It follows from Proposition 1.5.1 that  $\{\varphi_t : t \in (0, 1)\}$  is a relatively compact subset of  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  with respect to the  $L^1$ -topology.

Let  $\psi$  be an  $L^1$ -cluster point of  $\varphi_t$  as  $t \rightarrow 0$ , it suffices to show that  $\psi = \varphi_0$ .

For each  $M \in \mathbb{N}$ , we write

$$\varphi_0^M = \varphi_0 \wedge (\varphi_1 + M).$$

Let  $(\varphi_t^M)_{t \in (0,1)}$  be the geodesic from  $\varphi_0^M$  to  $\varphi_1$ . Then it is clear that

$$\varphi_t^M \leq \varphi_t$$

for all  $t \in (0, 1)$ . Therefore,

$$\psi \geq \varphi_0 \wedge (\varphi_1 + M).$$

On the other hand, by (4.11),  $\psi \leq \varphi_0$ . So it suffices to show that

$$\varphi_0 \wedge (\varphi_1 + M) \xrightarrow{L^1} \varphi_0$$

as  $M \rightarrow \infty$ . This is shown in Proposition 3.1.15.

Next, take  $0 \leq a \leq b \leq 1$ . We want to show that the restriction  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in [a,b]}$  is the geodesic from  $\varphi_a$  to  $\varphi_b$ . We may assume that  $a < b$ . The argument is the standard *balayage* argument.

Let  $(\psi_t)_{t \in (a,b)}$  be the (rescaled) geodesic from  $\varphi_a$  to  $\varphi_b$ . It is easy to see that the curve  $(\eta_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  defined by  $\eta_t = \psi_t$  for  $t \in (a, b)$  and  $\eta_t = \varphi_t$  otherwise is a candidate in (4.10). So we conclude that  $\eta_t = \varphi_t = \psi_t$  for  $t \in (a, b)$ .

Finally, assume furthermore that  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ . Thanks to Proposition 3.1.13, it suffices to show that  $\varphi_0 \wedge \varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ . This is proved in Proposition 3.1.12.

If furthermore  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$ , then an argument as (4.12) shows that  $\varphi_t \in \mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$  for all  $t \in (0, 1)$ .  $\square$

prop:geodsupsublinear

**Proposition 4.3.2** *Let  $\varphi_1, \varphi_0 \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$  with  $\varphi_1 \leq \varphi_0$ . Let  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  be the geodesic from  $\varphi_0$  to  $\varphi_1$ . Then*

$$t \sup_{\{\varphi_0 \neq -\infty\}} (\varphi_1 - \varphi_0) = \sup_{\{\varphi_0 \neq -\infty\}} (\varphi_t - \varphi_0)$$

for all  $t \in (0, 1]$ .

**Proof** After replacing  $\varphi_t$  by  $\varphi_t - C't$  for some large enough  $C' > 0$ , we may assume that  $\varphi_1 \leq \varphi_0$ . It follows that  $\varphi_1 \leq \varphi_t$  for all  $t \in [0, 1]$ .

Let

$$C = \sup_{\varphi_1 \neq -\infty} (\varphi_1 - \varphi_0).$$

Then by [Proposition 1.2.5](#), we have

$$\varphi_1 \leq \varphi_0 + C.$$

So  $\varphi_1 - C(1 - t)$  is a candidate in [\(4.10\)](#) and hence

$$\varphi_1 - C(1 - t) \leq \varphi_t \tag{4.13}$$

$\{\text{eq:varphilleqvarphittemp}\}$

for all  $t \in (0, 1)$ .

By [Proposition 4.3.1](#), we have  $\varphi_t \xrightarrow{L^1} \varphi_1$  as  $t \rightarrow 1-$ . Therefore, we can find a pluripolar set  $Z \subseteq X$  such that  $\varphi_t(x) \rightarrow \varphi_1(x) > -\infty$  as  $t \rightarrow 1-$  for all  $x \in X \setminus Z$ . Here we applied [Corollary 1.2.1](#) and the convexity of  $t \mapsto \varphi_t(x)$ . Observe that  $\varphi_0 = \sup_{t \in (0,1)}^* \varphi_t$ , therefore, after enlarging  $Z$ , we may also guarantee that  $\varphi_t(x) \rightarrow \varphi_0(x) > -\infty$  as  $t \rightarrow 0+$  for all  $x \in X \setminus Z$  by [Proposition 1.2.3](#).

For any such  $x \in X \setminus Z$ ,  $\varphi_t(x) \neq -\infty$  for any  $t \in [0, 1]$ . Therefore,  $t \mapsto \varphi_t(x)$  is a real-valued continuous convex function on  $[0, 1]$ . Hence,

$$\varphi_1(x) - \varphi_0(x) = \int_0^1 \frac{d}{dt} \varphi_t(x) dt \leq \lim_{t \rightarrow 1-} \frac{\varphi_1(x) - \varphi_t(x)}{1 - t} \leq \lim_{t \rightarrow 1-} \frac{C(1 - t)}{1 - t} = C,$$

the inequality follows from [\(4.13\)](#).

Fix an arbitrary pluripolar set  $Z' \supseteq Z$ . Taking supremum, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \sup_{x \in X \setminus Z'} \varphi_1(x) - \varphi_0(x) &= \sup_{x \in X, \varphi_0(x) \neq -\infty} \varphi_1(x) - \varphi_0(x) \\ &= \sup_{x \in X \setminus Z'} \lim_{t \rightarrow 1-} \frac{\varphi_1(x) - \varphi_t(x)}{1 - t} = C. \end{aligned}$$

The first equality follows from [Corollary 1.3.5](#).

Fix  $s \in (0, 1)$ . The same argument shows that after enlarging  $Z'$ , we may guarantee that

$$\begin{aligned} \sup_{x \in X, \varphi_0(x) \neq -\infty} \varphi_1(x) - \varphi_0(x) &= \sup_{x \in X \setminus Z'} \lim_{t \rightarrow 1-} \frac{\varphi_1(x) - \varphi_t(x)}{1 - t} \\ &= \sup_{x \in X, \varphi_0(x) \neq -\infty} \frac{\varphi_1(x) - \varphi_s(x)}{1 - s}. \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand,

$$\sup_{\varphi_1 \neq -\infty} (\varphi_1 - \varphi_0) \leq s \sup_{\varphi_1 \neq -\infty} \frac{\varphi_s - \varphi_0}{s} + (1-s) \sup_{\varphi_1 \neq -\infty} \frac{\varphi_1 - \varphi_s}{1-s}.$$

Using the convexity, we clearly have

$$\sup_{\varphi_1 \neq -\infty} \frac{\varphi_s - \varphi_0}{s} = \sup_{\varphi_1 \neq -\infty} (\varphi_1 - \varphi_0).$$

Since the locus where  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1$  or  $\varphi_s$  is identical to  $-\infty$  is pluripolar, using [Corollary 1.3.5](#), we find

$$\sup_{\varphi_0 \neq -\infty} \frac{\varphi_s - \varphi_0}{s} = \sup_{\varphi_0 \neq -\infty} \frac{\varphi_s - \varphi_0}{s}.$$

With an almost identical proof, we find

prop:geodinfsublinear

**Proposition 4.3.3** *Let  $\varphi_1, \varphi_0 \in \mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$ . Let  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  be the geodesic from  $\varphi_0$  to  $\varphi_1$ . Then*

$$t \inf_{\{\phi \neq -\infty\}} (\varphi_1 - \varphi_0) = \inf_{\{\phi \neq -\infty\}} (\varphi_t - \varphi_0)$$

for all  $t \in (0, 1]$ .

**Definition 4.3.3** Let  $\ell = (\ell_t)_{t \geq 0}$  be a curve in  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$ . We say  $\ell$  is a *geodesic ray* in  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$  emanating from  $\ell_0$  if for each  $0 \leq a \leq b$ , the restriction  $(\ell_t)_{t \in [a,b]}$  is a geodesic.

The set of geodesic rays in  $\mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$  emanating from  $\phi$  is denoted by  $\mathcal{R}(X, \theta; \phi)$ .

We say a geodesic ray  $\ell \in \mathcal{R}(X, \theta; \phi)$  has finite energy if  $\ell_t \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$  for all  $t > 0$ . The set of geodesic rays with finite energy is denoted by  $\mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ .

Given  $\ell, \ell' \in \mathcal{R}(X, \theta; \phi)$ , we write  $\ell \leq \ell'$  if for each  $t \geq 0$ ,  $\ell_t \geq \ell'_t$ .

prop:raysuplinear

**Proposition 4.3.4** *Let  $\ell \in \mathcal{R}(X, \theta; \phi)$ . Then there is a constant  $C > 0$  such that*

$$\sup_X \ell_t \leq Ct, \quad t \geq 0.$$

**Proof** We first observe that for any  $t > 0$ , the set  $Z = \{x \in X : \ell_t(x) = -\infty\}$  is the same. It follows from [Proposition 4.3.2](#) that

$$\varphi_s \leq \phi + s \sup_{X \setminus Z} (\varphi_1 - \phi).$$

Since  $\varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}(X, \theta; \phi)$ , we have  $\varphi_1 \leq \phi + C$  for some constant  $C$  and our conclusion follows.  $\square$

prop:energylinear2

**Proposition 4.3.5** *Let  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in [a,b]}$  be a geodesic in  $\mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ , then  $t \mapsto E_\theta^\phi(\varphi_t)$  is a convex function of  $t \in [a, b]$ .*

*If  $\phi = V_\theta$ , the map is in fact linear.*

We expect that  $t \mapsto E_\theta^\phi(\varphi_t)$  is linear in general. The author does not know how to prove this.

**Proof** The first assertion is clear.

The second follows from the proofs of [\[DDNL18fullmass\]](#) [\[DDNL18big\]](#) and [\[DDNL18c, Theorem 3.12\]](#) and [\[DDNL18a, Proposition 3.13\]](#).  $\square$

def:radialMAenergy2

**Definition 4.3.4** We define the *radial Monge–Ampère energy*  $\mathbf{E}^\phi : \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta; \phi) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  as follows:

$$\mathbf{E}^\phi(\ell) := \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \frac{E_\theta^\phi(\ell_t)}{t}.$$

Thanks to [Proposition 4.3.2](#),  $\mathbf{E}^\phi(\ell) \in \mathbb{R}$ .

def:d1onE12

**Definition 4.3.5** Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ , we define

$$d_1(\varphi, \psi) = E_\theta^\phi(\varphi) + E_\theta^\phi(\psi) - 2E_\theta^\phi(\varphi \wedge \psi).$$

In particular, if  $\varphi \leq \psi$ , we have

$$d_1(\varphi, \psi) = E_\theta^\phi(\psi) - E_\theta^\phi(\varphi). \quad (4.14)$$

{eq:d1asEdiff}

thm:d1complete

**Theorem 4.3.1** The function  $d_1$  defined in [Definition 4.3.5](#) is a complete metric on  $\mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ .

The function  $E_\theta^\phi : \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is continuous with respect to  $d_1$ .

Moreover, given a decreasing (resp. increasing) sequence  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}}$  in  $\mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$  converging (resp. converging almost everywhere) to  $\varphi \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ , then  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_1} \varphi$ .

See [\[DDNL18big\]](#) [\[DDNL18a, Theorem 1.1, Proposition 2.9, Proposition 2.7\]](#). The readers should have no difficulty in generalizing all arguments to the current setting.

thm:d1lor

**Theorem 4.3.2** Let  $\varphi, \psi, \eta \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ . Then

$$d_1(\varphi \vee \eta, \psi \vee \eta) \leq d_1(\varphi, \psi).$$

See [\[Xia23Mabuchi\]](#) [\[Xia23a, Proposition 4.12\]](#) (Proposition 6.8 in the arXiv version).





## Chapter 5

# Toric pluripotential theory on ample line bundles

chap:toric\_ample

In this chapter, we develop the toric pluripotential theory relative to an ample line bundle. The general case of big line bundles will be handled after developing the powerful machinery of partial Okounkov bodies.

Let  $T$  be a complex torus of dimension  $n$  and  $T_c \subset T(\mathbb{C})$  denotes the corresponding compact torus. Write  $M$  for its character lattice, which is a free Abelian group of rank  $n$ . Similarly, let  $N$  be cocharacter lattice of  $T$ . Let  $P \subseteq M_{\mathbb{R}} = M \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{R}$  be a full-dimensional *smooth*<sup>1</sup> lattice polytope.

Let  $\Sigma$  be the normal fan of  $P$  and  $\Sigma(1)$  denotes the set of rays in  $\Sigma$ . For each  $\rho \in \Sigma(1)$ , let  $u_{\rho} \in N$  denote the ray generator of  $\rho$ , namely the first non-zero element in  $N \cap \rho$ . We write

$$P = \{m \in M_{\mathbb{R}} : \langle m, u_{\rho} \rangle \geq -a_{\rho} \text{ for all } \rho \in \Sigma(1)\}.$$

Let  $\text{Supp}_P : N_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  denote the support function of  $P$ . Recall that the support function (Example A.1.2) of  $P$  is defined as

$$\text{Supp}_P(n) = \max \{(m, n) : m \in P\}.$$

Our convention differs from [CLS11, Proposition 4.2.14] by a minus sign. Let  $X = X_{\Sigma}$  be the corresponding smooth projective toric variety. There is a canonical embedding  $T \subseteq X$  as a dense Zariski open subset. Let  $D$  be the Cartier divisor on  $X$  defined by  $P$ :

$$D = \sum_{\rho \in \Sigma(1)} a_{\rho} D_{\rho},$$

where  $D_{\rho}$  is the toric prime divisor defined by  $\rho$  under the orbit–cone correspondence. Let  $L$  be the toric line bundle induced by  $P$ , namely  $L = \mathcal{O}_X(D)$ . Since  $P$  has full dimension,  $L^k$  is very ample for each  $k \geq n - 1$  by [CLS11, Corollary 2.2.19], we actually know that  $L$  is ample.

<sup>1</sup> Recall that *smooth* means that for every vertex  $v \in P$ , if we take the first lattice point  $w_E$  apart from  $v$  as one transverses each edge  $E$  of  $P$  containing  $v$  from  $v$ , then  $\{w_E - v\}_E$  forms a basis of  $M$ . See [CLS11, Definition 2.4.2]. We also say  $P$  is a *Delzant polytope* in this case.

We will choose the base  $e$  for the log map

$$\mathbb{C}^* \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, \quad z \mapsto \log |z|^2.$$

This choice will be fixed throughout the whole section. Since we have a canonical identification  $T(\mathbb{C}) \cong N \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{C}^*$ , we obtain an identification  $T(\mathbb{C})/T_c \cong N_{\mathbb{R}}$ . This gives a tropicalization map

$$\text{Trop}: T(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow N_{\mathbb{R}}.$$

## 5.1 Toric plurisubharmonic functions

lma:convextopsh

**Lemma 5.1.1** *Let  $F: N_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty]$  be a function. Then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $F$  is convex and takes values in  $\mathbb{R}$ ;
- (2)  $\text{Trop}^* F$  is plurisubharmonic on  $T(\mathbb{C})$ .

**Proof** We may choose an identification  $N \cong \mathbb{Z}^n$  so that we have an identification  $T(\mathbb{C}) \cong \mathbb{C}^{*n}$ . Then  $\text{Trop}$  is identified with the map

$$\text{Trop}: \mathbb{C}^{*n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n, \quad (z_1, \dots, z_n) \mapsto (\log |z_1|^2, \dots, \log |z_n|^2).$$

(1)  $\implies$  (2). Let  $F_k \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n) \cap \text{Conv}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  be a decreasing sequence with limit  $F$  (see [Proposition A.3.3](#)). It follows from a straightforward computation that

$$\text{dd}^c \text{Trop}^* F_k(z_1, \dots, z_n) = \frac{i}{2\pi} \sum_{i,j=1}^n \partial_{i\bar{j}} F_k \left( \log |z_1|^2, \dots, \log |z_n|^2 \right) z_i^{-1} \bar{z}_j^{-1} dz_i \wedge d\bar{z}_j. \quad (5.1)$$

{eq:ddctrop}

So  $\text{Trop}^* F_k$  is plurisubharmonic. It follows from [Proposition 1.2.1](#) that  $\text{Trop}^* F$  is plurisubharmonic.

(2)  $\implies$  (1). It follows from [Lemma 1.2.1](#) that  $F$  is finite. Moreover, take a radial mollifier, we may find a decreasing sequence  $\varphi_k$  of smooth psh functions on  $\mathbb{C}^{*n}$  with limit  $\text{Trop}^* F$ . Write  $\varphi_k = \text{Trop}^* F_k$  for some function  $F_k: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , it follows from [\(5.1\)](#) that  $F_k$  is convex for all  $k$ . Therefore,  $F$  is convex by [Lemma A.1.2](#).  $\square$

Let  $G_0: M_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow (-\infty, \infty]$  be defined as

$$G_0(m) := \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\rho \in \Sigma(1)} (\langle m, u_\rho \rangle + a_\rho) \log (\langle m, u_\rho \rangle + a_\rho), & \text{if } m \in P, \\ \infty, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (5.2)$$

{eq:G0def}

This is a closed proper convex function and  $G_0 \sim \chi_P$ . Let

$$F_0 = G_0^* \in \mathcal{E}^\infty(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P). \quad (5.3)$$

{eq:F0def}

By Guillemin's theorem [Gui94, CDG03],  $\text{dd}^c \text{Trop}^* F_0$  can be extended to a unique Kähler form  $\omega$  in  $c_1(L)$ .

Let  $\text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$  denote the set of  $T_c$ -invariant  $\omega$ -psh functions.

thm:toricpsh

**Theorem 5.1.1** *There is a canonical bijection between the following three sets:*

- (1) the set of  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ ,
- (2) the set  $\mathcal{P}(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P)$  in [Definition A.3.1](#), namely, the set of convex functions  $F: N_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  satisfying  $F \leq \text{Supp}_P$ , and
- (3) the set of closed proper convex functions  $G \in \text{Conv}(M_{\mathbb{R}})$  satisfying

$$G|_{M_{\mathbb{R}} \setminus P} \equiv \infty.$$

**Proof** The bijection between (2) and (3) is the classical Legendre duality. Given  $F$  as in (2), we construct  $G = F^*$ . The bijection is proved in [Proposition A.2.4](#).

The map from (1) to (2) is given as follows: given  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ , since  $\varphi$  is  $T_c$ -invariant, we can find  $f: N_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  such that

$$\varphi|_{T(\mathbb{C})} = \text{Trop}^* f.$$

We then define  $F = f + F_0$ . By [Lemma 5.1.1](#),  $F(n)$  is finite for any  $n \in N_{\mathbb{R}}$  and  $F$  is convex. Moreover,  $F \leq \text{Supp}_P$  since this holds for  $F_0$ .

Conversely, given a map  $F \in \mathcal{P}(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P)$ , then

$$\text{Trop}^*(F - F_0) \in \text{PSH}(T(\mathbb{C}), \omega|_{T(\mathbb{C})}).$$

It follows from [Theorem 1.2.1](#) that this function can be extended uniquely to an  $\omega$ -psh function on  $X$ . The uniqueness of the extension guarantees its  $T_c$ -invariance.

The two maps are clearly inverse to each other.  $\square$

Given  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ , we will write  $F_{\varphi}$  and  $G_{\varphi}$  for the convex functions given by [Theorem 5.1.1](#).

**Proposition 5.1.1** *Given  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $\varphi \leq \psi$ ;
- (2)  $F_{\varphi} \leq F_{\psi}$ ;
- (3)  $G_{\varphi} \geq G_{\psi}$ .

*In particular,  $\varphi \in \mathcal{E}^{\infty}(X, \theta)$  if and only if  $F_{\varphi} \in \mathcal{E}^{\infty}(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P)$ .*

prop:toricpluscst

**Proposition 5.1.2** *Given  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$  and  $C \in \mathbb{R}$ . We have*

$$F_{\varphi+C} = F_{\varphi} + C, \quad G_{\varphi+C} = G_{\varphi} - C.$$

Both results follow immediately from the constructions of  $F$  and  $G$ . We leave the details to the readers.

prop:toricrooftop

**Proposition 5.1.3** *Given  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ , then  $\varphi \wedge \psi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$  and*

$$F_{\varphi \wedge \psi} = F_{\varphi} \wedge F_{\psi}, \quad G_{\varphi \wedge \psi} = G_{\varphi} \vee G_{\psi}.$$

**Proof** It is clear that  $\varphi \wedge \psi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ . The claim for  $G$  is obvious and the claim for  $F$  follows from [Proposition A.2.2](#).  $\square$

prop:toricseq

**Proposition 5.1.4** *Let  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i \in I}$  be a family in  $\text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$  uniformly bounded from above. Then  $\sup_{i \in I} \varphi_i \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$  and*

$$F_{\sup_{i \in I} \varphi_i} = \sup_{i \in I} F_{\varphi_i}, \quad G_{\sup_{i \in I} \varphi_i} = \text{cl} \bigwedge_{i \in I} G_{\varphi_i}.$$

Moreover, if  $I$  is finite, then

$$G_{\max_{i \in I} \varphi_i} = \bigwedge_{i \in I} G_{\varphi_i}.$$

Similarly, if  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i \in I}$  is a decreasing net in  $\text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$  such that  $\inf_{i \in I} \varphi_i \not\equiv -\infty$ , then  $\inf_{i \in I} \varphi_i \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$  and

$$F_{\inf_{i \in I} \varphi_i} = \inf_{i \in I} F_{\varphi_i}, \quad G_{\inf_{i \in I} \varphi_i} = \sup_{i \in I} G_{\varphi_i}.$$

**Proof** In both cases, the statement for  $F$  is clear. The corresponding statement for  $G$  is obtained via [Proposition A.2.2](#).  $\square$

prop:toricMAandrealMA

**Proposition 5.1.5** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ , then*

$$\text{Trop}_* (\omega|_{T(\mathbb{C})} + \text{dd}^c \varphi|_{T(\mathbb{C})})^n = \text{MA}_{\mathbb{R}}(F_{\varphi}). \quad (5.4)$$

{eq:tropMAmea}

In particular,

$$\int_X \omega_{\varphi}^n = \int_{N_{\mathbb{R}}} \text{MA}_{\mathbb{R}}(F_{\varphi}) = n! \text{vol} \overline{\{G_{\varphi} < \infty\}}$$

and

$$\int_X \omega^n = n! \text{vol } P.$$

**Proof** We first prove (5.4). By [Proposition A.3.3](#), we can find a decreasing sequence of smooth convex functions  $F_j$  on  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  with limit  $F_{\varphi}$ . We write  $F_j = F_{\varphi_j}$  for some  $\varphi_j \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ . By [Theorem 2.1.1](#) and [Theorem A.4.1](#), we may reduce to the case where  $F_{\varphi}$  is smooth. Then it suffices to carry out the straightforward computation using (5.1).  $\square$

## 5.2 Envelopes

sec:envelopestoric

Let us begin by consider the  $P$ -envelope.

**Definition 5.2.1** Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ . We define its *Newton body* as

$$\Delta(\omega, \varphi) := \overline{\{G_{\varphi} < \infty\}} \subseteq P.$$

By [Proposition A.2.1](#), we have

$$\Delta(\omega, \varphi) = \overline{\nabla F_\varphi(N_{\mathbb{R}})}.$$

prop:GPenvelope

**Proposition 5.2.1** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ . Then  $P_\omega[\varphi] \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$  and*

$$G_{P_\omega[\varphi]}(x) = \begin{cases} G_0(x), & \text{if } x \in \Delta(\omega, \varphi); \\ \infty, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (5.5) \quad \text{{eq:toricPenv}}$$

**Proof** By (3.2), we have

$$P_\omega[\varphi] = \sup_{C \in \mathbb{R}}^* ((\varphi + C) \wedge 0).$$

It follows from [Proposition 5.1.2](#), [Proposition 5.1.3](#) and [Proposition 5.1.4](#) that  $P_\omega[\varphi] \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ . Moreover, by the same propositions, we have

$$G_{P_\omega[\varphi]} = \inf_{C \in \mathbb{R}} (G_0 \vee (G_\varphi - C)),$$

which is clearly equal to the right-hand side of (5.5).

Next we prove a result of Yi Yao claiming that in the toric setting, all potentials are  $I$ -good.

thm:Yao

**Theorem 5.2.1** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ , then*

$$h^0(X, L \otimes I(\varphi)) = \#(\Delta(\omega, \varphi) \cap M).$$

**Proof** It is well-known that  $H^0(X, L)$  can be identified with the vector space generated by  $\chi^m$  for all  $m \in P \cap M$ , see [\[CLS11, Proposition 4.3.3\]](#). We will show that

$$H^0(X, L \otimes I(\varphi)) = \bigoplus_{m \in \Delta(\omega, \varphi) \cap M} \mathbb{C}\chi^m. \quad (5.6) \quad \text{{eq:toricL2sec}}$$

It is convenient to use explicit coordinates. We will identify  $N$  with  $\mathbb{Z}^n$  after choosing a basis. In this way, we get an identification  $M = \mathbb{Z}^n$  and  $T(\mathbb{C}) = \mathbb{C}^{*n}$ . In this case, we have

$$\chi^m(z) = z^m$$

with the multi-index notation.

Observe that  $H^0(X, L \otimes I(\varphi))$  is a  $\mathbb{C}^{*n}$ -invariant subspace of  $H^0(X, L)$ , it follows that  $H^0(X, L \otimes I(\varphi))$  is the direct sum of suitable  $\chi^m$ 's.

We first show that  $\chi^m \in H^0(X, L \otimes I(\varphi))$  for each  $m \in \Delta(\omega, \varphi) \cap M$ . We need to show that

$$\int_{\mathbb{C}^{*n}} |\chi^m|^2 \exp(-P_\omega[\varphi]) \omega^n < \infty.$$

Using [Proposition 5.2.1](#) and [Proposition 5.1.5](#), we find that the latter holds if and only if

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \exp \left( \langle m, n \rangle - \text{Supp}_{\Delta(\omega, \varphi)}(n) \right) \text{MA}_{\mathbb{R}}(F_0)(n) < \infty,$$

which is obvious since

$$\langle m, n \rangle - \text{Supp}_{\Delta(\omega, \varphi)}(n) \leq 0.$$

Next we show that for any  $m \in M \cap (P \setminus \Delta(\omega, \varphi))$ ,  $\chi^m$  does not lie in  $H^0(X, L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k\varphi))$ . Again, this means

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \exp \left( \langle m, n \rangle - \text{Supp}_{\Delta(\omega, \varphi)}(n) \right) \text{MA}_{\mathbb{R}}(F_0)(n) = \infty.$$

Since  $m$  does not lie in  $\Delta(\omega, \varphi)$ , we can find  $n_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  such that

$$\langle m, n_0 \rangle - \text{Supp}_{\Delta(\omega, \varphi)}(n_0) > 0.$$

We may take a small enough closed ball  $B$  containing  $n_0$  such that

$$\langle m, n \rangle - \text{Supp}_{\Delta(\omega, \varphi)}(n) > 0$$

for all  $n \in B$ . Let  $C$  be the closed convex cone generated by  $B$ . Then there exists  $\epsilon > 0$  such that

$$\langle m, n \rangle - \text{Supp}_{\Delta(\omega, \varphi)}(n) \geq \epsilon |n|$$

for all  $n \in C$ . Take a polyhedral cone  $D$  of full dimension contained in  $C$  and containing  $n_0$  in the interior. Then  $D$  is defined by finitely many linear inequalities.

It therefore suffices to show that

$$\int_D \exp \left( \langle m, n \rangle - \text{Supp}_{\Delta(\omega, \varphi)}(n) \right) \text{MA}_{\mathbb{R}}(F_0)(n) = \infty.$$

By change of variable, this holds if and only if

$$\int_{P \cap \{\nabla G_0 \leq D\}} \exp \left( \langle m, \nabla G_0(m') \rangle - \text{Supp}_{\Delta(\omega, \varphi)}(\nabla G_0(m')) \right) dm' = \infty,$$

which would follow if

$$\int_{P \cap \{\nabla G_0 \leq D\}} \exp(\epsilon |\nabla G_0(m')|) dm' = \infty.$$

We shall write

$$n_0 = \sum_{\rho \in \Sigma} a_\rho u_\rho, \quad a_\rho < 0,$$

where  $\Sigma \subseteq \Sigma(1)$  is a linearly independent subset. Let  $\Sigma' \subseteq \Sigma(1)$  be a basis containing  $\Sigma$ . Let  $Q$  be the domain

$$Q = \{x \in P : \langle m', u_\rho \rangle + a_\rho \leq \epsilon' \text{ for } \rho \in \Sigma, \langle m', u_\rho \rangle + a_\rho \geq \delta \text{ for } \rho \in \Sigma(1) \setminus \Sigma\}$$

for suitable small  $\epsilon', \delta > 0$ . We will show that

$$\int_{Q \cap \{\nabla G_0 \subseteq D\}} \exp(\epsilon |\nabla G_0(m')|) dm' = \infty. \quad (5.7) \quad \{\text{eq:intQfinitetemp}\}$$

It follows from (5.2) that

$$\nabla G_0(m') = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\rho \in \Sigma(1)} (\log(\langle m', u_\rho \rangle + a_\rho) + 1) u_\rho.$$

So we could need to show

$$\int_{Q \cap \{\nabla G_0 \subseteq D\}} \exp\left(2^{-1}\epsilon \left|\sum_{\rho \in \Sigma} (\log(\langle m', u_\rho \rangle + a_\rho) + 1) u_\rho\right|\right) dm' = \infty.$$

After possible replacing  $\epsilon$  by a smaller constant, this would follow from the following estimate, for any  $\rho \in \Sigma$ , we have

$$\int_{Q \cap \{\nabla G_0 \subseteq D\}} \exp(-\epsilon \log(\langle m', u_\rho \rangle + a_\rho)) dm' = \infty.$$

Next we change the coordinates from to  $\log\langle m', u_\rho \rangle + a_\rho$  for all  $\rho \in \Sigma'$ , the above equation is obvious.  $\square$

cor:DXmaintoric

**Corollary 5.2.1** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ , then*

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{k^n} h^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) = n! \text{vol } \Delta(\omega, \varphi).$$

In view of **Corollary 5.2.1** and **Theorem 7.3.1** proved later, we know that

$$P_\theta[\varphi] = P_\theta[\varphi]_I$$

always holds when  $\int_X \theta_\varphi^n > 0$  in the toric setting. So we do not need to bother to study the  $I$ -envelope separately in the toric setting.

### 5.3 Full mass potentials

We interpret the full mass potentials studied in **Section 3.1.3** in the toric setting.

We have the following straightforward observation in the full mass case.

**Proposition 5.3.1** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ . Then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $\varphi \in \mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \omega)$ ;
- (2)  $F_\varphi \sim F_0$ ;
- (3)  $G_\varphi \sim G_0$ .

**Proposition 5.3.2** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ . Then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $\varphi \in \mathcal{E}(X, \omega)$ ;
- (2)  $F_\varphi \in \mathcal{E}(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P)$ ;
- (3)  $\overline{\text{Dom } G_\varphi} = P$ .

**Proof** (1)  $\iff$  (3). By [Proposition 5.1.5](#)

$$\int_X \omega_\varphi^n = \int_{T(\mathbb{C})} (\omega|_{T(\mathbb{C})} + \text{dd}^c \varphi|_{T(\mathbb{C})})^n = n! \text{vol } \overline{\text{Dom } G_\varphi}, \quad \int_X \omega^n = n! \text{vol } P.$$

Therefore, (1) and (3) are equivalent.

(2)  $\iff$  (3). This follows from [Proposition A.2.1](#).  $\square$

**Proposition 5.3.3** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ , then*

$$E_\omega(\varphi) = n! \int_P (G_0 - G_\varphi) \, d \text{vol}.$$

**Proof** It suffices to consider the case where  $\varphi$  is bounded. In this case, one could apply [\[BB13, Proposition 2.9\]](#).  $\square$

**Corollary 5.3.1** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ . Then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $\varphi \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \omega)$ ;
- (2)  $F_\varphi \in \mathcal{E}^1(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P)$ ;
- (3)  $G_\varphi \in L^1(P)$ .

**Definition 5.3.1** We define

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}_{\text{tor}}^\infty(X, \omega) &= \mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \omega) \cap \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega), \\ \mathcal{E}_{\text{tor}}^1(X, \omega) &= \mathcal{E}^1(X, \omega) \cap \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega), \\ \mathcal{E}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega) &= \mathcal{E}(X, \omega) \cap \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega). \end{aligned}$$

cor:toricd1

**Corollary 5.3.2** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \mathcal{E}_{\text{tor}}^1(X, \omega)$ , then*

$$d_1(\varphi, \psi) = -n! \int_P (G_\varphi + G_\psi - 2G_{\varphi \vee \psi}) \, d \text{vol}.$$

## 5.4 Geodesics

prop:toricgeodseg

**Proposition 5.4.1** *Let  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}_{\text{tor}}^1(X, \omega)$ . The geodesic  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in (0,1)}$  from  $\varphi_0$  to  $\varphi_1$  satisfies the following: for each  $t \in (0, 1)$ ,  $\varphi_t \in \mathcal{E}_{\text{tor}}^1(X, \omega)$  and*

$$G_{\varphi_t} = (1-t)G_{\varphi_0} + tG_{\varphi_1}.$$

This will be proved more generally in [Corollary 12.2.2](#).



**Definition 5.4.1** We define

$$\mathcal{R}_{\text{tor}}^1(X, \omega) := \{ \ell \in \mathcal{R}^1(X, \omega) : \ell_t \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega) \text{ for all } t \geq 0 \}.$$

**Corollary 5.4.1** Let  $\ell \in \mathcal{R}_{\text{tor}}^1(X, \omega)$ . Then there is an integrable convex function  $G' \in \text{Conv}(N_{\mathbb{R}})$  with  $\overline{\text{Dom } G'} = P$  such that

$$G_{\ell_t} = G_0 + tG'$$

for all  $t \geq 0$ .

We could also make [Example 4.2.1](#) concrete.

**Proposition 5.4.2** Suppose that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \omega)$ . Then the ray  $\ell^\varphi$  defined in [Example 4.2.1](#) satisfies:

$$G_{\ell_t} = G_0 + t f_\ell, \quad f_\ell(x) = \min_{\substack{\lambda \in [0,1] \\ x_1 \in P, x_0 \in \Delta(\omega, \varphi) \\ \lambda x_1 + (1-\lambda)x_0 = x}} \lambda$$

for any  $t \geq 0$  and  $x \in M_{\mathbb{R}}$ .

**Proof** Recall that for each  $C > 0$ , we defined  $(\ell_t^{\varphi, C})_t$  as the geodesic from 0 to  $-C \vee \varphi$ . By [Proposition 5.1.2](#), [Proposition 5.1.4](#), we have  $G_{-C \vee \varphi} = (G_0 + C) \wedge G_\varphi$ . So by [Proposition 5.4.1](#), we have

$$G_{\ell_t^{\varphi, C}} = \frac{t}{C} ((G_0 + C) \wedge G_\varphi) + \frac{C-t}{C} G_0$$

for each  $t \in [0, C]$ .

Recall that for all  $t \geq 0$ ,

$$\ell_t = \sup_{C \geq t}^* \ell_t^{\varphi, C}.$$

It follows from [Proposition 5.1.4](#) that

$$G_{\ell_t} = \text{cl} \inf_{C \geq t} \frac{t}{C} ((G_0 + C) \wedge G_\varphi) + \frac{C-t}{C} G_0.$$

Since the infimum is clearly linear, the closure operation is not needed and  $G_{\ell_t}$  is linear in  $t$ . So it suffices to compute the slope  $f$ :

$$f_\ell := \inf_{C > 0} \frac{1}{C} ((G_0 + C) \wedge G_\varphi) - \frac{1}{C} G_0.$$

We compute this limit using [Proposition A.1.2](#): for  $x \in M_{\mathbb{R}}$ , we compute the slope as follows

$$\begin{aligned}
f_\ell(x) &= \inf_{C>0} \inf_{\substack{\lambda \in (0,1) \\ x_1, x_0 \in M_{\mathbb{R}} \\ \lambda x_1 + (1-\lambda)x_0 = x}} \lambda \left( \frac{G_0(x_1)}{C} + 1 \right) + \frac{1-\lambda}{C} G_\varphi(x_0) - \frac{G_0(x)}{C} \\
&= \inf_{\substack{\lambda \in (0,1) \\ x_1, x_0 \in M_{\mathbb{R}} \\ \lambda x_1 + (1-\lambda)x_0 = x}} \inf_{C>0} \lambda \left( \frac{G_0(x_1)}{C} + 1 \right) + \frac{1-\lambda}{C} G_\varphi(x_0) - \frac{G_0(x)}{C} \\
&= \min_{\substack{\lambda \in [0,1] \\ x_1 \in P, x_0 \in \Delta(\omega, \varphi) \\ \lambda x_1 + (1-\lambda)x_0 = x}} \lambda.
\end{aligned}$$

**Part II**  
**The theory of  $\mathcal{I}$ -good singularities**

In this part, we will develop the theory of  $\mathcal{I}$ -good singularities.

## Chapter 6

### Comparison of singularities

chap:comp

#### 6.1 The $P$ - and $I$ -partial orders

sec:PIpartialorder

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$ .

Recall that we have defined a partial order on  $\text{QPSH}(X)$  in [Definition 1.5.2](#) to compare the singularity types of quasi-plurisubharmonic functions. The problem with this partial order is that it is too fine. In general, for our interest, it is helpful to consider rougher relations.

##### 6.1.1 The definitions of the partial orders

Recall that the  $P$ -envelope is defined in [Definition 3.1.2](#).

def:Pmoresing

**Definition 6.1.1** Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ , we say  $\varphi$  is  $P$ -more singular than  $\psi$  and write  $\varphi \leq_P \psi$  if for some closed smooth real  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$  such that  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , we have

$$P_\theta[\varphi] \leq P_\theta[\psi].$$

Suppose that  $\varphi \leq_P \psi$  and  $\psi \leq_P \varphi$ , we shall write  $\varphi \sim_P \psi$  and say  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  have the same  $P$ -singularity type.

We need to show that the definition is independent of the choice of  $\theta$ .

lma:Pproj\_insens\_omega

**Lemma 6.1.1** Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . For any Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ , the following are equivalent:

- (1)  $P_\theta[\varphi] \leq P_\theta[\psi]$ ;
- (2)  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\varphi] \leq P_{\theta+\omega}[\psi]$ .

**Proof** (1) implies (2): Observe that

$$P_\theta[\varphi] \leq P_{\theta+\omega}[\varphi], \quad \varphi \leq P_\theta[\varphi].$$

It follows that

$$P_{\theta+\omega}[\varphi] = P_{\theta+\omega}[P_{\theta}[\varphi]]. \quad (6.1)$$

{eq:doubleP}

A similar formula holds for  $\psi$ . So we see that (2) holds.

(2) implies (1): By (6.1), we may assume that  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  are both model potentials in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

Observe that  $\varphi \vee \psi \leq P_{\theta+\omega}[\psi]$ . It follows that  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\varphi \vee \psi] \leq P_{\theta+\omega}[\psi]$ . The reverse inequality is trivial, so

$$P_{\theta+\omega}[\varphi \vee \psi] = P_{\theta+\omega}[\psi].$$

From the direction we have proved, for any  $C \geq 1$ ,

$$P_{\theta+C\omega}[\varphi \vee \psi] = P_{\theta+C\omega}[\psi].$$

So by [Proposition 3.1.2](#),

$$\int_X (\theta + C\omega + \text{dd}^c(\varphi \vee \psi))^n = \int_X (\theta + C\omega + \text{dd}^c\psi)^n.$$

Since both sides are polynomials in  $C$ , the equality extends to  $C = 0$ , namely,

$$\int_X \theta_{\varphi \vee \psi}^n = \int_X \theta_{\psi}^n.$$

As  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  are both model, it follows that  $\varphi \vee \psi = \psi$ . So (1) follows.  $\square$

prop:Pequivchar2

**Proposition 6.1.1** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\varphi \leq \psi$ . Then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $\varphi \sim_P \psi$ ;
- (2) For each  $j = 0, \dots, n$ , we have

$$\int_X \theta_{\varphi}^j \wedge \theta_{V_{\theta}}^{n-j} = \int_X \theta_{\psi}^j \wedge \theta_{V_{\theta}}^{n-j}. \quad (6.2)$$

{eq:mixedmassequal}

Assume furthermore that  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , then these conditions are equivalent to the following:

- (3) we have

$$\int_X \theta_{\varphi}^n = \int_X \theta_{\psi}^n.$$

**Proof** We first prove the equivalence between 1 and 3 when  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ .

(1)  $\implies$  (3). Assume that  $\varphi \sim_P \psi$ . By [Definition 6.1.1](#), we have

$$P_{\theta}[\varphi] = P_{\theta}[\psi].$$

So (3) follows from [Proposition 3.1.2](#).

(3)  $\implies$  (1). It follows from [Theorem 3.1.1](#) that  $P_{\theta}[\varphi] = P_{\theta}[\psi]$ , so (1) follows.

Let us come back to the general case.

(1)  $\implies$  (2). Fix  $j \in \{0, \dots, n\}$ , we argue (6.2).

Take a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . By Definition 6.1.1, for each  $\epsilon > 0$ , we have

$$P_{\theta+\epsilon\omega}[\varphi] = P_{\theta+\epsilon\omega}[\psi].$$

It follows from Proposition 3.1.2 that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega + \text{dd}^c \psi)^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} &= \int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega + \text{dd}^c P_{\theta+\epsilon\omega}[\psi])^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} \\ &= \int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega + \text{dd}^c P_{\theta+\epsilon\omega}[\varphi])^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} \\ &= \int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega + \text{dd}^c \varphi)^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j}. \end{aligned}$$

Since the two extremes are both polynomials in  $\epsilon$ , we conclude that the same holds when  $\epsilon = 0$ , that is, (6.2) holds.

(2)  $\implies$  (1). Assume (6.2) holds for all  $j$ . For each  $t \in (0, 1)$ , we have

$$\int_X \theta_{t\varphi+(1-t)V_\theta}^n = \int_X \theta_{t\psi+(1-t)V_\theta}^n$$

by the binomial expansion. By the implication (3)  $\implies$  (1), we have

$$t\varphi + (1-t)V_\theta \sim_P t\psi + (1-t)V_\theta$$

for each  $t \in (0, 1)$ .

Fix a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . From the implication (1)  $\implies$  (3), we have

$$\int_X (\theta + \omega)_{t\varphi+(1-t)V_\theta}^n = \int_X (\theta + \omega)_{t\psi+(1-t)V_\theta}^n.$$

Since both sides are polynomials in  $t$ , the same holds when  $t = 1$ . From the implication (3)  $\implies$  (1) again, we have  $\varphi \sim_P \psi$ .  $\square$

prop:Iequivchar2

**Proposition 6.1.2** *Given  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ , the following are equivalent:*

(1) *for any  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ , we have*

$$I(k\varphi) \subseteq I(k\psi),$$

(2) *for any  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ , we have*

$$I(\lambda\varphi) \subseteq I(\lambda\psi),$$

(3) *for any modification  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  and any  $y \in Y$ , we have*

$$v(\pi^*\varphi, y) \geq v(\pi^*\psi, y),$$

(4) *for any proper bimeromorphic morphism  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  from a Kähler manifold and any  $y \in Y$ , we have*

$$v(\pi^* \varphi, y) \geq v(\pi^* \psi, y),$$

and

(5) for any prime divisor  $E$  over  $X$ , we have

$$v(\varphi, E) \geq v(\psi, E).$$

**Proof** The proof is almost identical to that of [Proposition 3.2.1](#), we omit the details.  $\square$

**Definition 6.1.2** Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ , we say  $\varphi$  is *I-more singular than*  $\psi$  and write  $\varphi \leq_I \psi$  if the equivalent conditions in [Proposition 3.2.1](#) are satisfied.

Note that  $\varphi \leq_I \psi$  and  $\psi \leq_I \varphi$  both hold if and only if  $\varphi \sim_I \psi$  in the sense of [Definition 3.2.1](#).

**Proposition 6.1.3** Suppose that  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  and  $\theta$  is a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  such that  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Then the following are equivalent:

- (1)  $\varphi \leq_I \psi$ ;
- (2)  $P_\theta[\varphi]_I \leq P_\theta[\psi]_I$ .

**Proof** (1)  $\implies$  (2). This follows immediately from [Definition 3.2.2](#).

(2)  $\implies$  (1). This follows from [Proposition 3.2.6](#).  $\square$

**Lemma 6.1.2** Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ . Then the following are equivalent:

- (1)  $\varphi \leq_P \psi$  (resp.  $\varphi \leq_I \psi$ );
- (2)  $\varphi \vee \psi \sim_P \psi$  (resp.  $\varphi \vee \psi \sim_I \psi$ ).

**Proof** Take a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$  such that  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . We only prove the  $P$  case, the  $I$  case is similar.

(2)  $\implies$  (1). By (2),  $P_\theta[\varphi \vee \psi] = P_\theta[\psi]$ . But  $\varphi \leq P_\theta[\varphi \vee \psi]$ , so (1) follows.

(1)  $\implies$  (2). We may assume that  $\varphi, \psi$  are both model in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  as

$$P_\theta[\varphi \vee \psi] = P_\theta[P_\theta[\varphi] \vee P_\theta[\psi]].$$

Then  $\varphi \leq \psi$  and (2) follows.  $\square$

cor:PimpliesI

**Corollary 6.1.1** Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ . Assume that  $\varphi \leq_P \psi$ , then  $\varphi \leq_I \psi$ .

**Proof** This follows from [Lemma 6.1.2](#) and [Proposition 3.2.8](#).  $\square$

cor:Pvarphidef3

**Corollary 6.1.2** Assume that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} P_\theta[\varphi] &= \sup \{ \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) : \psi \leq 0, \psi \sim_P \varphi \} \\ &= \sup \{ \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) : \psi \leq 0, \psi \leq_P \varphi \}. \end{aligned}$$



**Proof** Note that  $\psi \sim_P \varphi$  implies that  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  by [Proposition 6.1.4](#). So the first equality is a direct consequence of [Proposition 6.1.1](#) and [Theorem 3.1.1](#).

Next we prove the second equality. We only need to show that for any  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  with  $\psi \leq 0$  and  $\psi \leq_P \varphi$ , we have  $\psi \leq P_\theta[\varphi]$ .

By [Lemma 6.1.2](#), we know that  $P_\theta[\varphi] \vee \psi \sim_P \varphi$  and  $P_\theta[\varphi] \vee \psi \leq 0$ . It follows from the first equality that  $\psi \leq P_\theta[\varphi]$ .  $\square$

Similarly, we have

cor:Tenvelopedef2

**Corollary 6.1.3** Assume that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , then

$$P_\theta[\varphi]_I = \sup \{ \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) : \psi \leq 0, \psi \leq_I \varphi \}.$$

### 6.1.2 Properties of the partial orders

Now we state a more natural version of the monotonicity theorem [Theorem 2.3.2](#).

prop:mono2

**Proposition 6.1.4** Let  $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_n$  be closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -forms on  $X$ . Let  $\varphi_i, \psi_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_i)$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . Assume that  $\varphi_i \leq_P \psi_i$  for each  $i$ . Then

$$\int_X \theta_{\varphi_1} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{\varphi_n} \leq \int_X \theta_{\psi_1} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{\psi_n}.$$

**Proof** Fix a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . For each  $i = 1, \dots, n$ , since  $\varphi_i \leq_P \psi_i$ , we have

$$P_{\theta+\epsilon\omega}[\varphi_i] \leq P_{\theta+\epsilon\omega}[\psi_i]$$

for all  $\epsilon > 0$ . Therefore, by [Proposition 3.1.2](#) and [Theorem 2.3.2](#), we have

$$\int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega)_{\varphi_1} \wedge \dots \wedge (\theta + \epsilon\omega)_{\varphi_n} \leq \int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega)_{\psi_1} \wedge \dots \wedge (\theta + \epsilon\omega)_{\psi_n}.$$

Since both sides are polynomials in  $\epsilon$ , we find that the same holds at  $\epsilon = 0$ , which is the desired inequality.  $\square$

prop:Ppartialsum

**Proposition 6.1.5** Let  $\varphi, \psi, \varphi', \psi' \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ . Assume that

$$\varphi \leq_P \psi, \quad \varphi' \leq_P \psi'.$$

Then

$$\varphi + \varphi' \leq_P \psi + \psi'.$$

The same holds with  $\leq_I$  in place of  $\leq_P$ .

**Proof** Take a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$  such that  $\varphi, \psi, \varphi', \psi' \in \text{PSH}(X, \omega)_{>0}$ . The statement for  $\leq_I$  is a simple consequence of [Proposition 1.4.2](#). We only need to handle the case of  $\leq_P$ .

**Step 1.** We first show that

$$P_\omega[\varphi] + P_\omega[\varphi'] \sim_P \varphi + \varphi'.$$

In fact, we clearly have

$$P_\omega[\varphi] + P_\omega[\varphi'] \geq \varphi + \varphi'.$$

So it suffices to show that they have the same volume. We compute

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_X (2\omega + \text{dd}^c P_\omega[\varphi] + \text{dd}^c P_\omega[\varphi'])^n \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^n \binom{n}{j} \int_X (\omega + \text{dd}^c P_\omega[\varphi])^j \wedge (\omega + \text{dd}^c P_\omega[\varphi'])^{n-j} \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^n \binom{n}{j} \int_X \omega_\varphi^j \wedge \omega_{\varphi'}^{n-j} \\ &= \int_X (2\omega + \varphi + \varphi')^n, \end{aligned}$$

where we applied [Proposition 3.1.2](#) on the third line.

**Step 2.** By Step 1, we may assume that  $\varphi, \psi, \varphi', \psi'$  are all model potentials. So  $\varphi \leq \psi$  and  $\varphi' \leq \psi'$ . Our assertion follows.  $\square$

prop:Partialsup

**Proposition 6.1.6** *Let  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}, (\psi_i)_{i \in I}$  be uniformly bounded from above non-empty families in  $\text{QPSH}(X)$ . Assume that there exists a closed smooth real  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  such that  $\varphi_i, \psi_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\varphi_i \leq_P \psi_i$  for all  $i \in I$ . Then*

$$\sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_i \leq_P \sup_{i \in I}^* \psi_i.$$

*The same holds with  $\leq_I$  in place of  $\leq_P$ .*

**Proof** By increasing  $\theta$ , we may assume that  $\varphi_i, \psi_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  for all  $i \in I$ . The statement for  $\leq_I$  is a simple consequence of [Corollary 1.4.1](#), we only have to consider the statement for  $\leq_P$ .

**Step 1.** We first handle the case where  $I$  is a directed set and  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}$  and  $(\psi_i)_{i \in I}$  are increasing nets.

In this case, our assertion follows simply from [Proposition 3.1.9](#).

**Step 2.** We handle the case where  $I$  is finite. We may assume that  $I = \{0, 1\}$ . It suffices to show that

$$P_\theta[\varphi_0] \vee P_\theta[\varphi_1] \sim_P \varphi_0 \vee \varphi_1.$$

For this purpose, it suffices to prove the following:

$$P_\theta[\varphi_0] \vee \varphi_1 \sim_P \varphi_0 \vee \varphi_1.$$

The  $\geq_P$  direction is obvious. So it suffices to argue that they have the same mass. We may assume that  $\varphi_0 \leq 0$ . Thanks to [Lemma 2.3.1](#), for each  $\epsilon \in (0, 1)$ , we can find  $\eta_\epsilon \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  such that

$$(1 - \epsilon)P_\theta[\varphi_0] + \epsilon\eta \leq \varphi_0.$$

Observe that  $\eta \leq \varphi_0 \leq P_\theta[\varphi_0]$ . In particular,

$$(1 - \epsilon)(P_\theta[\varphi_0] \vee \varphi_1) + \epsilon\eta \leq \varphi_0 \vee \varphi_1.$$

It follows from [Theorem 2.3.2](#) that

$$(1 - \epsilon)^n \int_X \theta_{P_\theta[\varphi_0] \vee \varphi_1}^n \leq \int_X \theta_{\varphi_0 \vee \varphi_1}^n.$$

Letting  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0+$  and using [Theorem 2.3.2](#) again, we conclude that

$$\theta_{P_\theta[\varphi_0] \vee \varphi_1}^n = \int_X \theta_{\varphi_0 \vee \varphi_1}^n.$$

Our assertion is proved.

**Step 3.** The general case can be reduced to the two cases handled in Step 1 and Step 2. More precisely, by [Proposition 1.2.2](#), we could find a countable subset  $J \subseteq I$  such that

$$\sup_{j \in J}^* \varphi_j = \sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_i, \quad \sup_{j \in J}^* \psi_j = \sup_{i \in I}^* \psi_i.$$

We may replace  $I$  by  $J$  and assume that  $I$  is countable. We may assume that  $I$  is infinite, as otherwise, we could apply Step 2 directly. So let us assume that  $J = \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ . In this case, by Step 2 again, we may assume that both  $(\varphi_i)_i$  and  $(\psi_i)_i$  are increasing, which is the situation of Step 1.

## 6.2 The $d_S$ -pseudometric

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $\theta$  be a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing a big cohomology class. The goal of this section is to study a pseudometric on the space  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

### 6.2.1 The definition of the $d_S$ -pseudometric

Recall that for any  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , the geodesic ray  $\ell^\varphi \in \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta)$  is defined in [Example 4.2.1](#).

def:dS

**Definition 6.2.1** For  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , we define

$$d_S(\varphi, \psi) := d_1(\ell^\varphi, \ell^\psi).$$

When we want to be more specific, we write  $d_{S, \theta}$  instead of  $d_S$ .

**Proposition 6.2.1** *The function  $d_S$  defined in [Definition 6.2.1](#) is a pseudometric on  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .*

**Proof** This follows immediately from [Theorem 4.2.1](#).  $\square$

When studying a pseudometric, the first thing is to understand when the distance between two elements vanishes.

We first prove a preparation:

lma:dSalmostriang

**Lemma 6.2.1** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Then*

$$d_S(\varphi, \psi) \leq d_S(\varphi, \varphi \vee \psi) + d_S(\psi, \varphi \vee \psi) \leq C_n d_S(\varphi, \psi),$$

where  $C_n = 3(n+1)2^{n+2}$ .

**Proof** Observe that

$$\ell^\varphi \vee \ell^\psi = \ell^{\varphi \vee \psi}. \quad (6.3)$$

{eq:elllorsingtype}

In fact, it is clear that

$$\ell^\varphi \leq \ell^{\varphi \vee \psi}, \quad \ell^\psi \leq \ell^{\varphi \vee \psi},$$

so the  $\leq$  direction in (6.3) holds.

Conversely, if  $\ell' \in \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta)$  and  $\ell' \geq \ell^\varphi \vee \ell^\psi$ , then for each  $t \geq 0$ ,

$$\ell'_t \geq ((V_\theta - t) \vee \varphi) \vee ((V_\theta - t) \vee \psi) = (V_\theta - t) \vee (\varphi \vee \psi).$$

It follows that  $\ell' \geq \ell^{\varphi \vee \psi}$ .

So our assertion follows from [Lemma 4.2.1](#).  $\square$

prop:ds@char

**Proposition 6.2.2** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $\varphi \sim_P \psi$ ;
- (2)  $d_S(\varphi, \psi) = 0$ .

*In particular,  $d_S(\varphi, P_\theta[\varphi]) = 0$  for all  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ .*

**Proof** By [Lemma 6.1.2](#), we have  $\varphi \sim_P \psi$  if and only if  $\varphi \sim_P \varphi \vee \psi$  and  $\psi \sim_P \varphi \vee \psi$ . By [Lemma 6.2.1](#),  $d_S(\varphi, \psi) = 0$  if and only if  $d_S(\varphi, \varphi \vee \psi) = 0$  and  $d_S(\psi, \varphi \vee \psi) = 0$ . So it suffices to prove the assertion when  $\varphi \leq \psi$ . Assuming this, by [Proposition 4.2.5](#) we have that 2 holds if and only if

$$\mathbf{E}(\ell^\varphi) = \mathbf{E}(\ell^\psi),$$

But using (4.5), this holds if and only if

$$\sum_{j=0}^n \int_X \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} = \sum_{j=0}^n \int_X \theta_\psi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j}.$$

But by [Theorem 2.3.2](#), this holds if and only if for all  $j = 0, \dots, n$ ,

$$\int_X \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} = \int_X \theta_\psi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j},$$

which is equivalent to 1 by [Proposition 6.1.1](#).  $\square$

**Lemma 6.2.2** Suppose that  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\varphi \leq_P \psi$ , then

$$d_S(\varphi, \psi) = \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{j=0}^n \left( \int_X \theta_\psi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} \right).$$

**Proof** This follows trivially from [\(4.5\)](#).  $\square$

**Corollary 6.2.1** Suppose that  $\varphi, \psi, \eta \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\varphi \leq_P \psi \leq_P \eta$ . Then

$$d_S(\varphi, \eta) \geq d_S(\varphi, \psi), \quad d_S(\varphi, \eta) \geq d_S(\psi, \eta).$$

**Proof** This is an immediate consequence of [Lemma 6.2.2](#) and [Proposition 6.1.4](#).  $\square$

**Corollary 6.2.2** For any  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} d_S(\varphi, \psi) &\leq \sum_{j=0}^n \left( 2 \int_X \theta_{\varphi \vee \psi}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_\psi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} \right) \\ &\leq C_n d_S(\varphi, \psi), \end{aligned} \tag{6.4}$$

where  $C_n = 3(n+1)2^{n+2}$ .

In particular, if  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}$  is a net in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  with  $d_S$ -limit  $\varphi$ , then for each  $j = 0, \dots, n$ ,

$$\lim_{i \in I} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} = \int_X \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} = \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i \vee \varphi}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j}$$

**Proof** The estimates (6.4) follows from the combination of [Lemma 6.2.2](#) and [Lemma 6.2.1](#).

The last assertion follows from (6.4) and [Theorem 2.3.2](#).  $\square$

**Corollary 6.2.3** Suppose that  $\varphi_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  ( $i \in I$ ) be an increasing net, uniformly bounded from above. Then

$$\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \sup_{j \in I}^* \varphi_j.$$

**Proof** Write  $\varphi = \sup_{j \in I}^* \varphi_j$ . Recall that by [Proposition 1.2.1](#),  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . By [Lemma 6.2.2](#), it suffices to show that for each  $k = 0, \dots, n$ , we have

$$\lim_{j \in I} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^k \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-k} = \int_X \theta_\varphi^k \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-k}.$$

The latter follows from [Corollary 2.3.1](#).  $\square$

By contrast, for decreasing nets, the situation is different:

cor:decnetdS

**Corollary 6.2.4** Suppose that  $\varphi_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  is a decreasing net such that  $\varphi := \inf_{i \in I} \varphi_i \not\equiv -\infty$ . Then the following are equivalent:

(1) we have

$$\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi;$$

(2) for each  $k = 0, \dots, n$ , we have

$$\lim_{j \in I} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^k \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-k} = \int_X \theta_\varphi^k \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-k}. \quad (6.5)$$

{eq:mixedmasslim}

If we assume furthermore that  $\int_X \theta_\varphi^n > 0$ , then the above conditions are equivalent to

(3) we have

$$\lim_{j \in I} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n = \int_X \theta_\varphi^n.$$

In the latter case, we also have

$$P_\theta[\varphi] = \inf_{j \in I} P_\theta[\varphi_j]. \quad (6.6)$$

{eq:Pcontdecseq}

**Proof** Recall that by [Proposition 1.2.1](#),  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

(1)  $\iff$  (2). This follows immediately from [Lemma 6.2.2](#).

(2)  $\implies$  (3). This is trivial.

(3)  $\implies$  (2). Let  $(b_j)_{j \in I}$  be a net converging to  $\infty$  such that

$$b_j \in \left( 1, \left( \frac{\int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n}{\int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n - \int_X \theta_\varphi^n} \right)^{1/n} \right).$$

By [Lemma 2.3.1](#), for each  $j \in I$ , we can find  $\eta_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that

$$b_j^{-1} \eta_j + (1 - b_j^{-1}) \varphi_j \leq \varphi.$$

It follows from [Theorem 2.3.2](#) that for any  $k = 0, \dots, n$ ,

$$\int_X \theta_\varphi^k \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-k} \geq (1 - b_j^{-1})^k \int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^k \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-k}.$$

Taking the limit, we conclude the  $\leq$  direction in (6.5). The  $\geq$  direction follows from [Theorem 2.3.2](#).

Finally, we argue (6.6).

Let  $\psi_j = P_\theta[\varphi_j]$ . It follows from [Corollary 3.1.1](#) that  $\psi_j$  is a model potential. Let

$$\psi = \inf_{j \in I} \psi_j.$$

It follows from [Proposition 3.1.2](#) and [Proposition 3.1.8](#) that

$$\int_X \theta_\psi^n = \lim_{j \in I} \int_X \theta_{\psi_j}^n = \lim_{j \in I} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n = \int_X \theta_\varphi^n.$$

By [Proposition 3.1.7](#),  $\psi$  is a model potential. So by [Proposition 6.1.1](#), we have  $\varphi \sim_P \psi$  and hence  $\psi = P_\theta[\varphi]$  by [Corollary 6.1.2](#).  $\square$

Having understood the increasing and decreasing cases, we shall handle more general convergent sequences. In fact, since  $d_S$  is a pseudometric, the topology is completely determined by convergent sequences, so we do not need to consider nets in general.

prop:incanddec

**Proposition 6.2.3** *Let  $\varphi_j, \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  ( $j \geq 1$ ),  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ . Assume that there is  $\delta > 0$  such that*

$$\int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n \geq \delta, \quad \int_X \theta_\varphi^n \geq \delta$$

*for all  $j$  and the  $\varphi_j$ 's and  $\varphi$  are all model potentials. Then up to replacing  $(\varphi_j)_j$  by a subsequence, there is a decreasing sequence  $\psi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and an increasing sequence  $\eta_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that*

- (1)  $\psi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi, \eta_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ ;
- (2)  $\psi_j \geq \varphi_j \geq \eta_j$  for all  $j$ .

*In fact, for any  $j \geq 1$ , we will take*

$$\eta_j = \inf_{k \in \mathbb{N}} \varphi_j \wedge \varphi_{j+1} \wedge \cdots \wedge \varphi_{j+k}, \quad \psi_j = \sup_{k \geq j}^* \varphi_k.$$

**Proof** We are free to replace  $(\varphi_j)_j$  by a subsequence. So we may assume that

$$d_S(\varphi_j, \varphi_{j+1}) \leq C_n^{-2j}, \quad d_S(\varphi, \varphi_j) \leq \frac{2^{-j-2}}{(n+1)C_n}, \quad (6.7)$$

{eq:conditiononvarphi\_jtemp1}

where  $C_n$  is the constant in [Corollary 6.2.2](#).

**Step 1.** We handle  $\psi_j$ 's. For each  $j \geq 1$  and  $k \geq 1$ , by [Corollary 6.2.2](#) we have

$$\begin{aligned} d_S(\varphi_j, \varphi_j \vee \varphi_{j+1} \vee \cdots \vee \varphi_{j+k}) &\leq C_n d_S(\varphi_j, \varphi_{j+1} \vee \cdots \vee \varphi_{j+k}) \\ &\leq C_n d_S(\varphi_j, \varphi_{j+1}) + C_n d_S(\varphi_{j+1}, \varphi_{j+1} \vee \cdots \vee \varphi_{j+k}). \end{aligned}$$

By iteration, we find

$$d_S(\varphi_j, \varphi_j \vee \varphi_{j+1} \vee \cdots \vee \varphi_{j+k}) \leq \sum_{a=j}^{j+k-1} C_n^{a+1-j} d_S(\varphi_a, \varphi_{a+1}) \leq \sum_{a=j}^{j+k-1} C_n^{a+1-j} C_n^{-2a} = \frac{C_n^{1-2j}}{1 - C_n^{-1}}.$$

Using [Corollary 6.2.3](#), we have

$$\varphi_j \vee \varphi_{j+1} \vee \cdots \vee \varphi_{j+k} \xrightarrow{d_S} \psi_j$$

as  $k \rightarrow \infty$  and hence when  $j \geq j_0$  for some  $j_0$ , we have

$$d_S(\varphi_j, \psi_j) \leq \frac{C_n^{1-2j}}{1 - C_n^{-1}} \leq \frac{1}{(n+1)C_n 2^{2+j}}. \quad (6.8)$$

{eq:dsvaphijpsijesttempl}

We conclude that  $\psi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ .

Moreover, we observe that

$$\varphi = \inf_j P_\theta[\psi_j] \quad (6.9)$$

{eq:varphiexpressiontempl}

by [Corollary 6.2.4](#).

**Step 2.** We consider the  $\eta_j$ 's.

For each  $j \geq 1$  and  $k \geq 0$ , we let

$$\eta_j^k := \varphi_j \wedge \cdots \wedge \varphi_{j+k}.$$

Using the assumption (6.7) and [Corollary 6.2.2](#), we have

$$\left| \int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n - \int_X \theta_\varphi^n \right| \leq 2^{-j}.$$

Similarly, using (6.8), we have

$$\left| \int_X \theta_{\psi_j}^n - \int_X \theta_\varphi^n \right| \leq 2^{-j}.$$

**Step 2-1.** Take  $j_1$  so that for  $j \geq j_1$ ,  $2^{3-j} < \delta$ . We claim that for a fixed  $j \geq j_0 \vee j_1$ , for any  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , we have  $\eta_j^k \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and

$$\int_X \theta_{\eta_j^k} \geq \int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n - \sum_{a=0}^k 2^{-j-a+2}.$$

We argue by induction on  $k \geq 0$ . The case  $k = 0$  follows from [Theorem 2.3.2](#). When  $k > 0$ , assume that the case  $k - 1$  is known. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \int_X \theta_{\eta_j^{k-1}}^n + \int_X \theta_{\varphi_{j+k}}^n &> \int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n - \sum_{a=0}^{k-1} 2^{2-j-a} + \int_X \theta_{\psi_{j+k-1}}^n - 2^{2-j-k} \\ &\geq \int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n - 2^{3-j} + \int_X \theta_{\psi_{j+k-1}}^n > \int_X \theta_{\psi_{j+k-1}}^n. \end{aligned}$$

It follows from [Proposition 3.1.6](#) that  $\eta_j^k \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . By [Theorem 3.1.3](#), we deduce that

$$\int_X \theta_{\varphi_{j+k}}^n + \int_X \theta_{\eta_j^{k-1}}^n \leq \int_X \theta_{\psi_{j+k-1}}^n + \int_X \theta_{\eta_j^k}^n.$$

Our claim therefore follows.

**Step 2-2.** It follows from [Proposition 3.1.5](#) that



$$P_\theta[\eta_j^k] = \eta_k^j.$$

By [Proposition 3.1.8](#), we have

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_j^k}^n = \int_X \theta_{\eta_j}^n.$$

By Step 1, for large enough  $j$ , we have

$$\int_X \theta_{\eta_j}^n \geq \int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n - 2^{3-j} > 0.$$

Let  $\eta = \sup^*_j \eta^j$ . Observe that we also have

$$\int_X \theta_{\eta_j}^n \leq \int_X \theta_{\psi_j}^n$$

by [Theorem 2.3.2](#). It follows that

$$\int_X \theta_\eta^n = \lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} \int_X \theta_{\eta_j}^n = \lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} \int_X \theta_{\psi_j}^n = \int_X \theta_\varphi^n.$$

Since  $\eta_j \leq \varphi_j \leq \psi_j \leq 0$ , we also have that  $\eta_j \leq P_\theta[\psi_j]$ . Therefore, by [Corollary 6.2.4](#), we also have  $\eta \leq \varphi$ . It follows from [Proposition 6.1.1](#) that  $\eta \sim_P \varphi$ . By [Corollary 6.2.3](#) and [Proposition 6.2.2](#), we have  $\eta^j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ .  $\square$

cor:completenessdS

**Corollary 6.2.5** *Let  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$  be a net in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Assume that there is  $\delta > 0$  such that  $\int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n \geq \delta$  for all  $j \in I$ . Then  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$  has a  $d_S$ -convergent subnet. If moreover  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$  is decreasing, then  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$  itself is convergent.*

**Proof** Since the space of  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  with  $\int_X \theta_\varphi^n \geq \delta$  is a pseudometric space, its completeness can be characterized using sequences instead of nets. So we may assume that  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$  is a sequence.

Replacing  $\varphi_j$  by a subsequence, we may assume that [\(6.7\)](#) holds. By the proof of [Proposition 6.2.3](#) Step 1, we may assume that  $\varphi_j$  is a decreasing sequence. In this case, by [Proposition 6.2.2](#) and [Corollary 6.1.2](#), we may assume that each  $\varphi_j$  is a model potential. Then  $\varphi_j$  converges by [Corollary 6.2.4](#) and [Proposition 3.1.8](#).

On the other hand, if  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$  is decreasing, then it is convergent by [Corollary 6.2.4](#) and [Proposition 3.1.8](#).  $\square$

lma:dSsmallmult

**Lemma 6.2.3** *There is a constant  $C > 0$  such that for any  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  satisfying that  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current, we have*

$$d_{S, \theta}((1 - \epsilon)\varphi, \varphi) \leq C\epsilon$$

for  $\epsilon > 0$  such that  $(1 - \epsilon)\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

**Proof** By [Lemma 6.2.2](#), we can compute

$$\begin{aligned}
d_{S,\theta}((1-\epsilon)\varphi, \varphi) &= \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{j=0}^n \left( \int_X \theta_{(1-\epsilon)\varphi}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{j=0}^n \left( \int_X (1-\epsilon)^j \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} \right) \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=0}^n \sum_{k=0}^{j-1} \binom{j}{k} (1-\epsilon)^k \epsilon^{j-k} \int_X \theta_\varphi^{j-k} \wedge \theta_\varphi^k \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j}.
\end{aligned}$$

Both terms are of the order of  $O(\epsilon)$ .  $\square$

## 6.2.2 Convergence theorems

`lma:dsconvpertV`

**Lemma 6.2.4** *Let  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}$  be a net in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Assume that  $\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ . Then for any  $t \in (0, 1]$ ,*

$$(1-t)\varphi_i + tV_\theta \xrightarrow{d_S} (1-t)\varphi + tV_\theta.$$

**Proof** Fix  $t \in (0, 1]$ , we write

$$\varphi_{i,t} = (1-t)\varphi_i + tV_\theta, \quad \varphi_t = (1-t)\varphi + tV_\theta$$

for any  $i \in I$ . By [Corollary 6.2.2](#), it suffices to show that for each  $j = 0, \dots, n$ ,

$$2 \int_X \theta_{\varphi_{i,t} \vee \varphi_t}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_{\varphi_{i,t}}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_{\varphi_t}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} \rightarrow 0. \quad (6.10)$$

`{eq:massconvafterpert}`

Observe that

$$\varphi_{i,t} \vee \varphi_t = (1-t)(\varphi \vee \varphi_i) + tV_\theta.$$

So after binary expansion, (6.10) follows from [Corollary 6.2.2](#).  $\square$

Similarly,

`lma:linearpertbyVtheta`

**Lemma 6.2.5** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . For each  $t \in (0, 1)$ , let  $\varphi_t = (1-t)\varphi + tV_\theta$ . Then*

$$\varphi_t \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$$

as  $t \rightarrow 0+$ .

**Proof** By [Lemma 6.2.2](#), we need to show that for each  $j = 1, \dots, n$ , we have

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow 0+} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_t}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} = \int_X \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j}.$$

For this purpose, we compute

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_X \theta_{\varphi_t}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{j-1} \binom{j}{i} (1-t)^i t^{j-i} \theta_\varphi^i \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-i}. \end{aligned}$$

As  $t \rightarrow 0+$ , the right-hand side clearly tends to 0.  $\square$

The following convergent theorem lies at the heart of the whole theory.

thm:convdS

**Theorem 6.2.1** *Let  $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_n$  be smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -forms on  $X$  representing big cohomology classes. Suppose that  $(\varphi_j^k)_{k \in I}$  are nets in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta_j)$  for  $j = 1, \dots, n$  and  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_n \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . We assume that  $\varphi_j^k \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi_j$  for each  $j = 1, \dots, n$ . Then*

$$\lim_{k \in I} \int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1^k} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n^k} = \int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n}. \quad (6.11)$$

{eq:convmixedmassds}

**Proof** Since  $d_S$  is a pseudometric, in order to establish the continuity of mixed masses, it suffices to consider sequences instead of nets. So we may assume that  $I = \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  as ordered sets.

**Step 1.** We reduce to the case where  $\varphi_j^k, \varphi_j$  all have positive masses and there is a constant  $\delta > 0$ , such that for all  $j$  and  $k$ ,

$$\int_X \theta_{j, \varphi_j^k}^n > \delta.$$

Take  $t \in (0, 1)$ . By [Lemma 6.2.4](#), we have

$$(1-t)\varphi_j^k + tV_{\theta_j} \xrightarrow{d_S} (1-t)\varphi_j + tV_{\theta_j}$$

for each  $j$ . Assume that we have proved the special case of the theorem, we have

$$\lim_{k \in I} \int_X \theta_{1, (1-t)\varphi_1^k + tV_{\theta_1}} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, (1-t)\varphi_n^k + tV_{\theta_n}} = \int_X \theta_{1, (1-t)\varphi_1 + tV_{\theta_1}} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, (1-t)\varphi_n + tV_{\theta_n}}.$$

Since both sides are polynomials in  $t$ , it follows that the same holds at  $t = 0$ . From this, (6.11) follows.

**Step 2.** Next we may assume that  $\varphi_j^k, \varphi_j$  are model potentials by [Proposition 6.2.2](#) and [Corollary 3.1.1](#).

It suffices to prove that any subsequence of  $\int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1^k} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n^k}$  has a converging subsequence with limit  $\int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1} \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n}$ . Thus, by [Proposition 6.2.3](#) and [Theorem 2.3.2](#), we may assume that for each fixed  $i$ ,  $\varphi_i^k$  is either increasing or decreasing. We may assume that for  $i \leq i_0$ , the sequence is decreasing and for  $i > i_0$ , the sequence is increasing.

Recall that in (6.11) the  $\geq$  inequality always holds by [Theorem 2.3.2](#), it suffices to prove

$$\overline{\lim}_{k \in I} \int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1^k} \wedge \cdots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n^k} \leq \int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n}. \quad (6.12)$$

{eq:limsup}

By **Theorem 2.3.2** in order to prove (6.12), we may assume that for  $j > i_0$ , the sequences  $\varphi_j^k$  are constant. Thus, we are reduced to the case where for all  $i$ ,  $\varphi_i^k$  are decreasing.

In this case, for each  $i$  we may take an increasing sequence  $b_i^k > 1$ , tending to  $\infty$ , such that

$$(b_i^k)^n \int_X \theta_{i, \varphi_i}^n \geq \left( (b_i^k)^n - 1 \right) \int_X \theta_{i, \varphi_i^k}^n.$$

Let  $\psi_i^k$  be the maximal  $\theta_i$ -psh function such that

$$(b_i^k)^{-1} \psi_i^k + \left( 1 - (b_i^k)^{-1} \right) \varphi_i^k \leq \varphi_i,$$

whose existence is guaranteed by **Lemma 2.3.1**.

Then by **Theorem 2.3.2** again,

$$\prod_{i=1}^n \left( 1 - (b_i^k)^{-1} \right) \int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1^k} \wedge \cdots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n^k} \leq \int_X \theta_{1, \varphi_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge \theta_{n, \varphi_n}.$$

Letting  $k \rightarrow \infty$ , we conclude (6.12).  $\square$

cor:dsconvcrit

**Corollary 6.2.6** Suppose that  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}$  is a net in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Then the following are equivalent:

- (1)  $\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ ;
- (2)  $\varphi_i \vee \varphi \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$  and

$$\lim_{i \in I} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} = \int_X \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} \quad (6.13)$$

{eq:massconv\_varphi}

for each  $j = 0, \dots, n$ .

The corollary allows us to reduce a number of convergence problems related to  $d_S$  to the case  $\varphi_i \geq \varphi$ , which is much easier to handle by **Lemma 6.2.2**. This is the most handy way of establishing  $d_S$ -convergence in practice.

**Proof** (1)  $\implies$  (2).  $\varphi_i \vee \varphi \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$  follows from **Corollary 6.2.2**. While (6.13) follows from **Theorem 6.2.1**.

(2)  $\implies$  (1). By (6.4), we need to show that for each  $j = 0, \dots, n$ , we have

$$2 \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i \vee \varphi}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_\varphi^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i}^j \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-j} \rightarrow 0.$$

This follows from **Theorem 6.2.1** and (6.13).  $\square$

cor:dSconv\_changetheta

**Corollary 6.2.7** Let  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}$  be a net in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Let  $\omega$  be a Kähler form on  $X$ . Then the following are equivalent:

- (1)  $\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_{S,\theta}} \varphi$ ;
- (2)  $\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_{S,\theta+\omega}} \varphi$ .

In particular, there is no risk when we simply write  $\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ .

**Proof** (1)  $\implies$  (2). It suffices to show that for each  $j = 0, \dots, n$ , we have

$$2 \int_X (\theta + \omega)_{\varphi_i \vee \varphi}^j \wedge (\theta + \omega)_{V_{\theta+\omega}}^{n-j} - \int_X (\theta + \omega)_{\varphi_i}^j \wedge (\theta + \omega)_{V_{\theta+\omega}}^{n-j} - \int_X (\theta + \omega)_{\varphi}^j \wedge (\theta + \omega)_{V_{\theta+\omega}}^{n-j} \rightarrow 0.$$

Note that this quantity is a linear combination of terms of the following form:

$$2 \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i \vee \varphi}^r \wedge \omega^{j-r} \wedge (\theta + \omega)_{V_{\theta+\omega}}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i}^r \wedge \omega^{j-r} \wedge (\theta + \omega)_{V_{\theta+\omega}}^{n-j} - \int_X \theta_{\varphi}^r \wedge \omega^{j-r} \wedge (\theta + \omega)_{V_{\theta+\omega}}^{n-j},$$

where  $r = 0, \dots, j$ . By [Theorem 6.2.1](#), it suffices to show that  $\varphi \vee \varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ . But this follows from [Corollary 6.2.6](#).

(2)  $\implies$  (1). From the direction we already proved, for each  $C \geq 1$ , we have that

$$\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_{S,\theta+C\omega}} \varphi.$$

By [Theorem 6.2.1](#), it follows that

$$\lim_{i \in I} \int_X (\theta + C\omega)_{\varphi_i}^j \wedge \theta_{V_{\theta}}^{n-j} = \int_X (\theta + C\omega)_{\varphi}^j \wedge \theta_{V_{\theta}}^{n-j}$$

for all  $j = 0, \dots, n$ . It follows that

$$\lim_{i \in I} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i}^j \wedge \theta_{V_{\theta}}^{n-j} = \int_X \theta_{\varphi}^j \wedge \theta_{V_{\theta}}^{n-j}. \quad (6.14)$$

{eq:varphi\_jmass\_limit}

By [Corollary 6.2.6](#), it remains to show that  $\varphi_i \vee \varphi \xrightarrow{d_{S,\theta}} \varphi$ . By [Corollary 6.2.6](#) again, we know that  $\varphi_i \vee \varphi \xrightarrow{d_{S,\theta+\omega}} \varphi$ . So it suffices to apply (6.14) to  $\varphi_i \vee \varphi$  instead of  $\varphi_i$ , and we conclude by [Lemma 6.2.2](#).  $\square$

We sometimes need a slightly more general form.

cor:dsequivalenceindep

**Corollary 6.2.8** *Let  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$ ,  $(\psi_j)_{j \in I}$  be nets in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Consider a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . Then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $d_{S,\theta}(\varphi_i, \psi_i) \rightarrow 0$ ;
- (2)  $d_{S,\theta+\omega}(\varphi_i, \psi_i) \rightarrow 0$ .

In particular, we can write  $d_S(\varphi_i, \psi_i) \rightarrow 0$  without ambiguity.

**Proof** The proof is similar to that of [Corollary 6.2.7](#), which is therefore left to the readers.  $\square$

We have the following sandwich criterion:

lma:dsconvupplower

**Corollary 6.2.9** Let  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}, (\psi_i)_{i \in I}, (\eta_i)_{i \in I}$  be nets in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Assume that

- (1)  $\psi_i \leq_P \varphi_i \leq_P \eta_i$  for each  $i \in I$ ;
- (2)  $\eta_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi, \psi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ .

Then  $\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ .

**Proof** By [Corollary 6.2.7](#), we may replace  $\theta$  by  $\theta + \omega$ , where  $\omega$  is a Kähler form on  $X$ . In particular, we may assume that  $\varphi_i, \psi_i, \eta_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  for all  $i \in I$ . By [Proposition 6.2.2](#), we may assume that  $\varphi_i, \psi_i, \eta_i$  are model potentials for all  $i \in I$  and hence  $\varphi_i \leq \psi_i \leq \eta_i$  for all  $i \in I$ .

It follows from [Theorem 2.3.2](#) that for each  $k = 0, \dots, n$ , we have

$$\int_X \theta_{\psi_i}^k \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-k} \leq \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i}^k \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-k} \leq \int_X \theta_{\eta_i}^k \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-k}$$

for all  $i \in I$ . By [Theorem 6.2.1](#), the limits of the both ends are  $\int_X \theta_\varphi^k \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-k}$  as  $j \rightarrow \infty$ . It follows that

$$\lim_{i \in I} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_i}^k \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-k} = \int_X \theta_\varphi^k \wedge \theta_{V_\theta}^{n-k}. \quad (6.15)$$

{eq:thetak\_conv}

By [Corollary 6.2.6](#), it remains to prove that  $\varphi_i \vee \varphi \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ . By [Corollary 6.2.6](#), up to replacing  $\psi_i$  (resp.  $\varphi_i, \eta_i$ ) by  $\psi_i \vee \varphi$  (resp.  $\varphi_i \vee \varphi, \eta_i \vee \varphi$ ), we may assume from the beginning that  $\psi_i, \varphi_i, \eta_i \geq \varphi$ . Now  $\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$  by (6.15) and [Lemma 6.2.2](#).  $\square$

prop:dsconvpresorder

**Proposition 6.2.4** Let  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}, (\psi_i)_{i \in I}$  be nets in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that  $\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\psi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Assume that  $\varphi_i \leq_P \psi_i$  for all  $i \in I$ . Then  $\varphi \leq_P \psi$ .

**Proof** It follows from [Proposition 6.2.5](#) that

$$\varphi_i \vee \psi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi \vee \psi.$$

By [Lemma 6.1.2](#), we have  $\varphi_i \vee \psi_i \sim_P \psi_i$  for all  $i \in I$ . In particular, by [Proposition 6.2.2](#),

$$\varphi_i \vee \psi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \psi.$$

By [Proposition 6.2.2](#) again,  $\varphi \vee \psi \sim_P \psi$  and hence  $\varphi \leq_P \psi$  by [Lemma 6.1.2](#).  $\square$

lma:ds1or

**Lemma 6.2.6** Let  $\varphi, \psi, \eta \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , then

$$d_S(\varphi \vee \eta, \psi \vee \eta) \leq C_n d_S(\varphi, \psi), \quad (6.16)$$

{eq:dSmax}

where  $C_n = 3(n+1)2^{n+2}$ .

**Proof** According to [Corollary 6.2.2](#), we may assume that  $\varphi \leq \psi$ .

We will show that for each  $C \geq t \geq 0$ ,

$$d_1(\ell_t^{\varphi \vee \eta, C}, \ell_t^{\psi \vee \eta, C}) \leq d_1(\ell_t^{\varphi, C}, \ell_t^{\psi, C}). \quad (6.17) \quad \text{\texttt{eq:d1maxcomp}}$$

When  $C \rightarrow \infty$ , by [Corollary 2.3.1](#) and [Theorem 4.3.1](#), it follows that

$$d_1(\ell_t^{\varphi \vee \eta}, \ell_t^{\psi \vee \eta}) \leq d_1(\ell_t^{\varphi}, \ell_t^{\psi}),$$

which implies (6.16).

It remains to argue (6.17). As  $\varphi \leq \psi$ , we know that

$$d_1(\ell_t^{\varphi}, \ell_t^{\psi}) = \frac{t}{C} d_1(\ell_C^{\varphi}, \ell_C^{\psi}), \quad d_1(\ell_t^{\varphi \vee \eta}, \ell_t^{\psi \vee \eta}) = \frac{t}{C} d_1(\ell_C^{\varphi \vee \eta}, \ell_C^{\psi \vee \eta}).$$

It suffices to handle the case  $t = C$ , namely,

$$d_1(\varphi \vee \eta \vee (V_\theta - C), \psi \vee \eta \vee (V_\theta - C)) \leq d_1(\varphi \vee (V_\theta - C), \psi \vee (V_\theta - C)).$$

This is a consequence of [Theorem 4.3.2](#).  $\square$

\texttt{prop:lor\_dS\_conv}

**Proposition 6.2.5** *Let  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}$  (resp.  $(\psi_i)_{i \in I}$ ) be a net in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that  $\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  (resp.  $\psi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ ). Then*

$$\varphi_i \vee \psi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi \vee \psi.$$

**Proof** We compute

$$\begin{aligned} d_S(\varphi_i \vee \psi_i, \varphi \vee \psi) &\leq d_S(\varphi_i \vee \psi_i, \varphi_i \vee \psi) + d_S(\varphi_i \vee \psi, \varphi \vee \psi) \\ &\leq C_n (d_S(\psi_i, \psi) + d_S(\varphi_i, \varphi)), \end{aligned}$$

where the second inequality follows from [Lemma 6.2.6](#). The right-hand side converges to 0 by our hypothesis.  $\square$

\texttt{thm:dSadditivity}

**Theorem 6.2.2** *Let  $\theta_1, \theta_2$  be smooth real closed  $(1, 1)$ -forms on  $X$  representing big cohomology classes. Suppose that  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}$  (resp.  $(\psi_i)_{i \in I}$ ) be a net in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta_1)$  (resp.  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta_2)$ ) and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_1)$  (resp.  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta_2)$ ). Consider the following three conditions:*

- (1)  $\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ ;
- (2)  $\psi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \psi$ ;
- (3)  $\varphi_i + \psi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi + \psi$ .

*Then any two of these conditions imply the third.*

**Proof** By [Corollary 6.2.7](#), we may assume that  $\theta_1, \theta_2$  are both Kähler forms. We denote them by  $\omega_1, \omega_2$  instead. Let  $\omega = \omega_1 + \omega_2$ .

(1)+(2)  $\implies$  (3). It suffices to show that for each  $r = 0, \dots, n$ ,

$$2 \int_X \omega_{(\varphi_j + \psi_j) \vee (\varphi + \psi)}^r \wedge \omega^{n-r} - \int_X \omega_{\varphi_j + \psi_j}^r \wedge \omega^{n-r} - \int_X \omega_{\varphi + \psi}^r \wedge \omega^{n-r} \rightarrow 0.$$

Observe that for each  $j \in I$ ,

$$(\varphi_j + \psi_j) \vee (\varphi + \psi) \leq \varphi_j \vee \varphi + \psi_j \vee \psi.$$

Thus, it suffices to show that

$$2 \int_X \omega_{\varphi_j \vee \varphi + \psi_j \vee \psi}^r \wedge \omega - \int_X \omega_{\varphi_j + \psi_j}^r \wedge \omega^{n-r} - \int_X \omega_{\varphi + \psi}^r \wedge \omega^{n-r} \rightarrow 0.$$

The left-hand side is a linear combination of

$$2 \int_X \omega_{1, \varphi_j \vee \varphi}^a \wedge \omega_{2, \psi_j \vee \psi}^{r-a} \wedge \omega^{n-r} - \int_X \omega_{1, \varphi_j}^a \wedge \omega_{2, \psi_j}^{r-a} \wedge \omega^{n-r} - \int_X \omega_{1, \varphi}^a \wedge \omega_{2, \psi}^{r-a} \wedge \omega^{n-r}$$

with  $a = 0, \dots, r$ . Observe that  $\varphi_j \vee \varphi \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$  and  $\psi_j \vee \psi \xrightarrow{d_S} \psi$  by [Corollary 6.2.2](#), each term tends to 0 by [Theorem 6.2.1](#).

(2)+(3)  $\implies$  (1). This is similar.

(1)+(3)  $\implies$  (2). For each  $C \geq 1$ , from the direction we already proved,

$$C\varphi_i + \psi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} C\varphi + \psi.$$

By [Theorem 6.2.1](#), for each  $j = 0, \dots, n$ ,

$$\lim_{i \in I} \int_X (C\omega_1 + \omega_2 + \text{dd}^c(C\varphi_i + \psi_i))^j \wedge \omega_2^{n-j} = \int_X (C\omega_1 + \omega_2 + \text{dd}^c(C\varphi + \psi))^j \wedge \omega_2^{n-j}.$$

It follows that

$$\lim_{i \in I} \int_X \omega_{2, \psi_i}^j \wedge \omega_2^{n-j} = \int_X \omega_{2, \psi}^j \wedge \omega_2^{n-j}. \quad (6.18)$$

{eq:psii\_quant\_conv}

Therefore, 2 follows if  $\psi_i \geq \psi$  for each  $i$  by [Lemma 6.2.2](#).

Next we prove the general case. By the direction that we already proved, we know that  $\varphi_i + \psi \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi + \psi$ . By [Proposition 6.2.5](#), we have that

$$\varphi_i + \psi_i \vee \psi \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi + \psi.$$

It follows from the special case above that  $\psi_i \vee \psi \xrightarrow{d_S} \psi$ . It follows from [\(6.18\)](#) and [Corollary 6.2.6](#) that (2) holds.  $\square$

thm:contPI

**Theorem 6.2.3** *The map*

$$P_\theta[\bullet]_I : \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0} \rightarrow \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$$



is continuous with respect to  $d_S$ .

**Proof** Let  $(\varphi_i)_{i \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}}$  be a sequence in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  such that  $\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . We want to show that

$$P[\varphi_i]_I \xrightarrow{d_S} P[\varphi]_I. \quad (6.19)$$

We may assume that the  $\varphi_i$ 's and  $\varphi$  are all model potentials by [Proposition 6.2.2](#).

By [Proposition 6.2.3](#) and [Corollary 6.2.9](#), we may assume that  $(\varphi_i)_i$  is either increasing or decreasing. The two cases are handled by [Proposition 3.2.12](#) and [Proposition 3.2.11](#) respectively.  $\square$

### 6.2.3 Continuity of invariants

thm:Lelongcont

**Theorem 6.2.4** Let  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$  be a net in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Then for any prime divisor  $E$  over  $X$ , we have

$$\lim_{j \in I} \nu(\varphi_j, E) = \nu(\varphi, E). \quad (6.20)$$

{eq:convnu}

**Proof** First observe that since  $d_S$  is a pseudometric, it suffices to prove (6.20) when  $I = \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  as partially ordered sets.

By [Corollary 6.2.7](#), we may assume that the masses of  $\varphi_j$  and of  $\varphi$  are bounded from below by a positive constant.

By [Theorem 6.2.3](#), we may assume that  $\varphi_i$  and  $\varphi$  are both  $\mathcal{I}$ -model. When proving (6.20), we are free to pass to subsequences.

By [Proposition 6.2.3](#), we may assume that the sequence  $(\varphi_i)$  is either increasing or decreasing. In the increasing case, there is nothing to prove. In the decreasing case, (6.20) follows from [Proposition 3.1.8](#).  $\square$

thm:contvolu

**Theorem 6.2.5** Let  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$  be a net in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Assume that  $\int_X \theta_\varphi^n > 0$ , we have

$$\text{vol } \theta_{\varphi_j} \rightarrow \text{vol } \theta_\varphi. \quad (6.21)$$

{eq:Ivolcont}

Recall the volume is defined in [Definition 3.2.3](#).

**Proof** It follows from [Theorem 6.2.1](#) that

$$\int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n \rightarrow \int_X \theta_\varphi^n.$$

We may therefore assume that  $\int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n$  for all  $j \in I$ . Then by [Theorem 6.2.3](#), we have

$$P_\theta[\varphi_j]_I \xrightarrow{d_S} P_\theta[\varphi]_I.$$

Therefore, (6.21) follows from Theorem 6.2.1.  $\square$

thm:equising\_cond\_general

**Theorem 6.2.6** Let  $\varphi_j, \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  ( $j \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ ). Assume that  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ . Then for each  $\lambda' > \lambda > 0$ , there is  $j_0 > 0$  so that for  $j \geq j_0$ ,

$$I(\lambda' \varphi_j) \subseteq I(\lambda \varphi). \quad (6.22)$$

{eq:quasi\_equi\_cond}

**Proof** Fix  $\lambda' > \lambda > 0$ , we want to find  $j_0 > 0$  so that for  $j \geq j_0$ , (6.22) holds.

**Step 1.** We first assume that  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities.

Let  $\pi : Y \rightarrow X$  be a log resolution of  $\varphi$  and let  $E_1, \dots, E_N$  be all prime divisors of the singular part of  $\varphi$  on  $Y$ . Recall that a local holomorphic function  $f$  lies in the right-hand side of (6.22) if and only if

$$\text{ord}_{E_i}(f) > \lambda \text{ord}_{E_i}(\varphi) - A_X(E_i) \quad (6.23)$$

{eq:ordEif}

whenever they make sense. Here  $A_X$  denotes the log discrepancy. Similarly,  $f$  lies in the left-hand side of (6.22) implies that there is  $\epsilon > 0$  so that

$$\text{ord}_{E_i}(f) \geq (1 + \epsilon)\lambda' \text{ord}_{E_i}(\varphi_j) - A_X(E_i).$$

As Lelong numbers are continuous with respect to  $d_S$  by Theorem 6.2.4, we can find  $j_0 > 0$  so that when  $j \geq j_0$ ,  $\lambda' \text{ord}_{E_i}(\varphi_j) \geq \lambda \text{ord}_{E_i}(\varphi)$  for all  $i$ . In particular, (6.23) follows.

**Step 2.** We handle the general case.

By Corollary 6.2.7, we are free to increase  $\theta$  and assume that  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current.

Take a quasi-equisingular approximation  $\psi_k$  of  $\varphi$ . The existence is guaranteed by Theorem 1.6.2. Take  $\lambda'' \in (\lambda, \lambda')$ , then by definition, we can find  $k > 0$  so that

$$I(\lambda'' \psi_k) \subseteq I(\lambda \varphi).$$

Observe that  $\varphi_j \vee \psi_k \xrightarrow{d_S} \psi_k$  as  $j \rightarrow \infty$  by Proposition 6.2.5. By Step 1, we can find  $j_0 > 0$  so that for  $j \geq j_0$ ,

$$I(\lambda'(\varphi_j \vee \psi_k)) \subseteq I(\lambda'' \psi_k).$$

It follows that for  $j \geq j_0$ ,

$$I(\lambda' \varphi_j) \subseteq I(\lambda \varphi).$$

## Chapter 7

### $\mathcal{I}$ -good singularities

chap:Igood

#### 7.1 The notion of $\mathcal{I}$ -good singularities

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$ .

thm:charIgoodasclosure

**Theorem 7.1.1** *Let  $\theta$  be a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing a big cohomology class. Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Then the following are equivalent:*

(1) *there exists a sequence  $(\varphi_j)_j$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  with analytic singularities such that*

$$\varphi_j \xrightarrow{ds} \varphi,$$

(2) *we have*

$$\int_X \theta_\varphi^n = \text{vol } \theta_\varphi, \quad (7.1)$$

{eq:nppmassequalvolume}

and

(3) *we have*

$$P_\theta[\varphi] = P_\theta[\varphi]_{\mathcal{I}}.$$

Moreover, if  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current, the sequence in (1) can be taken as any quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

**Proof** (1)  $\implies$  (2). By [Theorem 6.2.1](#), we may assume that  $\int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n > 0$  for all  $j$ . It follows from [Proposition 3.2.9](#) that

$$\int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n = \text{vol } \theta_{\varphi_j}$$

for any  $j \geq 1$ . Using [Theorem 6.2.5](#) and [Theorem 6.2.1](#), we conclude (7.1).

(2)  $\iff$  (3). This follows from [Theorem 3.1.1](#).

(3)  $\implies$  (1). Note that the condition in (1) characterizes the closure of analytic singularities in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

**Step 1.** We first reduce to the case where  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current.

By [Lemma 2.3.2](#), we can find  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  so that  $\theta_\psi$  is a Kähler current and  $\psi \leq \varphi$ . We let

$$\psi_j = (1 - j^{-1})\varphi + j^{-1}\psi$$

for each  $j \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ . Then  $(\psi_j)_j$  is an increasing sequence converging almost everywhere to  $\varphi$ . Then

$$P_\theta[\psi_j]_I \xrightarrow{d_S} P_\theta[\varphi]_I = P_\theta[\varphi]$$

by [Proposition 3.2.12](#), [Corollary 6.2.3](#). So it suffices to show that  $P_\theta[\psi_j]_I$  lies in the closure of analytic singularities.

**Step 2.** We assume that  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current. We show that  $P_\theta[\varphi]_I$  lies in the closure of analytic singularities.

Let  $(\varphi_j)_j$  be a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . We will show that  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} P_\theta[\varphi]_I$ . Let

$$\psi = \inf_{j \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}} P_\theta[\varphi_j].$$

We know that  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \psi$  by [Proposition 6.2.2](#), [Proposition 3.1.8](#) and [Corollary 6.2.4](#).

Moreover, observe that  $\psi$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -model by [Proposition 3.2.11](#) and [Example 7.1.1](#). So it suffices to show that  $\varphi \sim_{\mathcal{I}} \psi$ .

It is clear that  $\psi \geq \varphi$ . Conversely, it remains to argue that  $\psi \leq_{\mathcal{I}} \varphi$ . For this purpose, take  $\lambda > 0$ , we need to show that

$$\mathcal{I}(\lambda\psi) \subseteq \mathcal{I}(\lambda\varphi).$$

By the strong openness [Theorem 1.4.4](#), we may take  $\lambda' > \lambda$  such that  $\mathcal{I}(\lambda\psi) = \mathcal{I}(\lambda'\psi)$ , then it follows from the definition of the quasi-equisingular approximation that

$$\mathcal{I}(\lambda'\psi) \subseteq \mathcal{I}(\lambda'\varphi_j) \subseteq \mathcal{I}(\lambda\varphi)$$

for large enough  $j$ . Our assertion follows.  $\square$

def:Igoodpot

**Definition 7.1.1** We say a potential  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good if for some smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  such that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , we have

$$P_\theta[\varphi] = P_\theta[\varphi]_I. \quad (7.2)$$

{eq:envelopeeq}

An immediate question is to verify that this definition is independent of the choice of  $\theta$ .

lma:Igoodinsenspert

**Lemma 7.1.1** Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  for some smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$ . Take a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . Then the following are equivalent:

- (1)  $P_\theta[\varphi] = P_\theta[\varphi]_I$ ;
- (2)  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\varphi] = P_\theta[\varphi + \omega]_I$ .

**Proof** (1)  $\implies$  (2). By [Theorem 7.1.1](#), we can find  $\varphi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  with analytic singularities such that  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_{S, \theta}} \varphi$ . By [Corollary 6.2.7](#), we have  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_{S, \theta+\omega}} \varphi$ . Therefore, by [Theorem 7.1.1](#) again, 2 holds.

(2)  $\implies$  (1). Suppose that (1) fails, so that

$$\int_X (\theta + \mathrm{dd}^c \varphi)^n < \int_X (\theta + \mathrm{dd}^c P_\theta[\varphi]_I)^n.$$

It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_X (\theta + \omega + \mathrm{dd}^c \varphi)^n &= \sum_{i=0}^n \binom{n}{i} \int_X \theta_\varphi^i \wedge \omega^{n-i} \\ &< \sum_{i=0}^n \binom{n}{i} \int_X \theta_{P_\theta[\varphi]_I}^i \wedge \omega^{n-i} \\ &= \int_X (\theta + \omega + \mathrm{dd}^c P_\theta[\varphi]_I)^n \\ &\leq \int_X (\theta + \omega + \mathrm{dd}^c P_{\theta+\omega}[\varphi]_I)^n. \end{aligned}$$

So (2) fails as well.  $\square$

cor:Igoodclosed

**Corollary 7.1.1** *Let  $\theta$  be a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing a big cohomology class. Let  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$  be a net of  $\mathcal{I}$ -good potentials in  $\mathrm{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ . Then  $\varphi$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good.*

**Proof** By [Corollary 6.2.7](#), we may assume that  $\varphi_j, \varphi \in \mathrm{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  for all  $j \in I$ . It follows from [Theorem 7.1.1](#) that

$$\int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n = \mathrm{vol} \theta_{\varphi_j}$$

for all  $j \in I$ . Taking limit with respect to  $j$  with the help of [Theorem 6.2.5](#) and [Theorem 6.2.1](#), we conclude that

$$\int_X \theta_\varphi^n = \mathrm{vol} \theta_\varphi.$$

Therefore, by [Theorem 7.1.1](#) again, we find that  $\varphi$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good.  $\square$

ex:analyIgood

**Example 7.1.1** Assume that  $\varphi \in \mathrm{QPSH}(X)$  has analytic singularities. Then  $\varphi$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good. This is proved in [Proposition 3.2.9](#).

ex:ImodelIgood

**Example 7.1.2** Assume that  $\varphi \in \mathrm{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  is an  $\mathcal{I}$ -model potential for some closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$ . Then  $\varphi$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good.

cor:quasi-equi char

**Corollary 7.1.2** *Let  $\varphi \in \mathrm{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $(\epsilon_j)_j$  be a decreasing sequence in  $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  with limit 0. Fix a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . Consider a decreasing sequence  $\varphi_j \in \mathrm{PSH}(X, \theta + \epsilon_j \omega)$  of potentials with analytic singularities for each  $j \geq 1$ . Assume that  $\varphi = \inf_j \varphi_j$ . Then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} P_\theta[\varphi]_I$ , and
- (2)  $(\varphi_j)_j$  is a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$ .

**Proof** By [Corollary 6.2.7](#) and [Example 7.1.2](#), we may replace  $\theta$  by  $\theta + C\omega$  for some large constant  $C > 0$  and assume that  $\varphi, \varphi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta - \omega)$  for all  $j \geq 1$ .

(2)  $\implies$  (1). This is already proved in the proof of [Theorem 7.1.1](#).

(1)  $\implies$  (2). This follows from [Theorem 6.2.6](#).  $\square$

## 7.2 Properties of $\mathcal{I}$ -good singularities

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold.

prop:Igoodlinear

**Proposition 7.2.1** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  be  $\mathcal{I}$ -good and  $\lambda > 0$ . Then the following potentials are all  $\mathcal{I}$ -good.*

- (1)  $\varphi + \psi$ ;
- (2)  $\varphi \vee \psi$ ;
- (3)  $\lambda\varphi$ .

**Proof** Take a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$  such that  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . It follows from [Theorem 7.1.1](#) that there are sequences  $\varphi_j, \psi_j$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  with analytic singularities such that  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$  and  $\psi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \psi$ .

By [Theorem 6.2.2](#), [Proposition 6.2.5](#), we have

$$\varphi_j + \psi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi + \psi, \quad \varphi_j \vee \psi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi \vee \psi.$$

On the other hand, it is clear that

$$\lambda\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \lambda\varphi.$$

Therefore, our assertions follow from [Theorem 7.1.1](#).  $\square$

prop:Igoodsup

**Proposition 7.2.2** *Let  $\{\varphi_j\}_{j \in I}$  be a non-empty family of  $\mathcal{I}$ -good potentials. Assume that the family is uniformly bounded from above and there exists a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$  such that  $\varphi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  for all  $j \in I$ . Then  $\sup^*_{j \in I} \varphi_j$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good.*

**Proof** Without loss of generality, we may assume that  $\varphi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  for all  $j \in I$ .

When  $I$  is finite, this result follows from [Proposition 7.2.1](#). When  $I$  is infinite, we may assume that  $I = \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  by [Proposition 1.2.2](#). By [Proposition 7.2.1](#), we may assume that the sequence  $(\varphi_j)_j$  is increasing. In this case, as shown in [Corollary 6.2.3](#),

$$\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \sup^*_{i \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}} \varphi_i.$$

Therefore,  $\sup^*_{i \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}} \varphi_i$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good by [Theorem 7.1.1](#).  $\square$

thm:contvolu2

**Theorem 7.2.1** *Let  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$  be a net in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{ds} \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . Assume that  $\varphi$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good, then we have*

$$\text{vol } \theta_{\varphi_j} \rightarrow \text{vol } \theta_{\varphi}. \quad (7.3)$$

{eq:Ivolcont2}

**Proof** Fix a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . Then for any  $\epsilon > 0$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{vol}(\theta + \epsilon\omega)_{\varphi} &= \int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega + \text{dd}^c P_{\theta + \epsilon\omega}[\varphi]_I)^n \\ &= \int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega + \text{dd}^c \varphi)^n. \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega + \text{dd}^c P_{\theta + \epsilon\omega}[\varphi]_I)^n &\geq \int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega + \text{dd}^c P_{\theta}[\varphi]_I)^n \\ &\geq \int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c P_{\theta}[\varphi]_I)^n \\ &\geq \int_X \theta_{\varphi}^n. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\text{vol}(\theta + \epsilon\omega)_{\varphi} - \text{vol } \theta_{\varphi} \leq \int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega + \text{dd}^c \varphi)^n - \int_X \theta_{\varphi}^n.$$

The difference can be controled by a polynomial in  $\epsilon$  without constant term independent of the choice of  $\varphi$ . We have a similar estimate for  $\varphi_j$  as well. So our assertion follows from [Theorem 6.2.5](#).  $\square$

prop:vollinearlimit

**Proposition 7.2.3** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Then*

(1) *We have*

$$\lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0+} \text{vol}(\theta, (1 - \epsilon)\varphi + \epsilon\psi) = \text{vol}(\theta, \varphi);$$

(2) *Let  $\omega$  be a Kähler form on  $X$ , then*

$$\text{vol } \theta_{\varphi} = \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0+} \text{vol}(\theta + \epsilon\omega)_{\varphi};$$

(3) *Consider a prime divisor  $E$  on  $X$ . Then*

$$\text{vol } \theta_{\varphi} = \text{vol}(\theta_{\varphi} - \nu(\varphi, E)[E]).$$

**Proof** (1). We need to show that

$$\lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0+} \int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c P_{\theta}[(1 - \epsilon)\varphi + \epsilon\psi]_I)^n = \int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c P_{\theta}[\varphi]_I)^n.$$

By [Proposition 3.2.10](#), for any  $\epsilon \in (0, 1)$ ,

$$(1 - \epsilon)\varphi + \epsilon\psi \sim_{\mathcal{I}} (1 - \epsilon)P_{\theta}[\varphi]_{\mathcal{I}} + \epsilon P_{\theta}[\psi]_{\mathcal{I}}.$$

In particular, we may replace  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  by  $P_{\theta}[\varphi]_{\mathcal{I}}$  and  $P_{\theta}[\psi]_{\mathcal{I}}$  respectively. By [Proposition 7.2.1](#), it remains to show that

$$\lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0+} \int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c((1 - \epsilon)\varphi + \epsilon\psi))^n = \int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c\varphi)^n,$$

which is obvious.

(2). For each  $\epsilon > 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{vol}(\theta + \epsilon\omega)_{\varphi} &= \int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega + \text{dd}^c P_{\theta+\epsilon\omega}[\varphi]_{\mathcal{I}})^n \\ &= \int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega + \text{dd}^c P_{\theta+\epsilon\omega}[P_{\theta}[\varphi]_{\mathcal{I}}])^n \\ &= \int_X (\theta + \epsilon\omega + \text{dd}^c P_{\theta}[\varphi]_{\mathcal{I}})^n, \end{aligned}$$

where the third equality follows from [Example 7.1.2](#). Letting  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0+$ , we conclude.

(3). By (2), we may assume that  $\theta_{\varphi}$  is a Kähler current. Take a quasi-equisingular approximation  $(S_j)_j$  of  $\theta_{\varphi} - \nu(\varphi, E)[E]$ . By [Theorem 6.2.2](#),

$$S_j + \nu(\varphi, E)[E] \xrightarrow{d_S} \theta_{\varphi}.$$

For each  $j \geq 1$ , the currents  $S_j + \nu(\varphi, E)[E]$  and  $S_j$  are  $\mathcal{I}$ -good as follows from [Proposition 7.2.1](#), we have

$$\text{vol}(S_j + \nu(\varphi, E)[E]) = \int_X (S_j + \nu(\varphi, E)[E])^n = \int_X S_j^n = \text{vol } S_j.$$

Letting  $j \rightarrow \infty$ , we conclude by [Theorem 6.2.6](#).  $\square$

### 7.3 The volume of Hermitian big line bundles

sec:volHermitianbig

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$ .

**Definition 7.3.1** A *Hermitian pseudoeffective line bundle*  $(L, h)$  on  $X$  consists of a pseudoeffective line bundle  $L$  on  $X$  together with a plurisubharmonic metric  $h$  on  $L$ .

A *Hermitian big line bundle*  $(L, h)$  on  $X$  is a big line bundle  $L$  on  $X$  together with a plurisubharmonic metric  $h$  on  $L$  such that  $\text{vol}(\text{dd}^c h) > 0$ .

When  $X$  admits a big line bundle, it is necessarily projective. See [\[MM07, Theorem 2.2.26\]](#).

thm:DXmain1

**Theorem 7.3.1** Let  $(L, h)$  be a Hermitian big line bundle and  $T$  be a holomorphic line bundle on  $X$ . We have



$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{k^n} h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(h^k)) = \text{vol}(\text{dd}^c h). \quad (7.4)$$

{eq:DXmain1}

In particular, the limit exists.

*Remark 7.3.1* This theorem also holds for a general Hermitian pseudoeffective line bundle. The proof is more involved. We would have to apply the singular holomorphic Morse inequality of Bonavero [\[Bon98\]](#). See [\[DX21, Theorem 1.1\]](#).

For the proof, let us fix a smooth Hermitian metric  $h_0$  on  $L$  with  $\theta = c_1(L, h_0)$ . We identify  $h$  with  $h_0 \exp(-\varphi)$  for some  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

We first handle the case where  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities.

prop:DXmainanalytic

**Proposition 7.3.1** *Under the assumptions of [Theorem 7.3.1](#), assume furthermore that  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities, then [\(7.4\)](#) holds.*

**Proof Step 1.** Reduce to the case of log singularities.

Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a modification such that  $\pi^*\varphi$  has log singularities. In this case, for each  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ , we have

$$h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(kh)) = h^0(Y, K_{Y/X} \otimes \pi^*T \otimes \pi^*L^k \otimes I(k\pi^*h)).$$

By [Proposition 3.2.5](#), we have

$$\text{vol}(\text{dd}^c h) = \text{vol}(\text{dd}^c \pi^*h).$$

Therefore, it suffices to argue [\(7.4\)](#) with  $K_{Y/X} \otimes \pi^*T$ ,  $\pi^*L$  and  $\pi^*h$  in place of  $T$ ,  $L$  and  $h$ .

**Step 2.** Assume that  $D$  has log singularities along an effective  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $D$ , we decompose  $D$  into irreducible components, say

$$D = \sum_{i=1}^N a_i D_i.$$

In this case, we can easily compute

$$I(k\varphi) = \mathcal{O}_X \left( - \sum_{i=1}^N \lfloor ka_i \rfloor D_i \right)$$

for each  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ . Observe that  $L - D$  is nef (see [Lemma 1.6.1](#)), so we could apply the asymptotic Riemann–Roch theorem to conclude that

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{k^n} h^0 \left( X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \mathcal{O}_X \left( - \sum_{i=1}^N \lfloor ka_i \rfloor D_i \right) \right) = (L - D)^n.$$

Observe that by [Proposition 1.8.1](#),

$$\theta_\varphi = [D] + T,$$

where  $T$  is a closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current with bounded potential. Therefore,

$$(L - D)^n = \int_X T^n = \int_X \theta_\varphi^n.$$

By [Example 7.1.1](#), we know that the right-hand side is exactly  $\text{vol } \theta_\varphi$ .  $\square$

**Proof (Proof of [Theorem 7.3.1](#)) Step 1.** We first handle the case where  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current. Fix a Kähler form  $\omega \geq \theta$  on  $X$  such that  $\theta_\varphi \geq 2\delta\omega$  for some  $\delta \in (0, 1)$ .

Let  $(\varphi_j)_j$  be a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . We may assume that  $\theta_{\varphi_j} \geq \delta\omega$  for all  $j$ . From [Proposition 7.3.1](#), we know that for each  $j \geq 1$ ,

$$\overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{k^n} h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k\varphi)) \leq \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{k^n} h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k\varphi_j)) = \text{vol } \theta_{\varphi_j}.$$

It follows from [Theorem 7.1.1](#) and [Theorem 6.2.5](#) that the right-hand side converges to  $\text{vol } \theta_\varphi$  as  $j \rightarrow \infty$ . Therefore,

$$\overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{k^n} h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k\varphi)) \leq \text{vol } \theta_\varphi.$$

Conversely, fix an integer  $N > \delta^{-1}$ . From [Theorem 7.1.1](#) and [Theorem 6.2.1](#), we know that

$$\lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} \int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n = \int_X \theta_{P_\theta[\varphi]_I}^n > 0. \quad (7.5)$$

Therefore, by [Lemma 2.3.1](#), we can find  $j_0 > 0$  such that for  $j \geq j_0$ , there is  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  with

$$(1 - N^{-1})\varphi_j + N^{-1}\psi \leq P_\theta[\varphi]_I. \quad (7.6)$$

For each  $k > 0$ , we write  $k = k'N - r$ , where  $k' \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $r \in \{0, 1, \dots, N-1\}$ . Then we compute for  $j > j_0$  and large enough  $k$  that

$$\begin{aligned} & h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k\varphi)) \\ & \geq h^0(X, T \otimes L^{-r} \otimes L^{k'N} \otimes \mathcal{I}(k'N\varphi)) \\ & \geq h^0\left(X, T \otimes L^{-r} \otimes L^{k'N} \otimes \mathcal{I}\left(k'(\psi + (N-1)\varphi_j)\right)\right) \\ & \geq h^0\left(X, T \otimes L^{-r} \otimes L^{k'N} \otimes L^{k'(N-1)} \otimes \mathcal{I}(k'N\varphi_j)\right), \end{aligned}$$

where the third line follows from (7.6), the fourth line can be argued as follows: for large enough  $k$ , there is a non-zero section  $s \in H^0(X, L^{k'} \otimes \mathcal{I}(k'\psi))$  by [Lemma 2.3.3](#); It follows from [Lemma 1.6.3](#) that for large enough  $k$ ,

$$\mathcal{I}(k'N\varphi_j) \subseteq \mathcal{I}_\infty(k'(N-1)\varphi_j).$$

It follows that multiplication by  $s$  gives an injective map

$$\begin{aligned} H^0(X, T \otimes L^{-r} \otimes L^{k'(N-1)} \otimes I(k'N\varphi_j)) &\hookrightarrow \\ H^0(X, T \otimes L^{-r} \otimes L^{k'N} \otimes I(k'\psi + k'(N-1)\varphi_j)). \end{aligned}$$

Next observe that

$$(N-1)\theta + N\mathrm{dd}^c\varphi_j \geq 0.$$

So [Proposition 7.3.1](#) is applicable. We let  $k \rightarrow \infty$  to conclude that

$$\begin{aligned} \varlimsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) &\geq \frac{1}{n! \cdot N^{-n}} \int_X ((N-1)\theta + N\mathrm{dd}^c\varphi_j)^n \\ &= \frac{1}{n!} \int_X ((1-N^{-1})\theta + \mathrm{dd}^c\varphi_j)^n. \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $j \rightarrow \infty$  and then  $N \rightarrow \infty$  and using [\(7.5\)](#), we find that

$$\varlimsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) \geq \int_X \theta_{P_\theta[\varphi]_I}^n.$$

**Step 2.** We handle the general case. We may assume that  $\varphi$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -model.

Take an ample line bundle  $A$  on  $X$  and a Kähler form  $\omega$  in  $c_1(A)$ . Then for any fixed  $N \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ , we apply Step 1 to  $L^N \otimes A$  in place of  $L$  and  $T \otimes L^i$  with  $i = 0, \dots, N-1$  in place of  $T$ , we have

$$\varlimsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{k^n} h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) \leq \int_X \left( N^{-1}\omega + \theta + \mathrm{dd}^c P_{\theta+N^{-1}\omega}[\varphi]_I \right)^n.$$

On the other hand, since  $\varphi$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good by [Example 7.1.2](#), we have

$$P_{\theta+N^{-1}\omega}[\varphi]_I = P_{\theta+N^{-1}\omega}[\varphi].$$

It follows from [Proposition 3.1.2](#) that

$$\varlimsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{k^n} h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) \leq \int_X \left( \theta + N^{-1}\omega + \mathrm{dd}^c\varphi \right)^n.$$

Letting  $N \rightarrow \infty$ , we conclude

$$\varlimsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{k^n} h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) \leq \int_X \theta_\varphi^n.$$

It remains to argue the reverse inequality.

Choose  $\psi \in \mathrm{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that  $\theta_\psi$  is a Kähler current and  $\psi \leq \varphi$ . The existence of  $\psi$  is guaranteed by [Lemma 2.3.2](#). Then for any  $t \in (0, 1)$ , we set

$$\varphi_t = (1-t)\varphi + t\psi.$$

It follows again from Step 1 that

$$\varliminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{k^n} h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k\varphi)) \geq \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{k^n} h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k\varphi_t)) = \text{vol } \theta_{\varphi_t}.$$

On the other hand, by [Corollary 6.2.3](#), we have  $\varphi_t \xrightarrow{ds} \varphi$  as  $t \rightarrow 0+$ . It follows from [Theorem 6.2.5](#) that

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow 0+} \text{vol } \theta_{\varphi_t} = \text{vol } \theta_{\varphi}.$$

So we find

$$\varliminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{k^n} h^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k\varphi)) \geq \text{vol } \theta_{\varphi}.$$

ex:toricIgood

*Example 7.3.1* If  $X$  is a toric smooth projective variety and  $\theta$  is invariant under the action of the compact torus. Suppose that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  is also invariant under the action of the compact torus, then  $\varphi$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good.

**Proof** Thanks to [Lemma 7.1.1](#), we may assume that  $\theta \in c_1(L)$  for some toric invariant ample line bundle  $L$ . In this case, the result follows from [Theorem 7.1.1](#), [Theorem 7.3.1](#) and [Theorem 5.2.1](#).  $\square$

## Chapter 8

### The trace operator

chap:trace

#### 8.1 The definition of the trace operator

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold and  $Y \subseteq X$  be an irreducible analytic subset. The trace operator gives a way to restrict a quasi-plurisubharmonic function on  $X$  to  $\tilde{Y}$ , the normalization of  $Y$ . We refer to [Appendix B](#) for the pluripotential theory on unibranch spaces.

For later applications, we need this generality even if initially we are only interested in the smooth case.

op:traceindquasiequisingapp

**Proposition 8.1.1** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ . Consider a smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  and  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that  $v(\varphi, Y) = 0$ . Let  $(\varphi_i)_i, (\psi_i)_i$  be quasi-equisingular approximations of  $\varphi$ . Then*

$$\lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} d_S(\varphi_i|_{\tilde{Y}}, \psi_i|_{\tilde{Y}}) = 0. \quad (8.1)$$

{eq:dsequivtemp1}

The meaning of (8.1) is explained in [Corollary 6.2.8](#).

**Proof** Take a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . By [Corollary 6.2.8](#), we may assume that  $\varphi, \varphi_i, \psi_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta - \omega)$  for all  $i \geq 1$ . Replacing  $\varphi$  by  $P_\theta[\varphi]_I$ , we may assume that  $\varphi$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good. It follows from [Corollary 7.1.2](#) and [Proposition 6.2.5](#) that we can assume  $\varphi_i \leq \psi_i$  for all  $i \geq 1$ .

Take a decreasing sequence  $\epsilon_j > 0$  ( $j \geq 1$ ) with limit 0 such that  $(1 - \epsilon_j)\varphi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . We first observe that

$$\lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} d_S(\varphi_i|_{\tilde{Y}}, (1 - \epsilon_i)\varphi_i|_{\tilde{Y}}) = 0.$$

This is a consequence of [Lemma 6.2.3](#).

Next we observe that by [Corollary 6.2.5](#),  $(\psi_j)_j$  is  $d_S$ -convergent, so we may freely replace it by a subsequence. By [Proposition 1.6.3](#), we may assume that  $\psi_i \leq (1 - \epsilon_i)\varphi_i$  for each  $i$ . Our assertion follows from [Corollary 6.2.1](#).  $\square$

def:traceop

**Definition 8.1.1** Let  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  such that  $\nu(\varphi, Y) = 0$ . We say a potential  $\psi \in \text{QPSH}(\tilde{Y})$  is a *trace operator* of  $\varphi$  along  $Y$  if there is a smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$  such that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and a quasi-equisingular approximation  $(\varphi_j)_j$  of  $\varphi$  such that

$$\varphi_j|_{\tilde{Y}} \xrightarrow{d_S} \psi. \quad (8.2)$$

{eq:deftrace}

By [Corollary 6.2.5](#), the trace operator is always defined. Observe that by [Proposition 8.1.1](#), the condition (8.2) is independent of the choice of  $(\varphi_j)_j$ . It is also independent of the choice of  $\theta$  by [Corollary 6.2.7](#).

prop:traceunique

**Proposition 8.1.2** Let  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  such that  $\nu(\varphi, Y) = 0$ . Suppose that  $\psi$  and  $\psi'$  are trace operators of  $\varphi$  along  $Y$ . Then  $\psi$  and  $\psi'$  are  $\mathcal{I}$ -good and  $\psi \sim_P \psi'$ .

**Proof** That  $\psi$  and  $\psi'$  are  $\mathcal{I}$ -good follows from [Theorem 7.1.1](#). The fact that  $\psi \sim_P \psi'$  follows from [Proposition 8.1.1](#) and [Proposition 6.2.2](#).  $\square$

**Definition 8.1.2** Let  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  such that  $\nu(\varphi, Y) = 0$ . We write  $\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi)$  for any trace operator of  $\varphi$  along  $Y$ .

Given a closed smooth real  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$ . When  $\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi)$  can be chosen to lie in  $\text{PSH}(\tilde{Y}, \theta|_{\tilde{Y}})_{>0}$ , we write

$$\text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi) := P_{\theta|_{\tilde{Y}}} [\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi)] = P_{\theta|_{\tilde{Y}}} [\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi)]_I.$$

The trace operator  $\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi)$  is therefore well-defined only up to  $P$ -equivalence by [Proposition 8.1.2](#).

rmk:tracecurrent

**Remark 8.1.1** As in [Remark 1.7.1](#), the trace operator could also be applied to closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -currents on  $X$ . If  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$  (see [Definition 1.7.2](#)) and  $\beta \in H^{1,1}(\tilde{Y}, \mathbb{R})$ , then we write

$$\text{Tr}_Y^\beta(T)$$

for any closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current in  $\beta$  representing  $\text{Tr}_Y(T)$ .

prop:Trdominarest

**Proposition 8.1.3** Let  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  such that  $\nu(\varphi, Y) = 0$ . Assume that  $\varphi|_Y \not\equiv -\infty$ . Then

$$\varphi|_{\tilde{Y}} \leq_P \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi).$$

**Proof** Take a Kähler form  $\omega$  such that  $\omega_\varphi$  is a Kähler current. Let  $(\varphi_j)_j$  be a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \omega)$ . We may assume that  $\varphi_j \leq 0$  for all  $j \geq 1$ .

Then

$$\varphi_j|_{\tilde{Y}} \leq P_{\theta|_{\tilde{Y}}} [\varphi_j|_{\tilde{Y}}] \quad (8.3)$$

{eq:varphi\_jrestrleqPtemp}

for all  $j \geq 1$ .

Thanks to [Corollary 6.2.4](#),

$$\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi) \sim_P \inf_{j \geq 1} P_{\theta|_{\tilde{Y}}} [\varphi_j|_{\tilde{Y}}]. \quad (8.4)$$

{eq:TrYnewexpression}

Letting  $j \rightarrow \infty$  in (8.3), we conclude our assertion.  $\square$

ex:resanalyt

*Example 8.1.1* Let  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  such that  $v(\varphi, Y) = 0$ . Assume that  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities, then

$$\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi) \sim_P \varphi|_{\bar{Y}}.$$

*Example 8.1.2* Let  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ . Take a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$  such that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , then

$$\text{Tr}_X(\varphi) \sim_P P_\theta[\varphi]_I, \quad \text{Tr}_X^\theta(\varphi) = P_\theta[\varphi]_I.$$

In particular, the trace operator can be regarded as a generalization of the  $I$ -envelope.

ex:tracedefinedposmass

*Example 8.1.3* Assume that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  for some closed smooth real  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$  and

$$\lim_{\epsilon \searrow 0} \int_Y \left( \theta|_Y + \epsilon \omega|_Y + \text{dd}^c \text{Tr}_Y^{\theta + \epsilon \omega}(\varphi) \right)^m > 0 \quad (8.5)$$

{eq:traceposmasscond}

for any arbitrary choice of a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . Then it follows from **Proposition 3.1.8** that  $\text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi)$  is defined and its mass is exact the above limit.

## 8.2 Properties of the trace operator

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold and  $Y \subseteq X$  be an irreducible analytic subset.

prop:tracelinear

**Proposition 8.2.1** Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ ,  $\lambda > 0$ . Assume that  $v(\varphi, Y) = v(\psi, Y) = 0$ . Then we have the following:

- (1) Suppose that  $\varphi \leq_I \psi$ , then  $\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi) \leq_P \text{Tr}_Y(\psi)$ ;
- (2) We have

$$\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi + \psi) \sim_P \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi) + \text{Tr}_Y(\psi);$$

- (3) We have

$$\text{Tr}_Y(\lambda \varphi) \sim_P \lambda \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi);$$

- (4) We have

$$\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi \vee \psi) \sim_P \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi) \vee \text{Tr}_Y(\psi).$$

**Proof** Take a closed smooth real  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  on  $X$  such that  $\theta_\varphi, \theta_\psi$  are both Kähler currents. Let  $(\varphi_j)_j$  and  $(\psi_j)_j$  be quasi-equisingular approximations of  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  respectively.

(1). By **Corollary 7.1.2** and **Proposition 6.2.5**, we may assume that  $\varphi_j \leq \psi_j$  for all  $j$ . Then our assertion follows from **Proposition 6.2.4**.

(2). It follows from **Theorem 6.2.2** that  $\varphi_j + \psi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} P_\theta[\varphi]_I + P_\theta[\psi]_I$ . However, by **Proposition 3.2.10** and **Proposition 7.2.1**, we have

$$P_\theta[\varphi]_I + P_\theta[\psi]_I \sim_P P_\theta[\varphi + \psi]_I.$$

Therefore, by [Proposition 6.2.2](#), [Corollary 7.1.2](#) and [Proposition 1.6.1](#),  $\varphi_j + \psi_j$  is a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi + \psi$ . We conclude using [Theorem 6.2.2](#).

(3). Let  $(\lambda_j)_j$  be an increasing sequence of positive rational numbers with limit  $\lambda$ . Then  $(\lambda_j \varphi_j)_j$  is a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$ . Our assertion follows [Lemma 6.2.3](#).

(4). By [Proposition 6.2.5](#), we have

$$\varphi_j \vee \psi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} P_\theta[\varphi]_I \vee P_\theta[\psi]_I.$$

By [Proposition 3.2.10](#) and [Proposition 7.2.1](#), we have

$$P_\theta[\varphi]_I \vee P_\theta[\psi]_I \sim_P P_\theta[\varphi \vee \psi]_I.$$

Therefore, our assertion follows exactly as in the proof of (2).  $\square$

prop:tracedeclimit

**Proposition 8.2.2** *Let  $(\varphi_j)_{j \in I}$  be a decreasing net in  $\text{QPSH}(X)$ . Assume that there exists a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\theta$  such that  $\varphi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  for each  $j \in I$ . Assume that  $\varphi_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  and  $v(\varphi, Y) = 0$ . Then*

$$\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi_j) \xrightarrow{d_S} \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi).$$

**Proof** By [Corollary 6.2.7](#), we may assume that there is a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$  such that  $\varphi, \varphi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta - \omega)$  for all  $j \in I$ . Note that for each  $j \geq 1$ ,

$$\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi_{j+1}) \leq_P \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi_j).$$

It follows from [Proposition 8.2.1](#) and [Corollary 6.2.5](#) that there exists  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(\tilde{Y}, \theta|_{\tilde{Y}})$  such that  $\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi_j) \xrightarrow{d_S} \psi$ .

For each  $j$ , we take a quasi-equisingular approximation  $(\varphi_j^k)_k$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  of  $\varphi_j$ . Using [Theorem 1.6.2](#), we may guarantee that

$$\varphi_{j+1}^k \leq \varphi_j^k$$

for each  $j, k \geq 1$ . In particular,  $\varphi_j^j$  is a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$ . By [Proposition 6.2.4](#), we have  $\psi \leq_P \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi)$ .

Conversely, by [Proposition 8.2.1](#),  $\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi_j) \geq_P \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi)$ . It follows again from [Proposition 6.2.4](#) that  $\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi) \leq_P \psi$ .  $\square$

lma:rescommpullback

**Lemma 8.2.1** *Let  $\pi: Z \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism with  $Z$  being a connected Kähler manifold. Assume that  $W$  (resp.  $Y$ ) be analytic subsets in  $Z$  (resp.  $X$ ) of codimension 1 such that the restriction  $\Pi: W \rightarrow Y$  of  $\pi$  is defined and is bimeromorphic, so that we have the following commutative diagram*



$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\tilde{W} & \longrightarrow & W & \hookrightarrow & Z \\
\downarrow \tilde{\Pi} & & \downarrow \Pi & & \downarrow \pi \\
\tilde{Y} & \longrightarrow & Y & \hookrightarrow & X.
\end{array}$$

Then for any  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  with  $\nu(\varphi, Y) = 0$ , we have

$$\tilde{\Pi}^* \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi) \sim_P \text{Tr}_W(\pi^* \varphi). \quad (8.6)$$

{eq:rescommpullback}

**Proof** We first observe that by Zariski's main theorem,  $\nu(\pi^* \varphi, W) = 0$ . So the right-hand side of (8.6) makes sense.

**Step 1.** Assume that  $T$  has analytic singularities. It suffices to apply [Example 8.1.1](#) to reformulate (8.6) as

$$\tilde{\Pi}^*(\varphi|_{\tilde{Y}}) \sim_P (\pi^* \varphi)|_{\tilde{W}}.$$

In fact, the strict equality holds, which is nothing but the functoriality of pullbacks.

**Step 2.** Next we handle the general case. Up to replacing  $\theta$  by  $\theta + \omega$  for some Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ , we may assume that  $T$  is a Kähler current. Take a quasi-equisingular approximation  $(\varphi_j)_j$  of  $\varphi$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . By [Corollary 7.1.2](#),  $(\pi^* \varphi_j)_j$  is a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\pi^* \varphi$ . From Step 1, we know that for each  $j$ ,

$$\tilde{\Pi}^* \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi_j) \sim_P \text{Tr}_W(\pi^* \varphi_j).$$

Letting  $j \rightarrow \infty$ , we conclude (8.6) using [Proposition 8.2.2](#).  $\square$

prop:OT2

**Proposition 8.2.3** Let  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  with  $\nu(\varphi, Y) = 0$ . Assume that  $Y$  is smooth. Then for any  $\lambda > 0$ , we have

$$I(\lambda \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi)) \subseteq \text{Res}_Y I(\lambda \varphi). \quad (8.7)$$

{eq:OT}

**Proof** Take a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$  such that  $\omega_\varphi$  is a Kähler current.

Let  $(\varphi_j)_j$  be a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \omega)$ .

By definition, for each  $j \geq 1$ , we get that

$$\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi) \leq_P \varphi_j|_Y.$$

For any  $\lambda' > \lambda > 0$ , we can find  $j > 0$  so that

$$I(\lambda' \varphi_j) \subseteq I(\lambda \varphi).$$

By [Theorem 1.4.5](#), we have

$$I(\lambda' \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi)) \subseteq I(\lambda' \varphi_j|_Y) \subseteq \text{Res}_Y I(\lambda' \varphi_j) \subseteq \text{Res}_Y I(\lambda \varphi).$$

Thanks to [Theorem 1.4.4](#), we conclude (8.7).  $\square$

Lastly, we turn our attention to global sections. For this we will need the following global Ohsawa–Takegoshi extension theorem for the trace operator:

thm: OT\_ext\_global

**Theorem 8.2.1** *Let  $L$  be a big line bundle on  $X$  and  $\theta$  is a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing  $c_1(L)$ . Suppose that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  and  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current. Assume that  $v(\varphi, Y) = 0$ . Let  $T$  be a holomorphic line bundle on  $X$ . Then there exists  $k_0$  such that for all  $k \geq k_0$  and  $s \in H^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi)))$ , there exists an extension  $\tilde{s} \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k\varphi))$ .*

It is of interest to know if one could control the  $L^2$ -norm of  $\tilde{s}$  in the above result.

**Proof** Fix a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . We may assume that  $Y \neq X$  and that  $\theta_\varphi \geq 3\delta\omega$  for some  $\delta > 0$ . Let  $(\varphi_j)_j$  be the decreasing quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . We can assume that  $\theta_{\varphi_j} \geq 2\delta\omega$  for all  $j \geq 1$ . Also, there exists  $\epsilon_0 > 0$  such that  $\theta_{(1+\epsilon)\varphi_j} \geq \delta\omega$  for any  $\epsilon \in (0, \epsilon_0)$ . Take  $k_0 = k_0(\delta)$  as in [Theorem 1.8.1](#).

We fix  $k \geq k_0$  and  $s \in H^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi)))$ . By [Theorem 1.4.4](#), there exists  $\epsilon \in (0, \epsilon_0)$  such that  $s \in H^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k(1+\epsilon) \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi)))$ .

Since  $\text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi) \leq \varphi_j|_Y$ , we obtain that  $s \in H^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k(1+\epsilon)\varphi_j|_Y))$ . Due to [Theorem 1.8.1](#) there exists  $\tilde{s}_j \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k(1+\epsilon)\varphi_j))$  such that  $\tilde{s}_j|_Y = s$ , for all  $j$ .

But by definition of quasi-equisingular approximation, we obtain that for high enough  $j$  the inclusion  $\mathcal{I}(k(1+\epsilon)\varphi_j) \subseteq \mathcal{I}(k\varphi)$  holds. As a result,  $\tilde{s}_j \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k\varphi))$  for high enough  $j$ , finishing the argument.  $\square$

thm:exttracegeneral

**Conjecture 8.2.1** Assume that  $Y$  is smooth and has positive dimension. Fix a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . For each  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(Y, \omega|_Y)$  such that  $\omega|_Y + \text{dd}^c \varphi$  is a Kähler current, we can find  $\tilde{\varphi} \in \text{PSH}(X, \omega)$  such that  $\omega + \text{dd}^c \tilde{\varphi}$  is a Kähler current and

$$\text{Tr}_Y(\tilde{\varphi}) \sim_{\mathcal{I}} \varphi.$$

### 8.3 Restricted volumes

Let  $X$  be a connected projective manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $Y \subseteq X$  be a connected submanifold of dimension  $m$ . Consider a big line bundle  $L$  on  $X$ , a Hermitian metric  $h_0$  on  $L$  with  $\theta = c_1(L, h_0)$ . Let  $A$  be a very ample line bundle on  $X$ . Take a Hermitian metric  $h_A$  on  $A$  such that  $\omega = \text{dd}^c h_A$  is a Kähler form.

Using the trace operator, one could prove the following generalization of [Theorem 7.3.1](#).

thm: rest\_volume

**Theorem 8.3.1** *Let  $h$  be a singular plurisubharmonic metric on  $L$  with  $v(\text{dd}^c h, Y) = 0$ . Assume that*

$$\lim_{\epsilon \searrow 0} \left( \text{Tr}_Y^{c_1(L|_Y) + \epsilon \omega} (c_1(L, h)) \right)^m > 0. \quad (8.8)$$

{eq:traceposmasscond2}

*Then for any holomorphic line bundle  $T$  on  $X$  we have that*

$$\int_Y \left( \text{Tr}_Y^{c_1(L|_Y)} (c_1(L, h)) \right)^m = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{k^m} h^0 \left( Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes \text{Res}_Y(\mathcal{I}(h^k)) \right). \quad (8.9)$$

{eq:DXmainrelative}

Recall that  $\text{Res}_Y$  is defined in [Definition 1.4.5](#). Observe that by [Example 8.1.3](#), (8.8) implies that  $\text{Tr}_Y^{c_1(L|_Y)}(c_1(L, h))$  is defined. So (8.9) is defined.

We will identify  $h$  with  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  as in (1.8).

We only need to consider the case  $Y \neq X$ , since otherwise, the result is proved in [Theorem 7.3.1](#). We will always assume  $Y \neq X$  in the sequel.

**Lemma 8.3.1** *There is  $\psi_Y \in \text{QPSH}(X)$  with neat analytic singularities such that  $\{\psi_Y = -\infty\} = Y$  and in an open neighbourhood of  $Y$ , we have*

$$\psi_Y(x) = 2(n - m) \log \text{dist}(x, Y) \quad (8.10)$$

`{eq: Psi_Y_def}`

for some Riemannian distance function  $\text{dist}(\cdot, Y)$ .

See [Definition 1.6.1](#) for the definition of neat analytic singularities.

See [\[Fin22, Lemma 2.3\]](#) for the proof.

`lma:IpsiY`

**Lemma 8.3.2** *The multiplier ideal sheaf of  $\psi_Y$  can be calculated as*

$$\mathcal{I}(\psi_Y) = \mathcal{I}_Y. \quad (8.11)$$

`{eq:mis_psi}`

Moreover, given  $y \in Y$  and  $\epsilon > 0$ , for any germ  $f \in \mathcal{I}_{Y,y}$  we have

$$\int_U |f|^\epsilon e^{-\psi_Y} \omega^n < \infty, \quad (8.12)$$

`{eq:integrabilitypsiY}`

where  $U$  is an open neighbourhood of  $y$  in  $X$ .

In other words,  $\psi_Y$  has log canonical singularities.

**Proof** Since  $\psi_Y$  is locally bounded away from  $Y$ , it suffices to prove (8.11) along  $Y$ . Fix  $y \in Y$ , and we will verify (8.11) germ-wise at  $y$ .

Take an open neighbourhood  $U \subset X$  of  $y$  and a biholomorphic map  $F: U \rightarrow V \times W$ , where  $V$  is an open neighbourhood of  $y$  in  $Y$  and  $W$  is a connected open subset in  $\mathbb{C}^{n-m}$  containing 0, such that  $F(Y \cap U) = V \times \{0\}$ . For any  $x \in U$ , write  $x_V, x_W$  for the two components of  $F(x)$  in  $V$  and  $W$  respectively. We denote the coordinates in  $\mathbb{C}^{n-m}$  as  $w_1, \dots, w_{n-m}$ .

Due to (8.10), after possibly shrinking  $U$ , we may assume that

$$\exp(-\psi_Y(x)) = |x_W|^{2m-2n} + \mathcal{O}(1)$$

for any  $x \in U \setminus Y$ .

Given  $f \in \mathcal{I}_{Y,y}$ , after shrinking  $U$ , we may assume that there exists  $g_1, \dots, g_{n-m} \in H^0(V \times W, \mathcal{O}_{V \times W})$  such that

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^{n-m} w_i g_i.$$

In order to verify  $f \in \mathcal{I}(\psi_Y)_y$ , it suffices to show  $w_i g_i \in \mathcal{I}((\sum_{i=1}^{n-m} |w_i|^2)^{m-n})_{F(y)}$ , which follows from Fubini's theorem. The proof of (8.12) is similar.

Conversely, take  $f \in I(\psi_Y)$ , the similar application of Fubini's theorem shows that after possible shrinking  $U$ , we have  $f|_Y = 0$ . By Rückert's Nullstellensatz [GR84, Page 67], it follows that  $f \in I_Y$ .  $\square$

lem: analytic\_formula

**Lemma 8.3.3** *Assume that  $\varphi$  has analytic singularity type and  $\theta_u$  is a Kähler current. Suppose that  $\varphi|_Y \not\equiv -\infty$ . Then*

$$\int_Y (\theta|_Y + \text{dd}^c \varphi|_Y)^m = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{k^m} \dim_{\mathbb{C}} \{s|_Y : s \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(k\varphi))\}. \quad (8.13)$$

{eq:asymanasing}

Recall that  $\mathcal{I}_{\infty}$  is defined in Definition 1.6.5.

**Proof** Suppose that  $\epsilon \in (0, 1)$  is small enough so that  $(1 - \epsilon)u \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

Using Theorem 7.3.1 we can start to write the following sequence of inequalities:

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{m!} \int_Y (\theta|_Y + \text{dd}^c \varphi|_Y)^m \\ &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} h^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes I(k\varphi|_Y)) \\ &\leq \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} \dim \{s|_Y : s \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(k\varphi))\} \quad \text{by Theorem 1.8.1} \\ &\leq \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} \dim \{s|_Y : s \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(k\varphi))\} \\ &\leq \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} \dim \{s|_Y : s \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}_{\infty}((1 - \epsilon)k\varphi))\} \quad \text{by Lemma 1.6.3} \\ &\leq \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} \dim_{\mathbb{C}} \{s \in H^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k) : \log h^k(s, s) \leq (1 - \epsilon)k\varphi|_Y\} \\ &\leq \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} h^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes I((1 - \epsilon)k\varphi|_Y)) \\ &= \frac{1}{m!} \int_Y (\theta|_Y + (1 - \epsilon)\text{dd}^c \varphi|_Y)^m \quad \text{by Theorem 7.3.1.} \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ , (8.13) follows from multi-linearity of the non-pluripolar product.  $\square$

prop: rest\_volume

**Proposition 8.3.1** *In the setting of Theorem 8.3.1, assume that  $\text{dd}^c h$  is a Kähler current. Then (8.9) holds.*

**Proof** Let  $(\varphi_j)_j$  a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . After possibly replacing  $(\varphi_j)_j$  by a subsequence, there exists  $\epsilon_0 \in (0, 1) \cap \mathbb{Q}$  such that  $\theta_{(1-\epsilon)^2 \varphi_j}$  and  $\theta_{(1-\epsilon)\varphi_j}$  are also Kähler currents for any  $\epsilon \in (0, \epsilon_0)$ .

We claim that for any  $j \geq 1$  and  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , we have

$$\mathcal{I}_{\infty}((1 - \epsilon)k\varphi_j) \cap I(\psi_Y) \subseteq I((1 - \epsilon)^2 k\varphi_j + \psi_Y). \quad (8.14)$$

{eq:JcapI}

Take  $x \in X$ , and it suffices to argue (8.14) along the germ of  $x$ . Since  $\psi_Y$  is locally bounded outside  $Y$ , we may assume that  $x \in Y$ . Recall that by Lemma 8.3.2,  $I(\psi_Y) = I_Y$ .

Let  $f \in \mathcal{I}_\infty((1-\epsilon)k\varphi_j)_x \cap \mathcal{I}(\psi_Y)_x$ . Then there is an open neighbourhood  $U$  of  $x$  in  $X$  such that  $|f|^{2(1-\epsilon)} e^{-k(1-\epsilon)^2\varphi_j} \leq C$  holds on  $U \setminus \{\varphi_j = -\infty\}$  for some  $C > 0$ , hence

$$\int_U |f|^2 e^{-k(1-\epsilon)^2\varphi_j - \psi_Y} \omega^n = \int_U |f|^{2(1-\epsilon)} e^{-k(1-\epsilon)^2\varphi_j} |f|^{2\epsilon} e^{-\psi_Y} \omega^n \leq C \int_U |f|^{2\epsilon} e^{-\psi_Y} \omega^n < \infty,$$

where the last inequality follows from [Lemma 8.3.2](#). We have proved the claim [\(8.14\)](#).

Next we consider the following composition morphism of coherent sheaves on  $Y$ :

$$\text{Res}_Y \mathcal{I}_\infty((1-\epsilon)k\varphi_j) \hookrightarrow \frac{\mathcal{I}((1-\epsilon)^2k\varphi_j)}{\mathcal{I}_\infty((1-\epsilon)k\varphi_j) \cap \mathcal{I}_Y} \rightarrow \frac{\mathcal{I}((1-\epsilon)^2k\varphi_j)}{\mathcal{I}((1-\epsilon)^2k\varphi_j + \psi_Y)}. \quad (8.15)$$

{eq: sheaf\_injection}

Here we have identified the coherent  $\mathcal{O}_X$ -modules supported on  $Y$  with coherent  $\mathcal{O}_Y$ -modules. Note that the target of [\(8.15\)](#) is also supported on  $Y$  as  $\psi_Y$  is locally bounded outside  $Y$ . We denote the coherent  $\mathcal{O}_Y$ -module whose pushforward to  $X$  gives  $\frac{\mathcal{I}((1-\epsilon)^2k\varphi_j)}{\mathcal{I}((1-\epsilon)^2k\varphi_j + \psi_Y)}$  by  $\mathcal{I}_{k,j}$ .

In [\(8.15\)](#), the first map is the inclusion and the second one is the obvious projection induced by [\(8.14\)](#). Although in general the second map fails to be injective, we observe that the composition is still injective as  $\mathcal{I}((1-\epsilon)^2k\varphi_j + \psi_Y) \subseteq \mathcal{I}(\psi_Y) = \mathcal{I}_Y$ . Therefore, for any  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , we have an injective morphism of coherent  $\mathcal{O}_Y$ -modules:

$$L_Y^k \otimes T|_Y \otimes \text{Res}_Y \mathcal{I}_\infty((1-\epsilon)k\varphi_j) \hookrightarrow L_Y^k \otimes T|_Y \otimes \mathcal{I}_{k,j}. \quad (8.16)$$

{eq: injLkTideal}

Using [Theorem 7.3.1](#) we can start the following inequalities:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \frac{1}{m!} \int_Y \left( \theta|_Y + \text{dd}^c \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi) \right)^m \\
&= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} h^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes I(k \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi))) \quad \text{by Theorem 7.3.1} \\
&\leq \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} h^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes \text{Res}_Y(I(k\varphi))) \quad \text{by Theorem 1.4.5} \\
&\leq \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} h^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes \text{Res}_Y(I(k\varphi))) \\
&\leq \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} h^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes I(k\varphi_j)|_Y) \\
&\leq \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} h^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes I_\infty((1-\epsilon)k\varphi_j)|_Y) \quad \text{by Lemma 1.6.3} \\
&\leq \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} h^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes I_{k,j}) \quad \text{by (8.16)} \\
&\leq \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} \dim_{\mathbb{C}} \left\{ s|_Y : s \in H^0 \left( X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \frac{I((1-\epsilon)^2 k\varphi_j)}{I((1-\epsilon)^2 k\varphi_j + \psi_Y)} \right) \right\} \\
&= \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k^m} \dim_{\mathbb{C}} \{ s|_Y : s \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I((1-\epsilon)^2 k\varphi_j)) \} \quad (\text{see below}) \\
&= \frac{1}{m!} \int_Y \left( \theta|_Y + (1-\epsilon)^2 \text{dd}^c \varphi_j|_Y \right)^m \quad \text{by Lemma 8.3.3,}
\end{aligned}$$

where in the penultimate line we used [\[CDM17, Theorem 1.1\(6\)\]](#) for  $q = 0$ . Letting  $\epsilon \rightarrow \infty$  and then  $j \rightarrow \infty$  the result follows.  $\square$

**Proof (Proof of Theorem 8.3.1)** Using [Proposition 8.2.3](#) and [Theorem 7.3.1](#) we obtain that

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_Y \left( \theta|_Y + \text{dd}^c \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi) \right)^m &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{k^m} h^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes I(k \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi))) \\
&\leq \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{k^m} h^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes \text{Res}_Y(I(k\varphi))).
\end{aligned}$$

{eq:DX\_cor}

Now we address the other direction in [\(8.9\)](#). Let  $\phi \in H^0(X, A)$  be a section that does not vanish identically on  $Y$ . Such  $\phi$  exists since  $A$  is very ample.

We fix  $k_0 \in \mathbb{N}$ . For any  $k \geq 0$ , we have that  $k = qk_0 + r$  with  $q, r \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $r \in \{0, \dots, k_0 - 1\}$ . Also, we have an injective linear map

$$H^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes I(k\varphi|_Y)) \xrightarrow{\cdot \phi^{\otimes q}} H^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes A|_Y^q \otimes I(k\varphi|_Y)).$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}
& \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{k^m} h^0 \left( Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes I(k\varphi|_Y) \right) \\
& \leq \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{k^m} h^0 \left( Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes A|_Y^q \otimes I(k\varphi|_Y) \right) \\
& = \frac{1}{k_0^m} \overline{\lim}_{q \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{q^m} h^0 \left( Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^{qk_0} \otimes A|_Y^q \otimes L|_Y^r \otimes I(k\varphi|_Y) \right) \\
& \leq \frac{1}{k_0^m} \overline{\lim}_{q \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{q^m} h^0 \left( Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^{qk_0} \otimes A|_Y^q \otimes L|_Y^r \otimes I(k_0 q \varphi|_Y) \right) \\
& = \int_Y \left( \theta|_Y + k_0^{-1} \omega|_Y + \text{dd}^c \text{Tr}_Y^{\theta + k_0^{-1} \omega}(\varphi) \right)^m \\
& = \int_Y \left( \theta|_Y + k_0^{-1} \omega|_Y + \text{dd}^c \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi) \right)^m,
\end{aligned}$$

where in the fourth line we have used that  $k_0 q \leq k$  and in the last line we have used [Proposition 8.3.1](#) for the big line bundle  $L^{k_0} \otimes A$ , the Kähler current  $k_0 \theta_u - \text{dd}^c \log g = k_0 \theta_u + \omega$ , and twisting bundle  $T \otimes L^r$ . Letting  $k_0 \rightarrow \infty$ , we conclude that

$$\overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{k^m} h^0 \left( Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes I(k\varphi|_Y) \right) \leq \int_Y \left( \theta|_Y + \text{dd}^c \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi) \right)^m.$$

thm: rest\_volume\_2

**Theorem 8.3.2** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that  $v(\varphi, Y) = 0$ . Assume that  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current. Then*

$$\int_Y \left( \theta|_Y + \text{dd}^c \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi) \right)^m = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{k^m} \dim_{\mathbb{C}} \{s|_Y : s \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(k\varphi))\}.$$

**Proof** This is a consequence of [Theorem 7.3.1](#), [Theorem 8.2.1](#) and [Theorem 8.3.1](#):

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_Y \left( \theta|_Y + \text{dd}^c \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi) \right)^m &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{k^m} h^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes I(k \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi))) \\
&\leq \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{k^m} \dim_{\mathbb{C}} \{s|_Y : s \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(k\varphi))\} \\
&\leq \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{k^m} \dim_{\mathbb{C}} \{s|_Y : s \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(k\varphi))\} \\
&\leq \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m!}{k^m} h^0(Y, T|_Y \otimes L|_Y^k \otimes I(k\varphi)|_Y) \\
&= \int_Y \left( \theta|_Y + \text{dd}^c \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi) \right)^m.
\end{aligned}$$

**Remark 8.3.1** One could also show that when [\(8.8\)](#) fails, the right-hand side of [\(8.9\)](#) is 0. See [\[DX24\]](#).

## 8.4 Analytic Bertini theorem

The analytic Bertini theorem handles the restriction along a generic subvariety.

thm:Bert

**Theorem 8.4.1** *Let  $X$  be a connected projective manifold of dimension  $n \geq 1$ . Let  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ . Let  $p: X \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^N$  be a morphism ( $N \geq 1$ ). Define*

$$\mathcal{G} := \{ H \in |\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^N}(1)| : H' := H \cap X \text{ is smooth and } \mathcal{I}(\varphi|_{H'}) = \text{Res}_{H'}(\mathcal{I}(\varphi)) \}.$$

*Then  $\mathcal{G} \subseteq |\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^N}(1)|$  is co-pluripolar.*

Recall that co-pluripolar sets are defined in [Definition 1.1.4](#).

*Remark 8.4.1* Here and in the sequel, we slightly abuse the notation by writing  $H \cap X$  for  $p^{-1}H$ , the scheme-theoretic inverse image of  $H$ . In other words,  $H \cap X := H \times_{\mathbb{P}^N} X$ .

By definition, any  $H \in |\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^N}(1)|$  such that  $p^{-1}H = \emptyset$  lies in  $\mathcal{G}$ .

**Proof** Take an ample line bundle  $L$  with a smooth Hermitian metric  $h$  such that  $c_1(L, h) + \text{dd}^c \varphi \geq 0$ , where  $c_1(L, h)$  is the first Chern form of  $(L, h)$ , namely the curvature form of  $h$ . Let  $\mathcal{L}$  be the invertible sheaf corresponding to  $L$ . We introduce  $\Lambda := |\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^N}(1)|$  to simplify our notations.

**Step 1.** We prove that the following set is co-pluripolar:

$$\mathcal{G}_{\mathcal{L}} := \left\{ H \in \Lambda : H \cap X \text{ is smooth and } H^0(H \cap X, \omega_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{L}|_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\varphi|_{H \cap X})) = H^0(H \cap X, \omega_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{L}|_{H \cap X} \otimes \text{Res}_{H \cap X}(\mathcal{I}(\varphi))) \right\}.$$

Here  $\omega_{H \cap X}$  denotes the dualizing sheaf of  $H \cap X$ .

Let  $U \subseteq \Lambda \times X$  be the closed subvariety whose  $\mathbb{C}$ -points correspond to pairs  $(H, x) \in \Lambda \times X$  with  $p(x) \in H$ . Let  $\pi_1: U \rightarrow \Lambda$  be the natural projection. We may assume that  $\pi_1$  is surjective, as otherwise there is nothing to prove.

Observe that  $U$  is a local complete intersection scheme by *Krulls Hauptidealsatz* and *a fortiori* a Cohen–Macaulay scheme. It follows from miracle flatness [\[Mat89, Theorem 23.1\]](#) that the natural projection  $\pi_2: U \rightarrow X$  is flat. As the fibers of  $\pi_2$  over closed points of  $X$  are isomorphic to  $\mathbb{P}^{N-1}$ , it follows that  $\pi_2$  is smooth. Thus,  $U$  is smooth as well.

In the following, we will construct pluripolar sets  $\Sigma_1 \subseteq \Sigma_2 \subseteq \Sigma_3 \subseteq \Sigma_4 \subseteq \Lambda$  such that the behaviour of  $\pi_1$  is improved successively on the complement of  $\Sigma_i$ .

**Step 1.1.** The usual Bertini theorem shows that there is a proper Zariski closed set  $\Sigma_1 \subseteq \Lambda$  such that  $\pi_1$  has smooth fibres outside  $\Sigma_1$ .

**Step 1.2.** By Grauert’s coherence theorem,

$$\mathcal{F}^i := R^i \pi_{1*} (\omega_{U/\Lambda} \otimes \pi_2^* \mathcal{L} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\pi_2^* \varphi))$$

is coherent for all  $i$ . Here  $\omega_{U/\Lambda}$  denotes the relative dualizing sheaf of the morphism  $U \rightarrow \Lambda$ . Thus, there is a proper Zariski closed set  $\Sigma_2 \subseteq \Lambda$  such that

- (1)  $\Sigma_2 \supseteq \Sigma_1$ .
- (2) The  $\mathcal{F}^i$ ’s are locally free outside  $\Sigma_2$ .



(3)  $\omega_{U/\Lambda} \otimes \pi_2^* \mathcal{L} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\pi_2^* \varphi)$  is  $\pi_1$ -flat on  $\pi_1^{-1}(\Lambda \setminus \Sigma_2)$  [EGAIV-2, DG65, Théorème 6.9.1].

We write  $\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{F}^0$ . By cohomology and base change [Har13, Theorem III.12.11], for any  $H \in \Lambda \setminus \Sigma_2$ , the fibre  $\mathcal{F}|_H$  of  $\mathcal{F}$  is given by

$$\mathcal{F}|_H = H^0(\pi_{1,H}, \omega_{U/\Lambda}|_{\pi_{1,H}} \otimes \pi_2^* \mathcal{L}|_{\pi_{1,H}} \otimes \text{Res}_{\pi_{1,H}}(\mathcal{I}(\pi_2^* \varphi))) .$$

Here  $\pi_{1,H}$  denotes the fibre of  $\pi_1$  at  $H$ .

**Step 1.3.** In order to proceed, we need to make use of the Hodge metric  $h_{\mathcal{H}}$  on  $\mathcal{F}$  defined in [HPS18]. We briefly recall its definition in our setting. By [HPS18, Section 22], we can find a proper Zariski closed set  $\Sigma_3 \subseteq \Lambda$  such that

- (1)  $\Sigma_3 \supseteq \Sigma_2$ .
- (2)  $\pi_1$  is submersive outside  $\Sigma_3$ .
- (3) Both  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\pi_{1*}(\omega_{U/\Lambda} \otimes \pi_2^* \mathcal{L}) / \mathcal{F}$  are locally free outside  $\Sigma_3$ .
- (4) For each  $i$ ,

$$R^i \pi_{1*}(\omega_{U/\Lambda} \otimes \pi_2^* \mathcal{L})$$

is locally free outside  $\Sigma_3$ .

Then for any  $H \in \Lambda \setminus \Sigma_3$ ,

$$H^0(H \cap X, \omega_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{L}|_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\varphi|_{H \cap X})) \subseteq \mathcal{F}|_H \subseteq H^0(H \cap X, \omega_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{L}|_{H \cap X}) .$$

See [HPS18, Lemma 22.1].

Now we can give the definition of the Hodge metric on  $\Lambda \setminus \Sigma_3$ . Given any  $H \in \Lambda \setminus \Sigma_3$ , any  $\alpha \in \mathcal{F}|_H$ , the Hodge metric is defined as

$$h_{\mathcal{H}}(\alpha, \alpha) := \int_{X \cap H} |\alpha|_{h_{e^{-\varphi}}|_{X \cap H}}^2 \in [0, \infty] .$$

Observe that  $h_{\mathcal{H}}(\alpha, \alpha) < \infty$  if and only if  $\alpha \in H^0(H \cap X, \omega_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{L}|_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\varphi|_{H \cap X}))$ . Moreover,  $h_{\mathcal{H}}(\alpha, \alpha) > 0$  if  $\alpha \neq 0$ . It is shown in [HPS18] (c.f. [PT18, Theorem 3.3.5]) that  $h_{\mathcal{H}}$  is indeed a singular Hermitian metric and it extends to a positive metric on  $\mathcal{F}$ .

**Step 1.4.** The determinant  $\det h_{\mathcal{H}}$  is singular at all  $H \in \Lambda \setminus \Sigma_3$  such that

$$H^0(H \cap X, \omega_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{L}|_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\varphi|_{H \cap X})) \neq \mathcal{F}|_H .$$

As the map  $\pi_2$  is smooth, we have  $\pi_2^* \mathcal{I}(\varphi) = \mathcal{I}(\pi_2^* \varphi)$  by Proposition 1.4.5. Under the identification  $\pi_{1,H} \cong H \cap X$ , we have

$$\pi_2^* \mathcal{I}(\varphi)|_{\pi_{1,H}} \cong \text{Res}_{H \cap X}(\mathcal{I}(\varphi)) .$$

Thus we have the following inclusions:

$$H^0(H \cap X, \omega_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{L}|_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\varphi|_{H \cap X})) \subseteq H^0(H \cap X, \omega_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{L}|_{H \cap X} \otimes \text{Res}_{H \cap X}(\mathcal{I}(\varphi))) = \mathcal{F}|_H .$$

Recall that the first inclusion follows from [Theorem 1.4.5](#). Hence  $\det h_{\mathcal{H}}$  is singular at all  $H \in |\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^N}(1)| \setminus \Sigma_3$  such that

$$H^0(H \cap X, \omega_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{L}|_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\varphi|_{H \cap X})) \neq H^0(H \cap X, \omega_{H \cap X} \otimes \mathcal{L}|_{H \cap X} \otimes \text{Res}_{H \cap X}(\mathcal{I}(\varphi))).$$

Let  $\Sigma_4$  be the union of  $\Sigma_3$  and the set of all such  $H$ . Since the Hodge metric  $h_{\mathcal{H}}$  is positive ([\[PT18, Theorem 3.3.5\]](#) and [\[HPS18, Theorem 21.1\]](#)), its determinant  $\det h_{\mathcal{H}}$  is also positive ([\[Rau15, Proposition 1.3\]](#) and [\[HPS18, Proposition 25.1\]](#)), it follows that  $\Sigma_4$  is pluripolar. As a consequence,  $\mathcal{G}_{\mathcal{L}}$  is co-pluripolar.

**Step 2.**

Fix an ample invertible sheaf  $\mathcal{S}$  on  $X$ . The same result holds with  $\mathcal{L} \otimes \mathcal{S}^{\otimes a}$  in place of  $\mathcal{L}$ . Thus the set

$$A := \bigcap_{a=0}^{\infty} \mathcal{G}_{\mathcal{L} \otimes \mathcal{S}^{\otimes a}}$$

is co-pluripolar. For each  $H \in W$  such that  $X \cap H$  is smooth and  $\mathcal{I}(\varphi|_{X \cap H}) \neq \text{Res}_{H \cap X}(\mathcal{I}(\varphi))$ , let  $\mathcal{K}$  be the following cokernel:

$$0 \rightarrow \mathcal{I}(\varphi|_{X \cap H}) \rightarrow \text{Res}_{H \cap X}(\mathcal{I}(\varphi)) \rightarrow \mathcal{K} \rightarrow 0.$$

By Serre vanishing theorem, taking  $a$  large enough, we may guarantee that

$$H^1(X \cap H, \omega_{X \cap H} \otimes (\mathcal{L} \otimes \mathcal{S}^{\otimes a})|_{X \cap H} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\varphi|_{X \cap H})) = 0$$

and

$$H^0(X \cap H, \omega_{X \cap H} \otimes (\mathcal{L} \otimes \mathcal{S}^{\otimes a})|_{X \cap H} \otimes \mathcal{K}) \neq 0.$$

Then

$$H^0(X \cap H, \omega_{X \cap H} \otimes (\mathcal{L} \otimes \mathcal{S}^{\otimes a})|_{X \cap H} \otimes \mathcal{I}(\varphi|_{X \cap H})) \neq H^0(X \cap H, \omega_{X \cap H} \otimes (\mathcal{L} \otimes \mathcal{S}^{\otimes a})|_{X \cap H} \otimes \text{Res}_{H \cap X}(\mathcal{I}(\varphi))).$$

Thus  $H \notin A$ . We conclude that  $\mathcal{G}$  is co-pluripolar.  $\square$

cor:ABTfortrace

**Corollary 8.4.1** *Let  $X$  be a connected projective manifold of dimension  $n \geq 1$  and  $\Lambda$  be a base-point free linear system on  $X$ . Fix  $\varphi \in \text{QPSH}(X)$ .*

*Then there is a co-pluripolar set  $\Lambda' \subseteq \Lambda$  such that any  $H \in \Lambda'$  is smooth,  $\nu(\varphi, H) = 0$  and we have*

$$\text{Tr}_H(\varphi) \sim_I \varphi|_H.$$

**Proof** First observe that the set  $\{x \in X : \nu(\varphi, x) > 0\}$  is a countable union of proper analytic subsets by [Theorem 1.4.1](#). It follows that a very general element in  $\Lambda$  is not contained in this set.

Fix an ample line bundle  $L$  so that there is a smooth psh metric  $h_L$  such that  $c_1(L, h_L) + \text{dd}^c \varphi$  is a Kähler current. Thanks to [Theorem 8.4.1](#), we can find a co-pluripolar set  $\Lambda' \subseteq \Lambda$  such that each  $H \in \Lambda'$  satisfies the following:

- (1)  $H$  is smooth;
- (2)  $\nu(\varphi, H) = 0$ ;

(3)  $\mathcal{I}(k\varphi|_H) = \text{Res}_H(\mathcal{I}(\varphi))$  for all  $k > 0$ .

It follows from [Theorem 8.3.1](#) and [Theorem 7.3.1](#) that

$$\int_H \left( c_1(L, h_L)|_H + \text{dd}^c \text{Tr}_Y^{c_1(L, h_L)}(\varphi) \right)^{n-1} = \int_H (c_1(L, h_L)|_H + \text{dd}^c \varphi|_H)^{n-1}.$$

Since  $\varphi|_H \leq \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi)$  by [Proposition 8.1.3](#), our assertion follows.  $\square$



## Chapter 9

### The theory of b-divisors

chap:bdiv

#### 9.1 The intersection theory of b-divisors

In this section, we briefly recall the intersection theory of Dang–Favre <sup>DF20</sup> [DF22].

Let  $X$  be a connected smooth projective variety of dimension  $n$ .

**Definition 9.1.1** A *birational model* of  $X$  is a projective birational morphism  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  from a *smooth* variety  $Y$ . A morphism between two birational models  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  and  $\pi': Y' \rightarrow X$  is a morphism  $Y \rightarrow Y'$  over  $X$ .

We write  $\text{Bir}(X)$  for the isomorphism classes of birational models of  $X$ . It is a directed set under the partial ordering of domination.

We will usually be sloppy by omitting  $\pi$  and say  $Y$  is a birational model of  $X$ .

We write  $\text{NS}^1(X)$  for the Néron–Severi group of  $X$  and  $\text{NS}^1(X)_K$  for  $\text{NS}^1(X) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} K$  for any subfield  $K$  of  $\mathbb{R}$ . Given  $\alpha, \beta \in \text{NS}^1(X)_K$ , we write  $\alpha \leq \beta$  if  $\beta - \alpha$  is pseudo-effective.

**Definition 9.1.2** A *Weil b-divisor*  $\mathbb{D}$  on  $X$  is an assignment that associates with each  $(\pi: Y \rightarrow X) \in \text{Bir}(X)$  a class  $\mathbb{D}_Y = \mathbb{D}_\pi \in \text{NS}^1(Y)_{\mathbb{R}}$  such that when  $\pi': Y' \rightarrow X$  dominates  $\pi$  through  $p: Y' \rightarrow Y$ , we have

$$p_* \mathbb{D}_{Y'} = \mathbb{D}_Y.$$

The set of Weil b-divisors on  $X$  is denoted by  $\text{bWeil}(X)$ .

A Weil b-divisor  $\mathbb{D}$  on  $X$  is *Cartier* if there is  $(\pi: Y \rightarrow X) \in \text{Bir}(X)$  such that for any  $(\pi': Y' \rightarrow X) \in \text{Bir}(X)$  which dominates  $\pi$  through  $p: Y' \rightarrow Y$ , we have

$$\mathbb{D}_{Y'} = p^* \mathbb{D}_Y.$$

In this case we say  $\mathbb{D}$  is *determined* on  $Y$  or  $\mathbb{D}$  has an *incarnation*  $\mathbb{D}_Y$  on  $Y$  and write  $\mathbb{D} = \mathbb{D}(\mathbb{D}_Y)$ . We also say  $\mathbb{D}$  is a Cartier b-divisor. The linear space of Cartier b-divisors is denoted by  $\text{bCart}(X)$ .

Our definition simply means

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{bWeil}(X) &= \varprojlim_{(\pi: Y \rightarrow X) \in \mathrm{Bir}(X)} \mathrm{NS}^1(Y)_{\mathbb{R}}, \\ \mathrm{bCart}(X) &= \varinjlim_{(\pi: Y \rightarrow X) \in \mathrm{Bir}(X)} \mathrm{NS}^1(Y)_{\mathbb{R}}, \end{aligned} \tag{9.1}$$

{eq:bdivprojlim}

in the category of vector spaces.

We endow  $\mathrm{bWeil}(X)$  with the projective limit topology, then the first equation in (9.1) becomes a projective limit in the category of locally convex linear spaces. Clearly,  $\mathrm{bCart}(X)$  is dense in  $\mathrm{bWeil}(X)$ .

def:nef

**Definition 9.1.3** A Cartier b-divisor  $\mathbb{D}$  on  $X$  is *nef* (resp. *big*) if some incarnation is (equivalently all incarnations are) nef (resp. *big*).

A Weil b-divisor  $\mathbb{D}$  on  $X$  is *nef* if it lies in the closure of the set of nef Cartier b-divisors.

Write  $\mathrm{bWeil}_{\mathrm{nef}}(X)$  for the set of nef Weil b-divisors on  $X$ .

A Weil b-divisor  $\mathbb{D}$  on  $X$  is *pseudo-effective* if for all  $(\pi: Y \rightarrow X) \in \mathrm{Bir}(X)$ ,  $\mathbb{D}_Y \geq 0$ .

We introduce a partial ordering on  $\mathrm{bWeil}(X)$ :

$$\mathbb{D} \leq \mathbb{D}' \text{ if and only if } \mathbb{D}_Y \leq \mathbb{D}'_Y \text{ for all } (\pi: Y \rightarrow X) \in \mathrm{Bir}(X).$$

We summarise Dang–Favre’s results:

thm:DF1

**Theorem 9.1.1** ([DF20](#), [DF22](#), [Theorem 2.1](#)) *Let  $\mathbb{D} \in \mathrm{bWeil}(X)$  be a nef Weil b-divisor. Then there is a decreasing net  $(\mathbb{D}_i)_{i \in I}$  of nef Cartier b-divisors such that*

$$\mathbb{D} = \lim_{i \in I} \mathbb{D}_i.$$

def:nefint

**Definition 9.1.4** Let  $\mathbb{D}_i \in \mathrm{bWeil}(X)$  ( $i = 1, \dots, n$ ) be nef Cartier b-divisors on  $X$ . We define  $(\mathbb{D}_1, \dots, \mathbb{D}_n) \in \mathbb{R}$  as follows: take  $(\pi: Y \rightarrow X) \in \mathrm{Bir}(X)$  such that all  $\mathbb{D}'_i$ s are determined on  $Y$ . Then define

$$(\mathbb{D}_1, \dots, \mathbb{D}_n) := (\mathbb{D}_{1,Y}, \dots, \mathbb{D}_{n,Y}). \tag{9.2}$$

The intersection number  $(\mathbb{D}_1, \dots, \mathbb{D}_n)$  does not depend on the choice of  $Y$ .

thm:DF2

**Theorem 9.1.2** ([DF20](#), [DF22](#), [Proposition 3.1](#), [Theorem 3.2](#)) *There is a unique pairing*

$$(\mathrm{bWeil}_{\mathrm{nef}}(X))^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$$

extending the pairing in [Definition 9.1.4](#) such that

- (1) *The pairing is monotonically increasing in each variable.*
- (2) *The pairing is continuous along decreasing nets in each variable.*

Moreover, this pairing has the following properties:

- (1) *It is symmetric, multilinear.*
- (2) *It is usc in each variable.*

**Definition 9.1.5** We define the *volume* of  $\mathbb{D} \in \text{bWeil}_{\text{nef}}(X)$  by

$$\text{vol } \mathbb{D} = (\mathbb{D}, \dots, \mathbb{D}). \quad (9.3)$$

$\{\text{eq:volbdivdef}\}$

We say  $\mathbb{D} \in \text{bWeil}_{\text{nef}}(X)$  is *big* if  $\text{vol } \mathbb{D} > 0$ .

Note that the definition of bigness is compatible with the definition in [Definition 9.1.3](#) in the case of Cartier b-divisors.

$\{\text{lma:volbdivaslim}\}$

**Lemma 9.1.1** *Let  $\mathbb{D} \in \text{bWeil}_{\text{nef}}(X)$ , then*

$$\text{vol } \mathbb{D} = \inf_{(Y \rightarrow X) \in \text{Bir}(X)} \text{vol } \mathbb{D}_Y = \lim_{(Y \rightarrow X) \in \text{Bir}(X)} \text{vol } \mathbb{D}_Y.$$

**Proof** By [Theorem 9.1.1](#), we can find a decreasing net  $\mathbb{D}^\alpha$  of nef Cartier b-divisors on  $X$  converging to  $\mathbb{D}$ . Clearly,

$$\text{vol } \mathbb{D}^\alpha = \inf_{Y \rightarrow X} \text{vol } \mathbb{D}_Y^\alpha.$$

It follows from [Theorem 9.1.2](#) and the continuity of the volume functional [\[ELMNP05, Corollary 2.6\]](#) that

$$\text{vol } \mathbb{D} = \inf_{\alpha} \inf_{Y \rightarrow X} \text{vol } \mathbb{D}_Y^\alpha = \inf_{Y \rightarrow X} \text{vol } \mathbb{D}_Y.$$

On the other hand, as in general push-forward will increase the volume, we see that  $\text{vol } \mathbb{D}_Y$  is decreasing in  $Y$ , so we conclude.  $\square$

## 9.2 The singularity b-divisors

$\{\text{sec:bdiv1}\}$

Let  $X$  be a connected smooth projective variety over  $\mathbb{C}$  of dimension  $n$ . Consider  $(L, h_L)$  be a Hermitian big line bundle on  $X$ . Fix a smooth Hermitian metric  $h_0$  on  $L$  and write  $\theta = c_1(L, h_0)$ . We could identify  $h_L$  with  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

**Definition 9.2.1** Define the *singularity divisor*  $\text{Sing}_X \hat{L}$  of  $\hat{L}$  as the formal sum

$$\text{Sing}_X h_L = \text{Sing}_X \hat{L} := \sum_E v(h_L, E) E, \quad (9.4)$$

$\{\text{eq:singhatL}\}$

where  $E$  runs over all prime divisors contained in  $X$  and  $v(h_L, E)$  is the generic Lelong number of  $h_L$  along  $E$ . The singularity divisor is *not* a Weil divisor in general.

Note that this is a countable sum by Siu's semicontinuity theorem. Although  $\text{Sing}_X \hat{L}$  is not a divisor in general, it does define a class in  $\text{NS}^1(X)_{\mathbb{R}}$  as follows from [\[BFJ09, Proposition 1.3\]](#). We will be sloppy in the notations by writing  $\text{Sing}_X \hat{L}$  for this numerical class.

**Definition 9.2.2** The *singularity b-divisor*  $\text{Sing}\hat{L}$  of  $\hat{L}$  is the b-divisor over  $X$  defined by

$$(\text{Sing}\hat{L})_Y := \text{Sing}_Y \pi^* \hat{L},$$

where  $(\pi: Y \rightarrow X) \in \text{Bir}(X)$ .

Define

$$\mathbb{D}(\hat{L}) := \mathbb{D}(L) - \text{Sing}\hat{L}.$$

Here  $\mathbb{D}(L)$  is the Cartier b-divisor determined by  $L$  on  $X$ .

We also write  $\mathbb{D}^L(\varphi) = \mathbb{D}(\theta, \varphi)$  for  $\mathbb{D}(\hat{L})$ .

Recall the notation  $\varphi$  is introduced in the beginning of this section.

We are ready to derive the first version of the Chern–Weil formula.

thm:nefbvolume

**Theorem 9.2.1** The b-divisor  $\mathbb{D}(\hat{L})$  is a nef b-divisor and if in addition  $\int_X c_1(\hat{L})^n > 0$ ,

$$\frac{1}{n!} \text{vol } \mathbb{D}(\hat{L}) = \text{vol } \hat{L}. \quad (9.5)$$

{eq:volbandline}

**Proof Step 1.** We first handle the case where  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities. Take a resolution  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  so that  $\pi^*\varphi$  has log singularities along a snc  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $E$  on  $Y$ . Observe that  $\text{vol } \pi^*\hat{L} = \text{vol } \hat{L}$ . Similarly, by definition,  $\text{vol } \mathbb{D}(\hat{L}) = \text{vol } \mathbb{D}(\pi^*\hat{L})$ . Replacing  $X$  by  $Y$ , we may assume that  $\varphi$  has log singularities along a snc  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $E$  on  $X$ . In this case,  $\mathbb{D}(\hat{L}) = \mathbb{D}(L - E)$ , which is nef. We are reduced to show that

$$\text{vol } \hat{L} = \frac{1}{n!} ((L - E)^n). \quad (9.6)$$

{eq:temp14}

The volume of  $\hat{L}$  is computed as in [Proposition 7.3.1](#), giving (9.6).

**Step 2.** Assume that  $\text{dd}^c h_L$  is a Kähler current. Take a quasi-equisingular approximation  $\varphi^j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  of  $\varphi$ . Write  $h^j$  for the corresponding metrics on  $L$ . By [Theorem 6.2.5](#) and [Theorem 7.3.1](#),  $\text{vol}(L, h^j) \rightarrow \text{vol}(L, h)$ . Observe that  $\mathbb{D}(L, h^j)$  is decreasing in  $j$ . By Step 1 and [Theorem 9.1.2](#), it therefore suffices to show that  $\mathbb{D}(L, h^j) \rightarrow \mathbb{D}(L, h)$ . In more concrete terms, this means that for any  $(\pi: Y \rightarrow X) \in \text{Bir}(X)$ ,

$$\text{Sing}(\pi^*L, \pi^*h^j) \rightarrow \text{Sing}(\pi^*L, \pi^*h)$$

in  $\text{NS}^1(Y)_{\mathbb{R}}$ . This obviously follows from [Theorem 6.2.4](#) if  $\text{Sing}(\pi^*L, \pi^*h)$  has only finitely many components. In general, fix an ample class  $\omega$  in  $\text{NS}^1(Y)$ . We want to show that for any  $\epsilon > 0$ , we can find  $j_0 > 0$  so that when  $j \geq j_0$ ,

$$\text{Sing}(\pi^*L, \pi^*h^j) \geq \text{Sing}(\pi^*L, \pi^*h) - \epsilon\omega. \quad (9.7)$$

{eq:temp55}

Write

$$\text{Sing}(\pi^*L, \pi^*h) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i E_i, \quad \text{Sing}(\pi^*L, \pi^*h^j) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} a_i^j E_i.$$

Then  $a_i^j \leq a_i$ . We can find  $N > 0$  large enough, so that



$$\text{Sing}(\pi^*L, \pi^*h) \leq \sum_{i=1}^N a_i E_i + \frac{\epsilon}{2} \omega.$$

By [Theorem 6.2.4](#), we can take  $j_0$  large enough so that for  $j > j_0$ ,

$$(a_i - a_i^j)E_i \leq \frac{\epsilon}{2N} \omega, \quad i = 1, \dots, N.$$

Then [\(9.7\)](#) follows.

**Step 3.** Assume that  $\int_X c_1(\hat{L})^n > 0$ .

By [Lemma 2.3.2](#), take  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that  $\theta_\psi$  is a Kähler current and  $\varphi \geq \psi$ . Then  $(1 - j^{-1})\varphi + j^{-1}\psi$  is an increasing sequence in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  converging to  $\varphi$  pointwisely and hence with respect to  $d_S$  as  $j \rightarrow \infty$ . It follows that

$$\lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} \text{vol}(\theta, (1 - j^{-1})\varphi + j^{-1}\psi) = \text{vol}(\theta, \varphi).$$

Write  $h_1$  for the metric on  $L$  induced by  $\psi$ . It is obvious that

$$\text{vol } \mathbb{D}(L, (1 - j^{-1})h_L + j^{-1}h_1) \rightarrow \text{vol } \mathbb{D}(L, h_L)$$

as  $j \rightarrow \infty$ . So we conclude by Step 2.

**Step 4.** We handle the general case.

Take an ample line bundle  $S$  on  $X$ . From Step 3, we know that for any rational  $\epsilon > 0$ ,  $\mathbb{D}(\hat{L}) + \epsilon \mathbb{D}(S)$  is a nef b-divisor. It follows immediately that  $\mathbb{D}(\hat{L})$  is nef.  $\square$

cor:Imodcharbdiv

**Corollary 9.2.1** Assume that  $\int_X c_1(\hat{L})^n > 0$ , then  $\hat{L}$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good if and only if

$$\text{vol } \mathbb{D}(\hat{L}) = \int_X c_1(\hat{L})^n.$$

**Proof** This follows from [Theorem 9.2.1](#) and [Theorem 7.3.1](#).  $\square$

thm:pshbdivcont

**Theorem 9.2.2** The map  $\mathbb{D}: \text{PSH}(X, \theta) \rightarrow \text{bWeil}(X)$  is continuous. Here on  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  we take the  $d_S$ -pseudometric.

**Proof** Let  $\varphi_i \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  be a sequence converging to  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  with respect to  $d_S$ . We want to show that

$$\mathbb{D}(\theta, \varphi_i) \rightarrow \mathbb{D}(\theta, \varphi).$$

As  $\varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$  implies that  $\pi^* \varphi_i \xrightarrow{d_S} \pi^* \varphi$  for any  $(\pi: Y \rightarrow X) \in \text{Bir}(X)$ , it suffices to prove

$$\text{Sing}_X \varphi_i \rightarrow \text{Sing}_X \varphi \quad \text{in } \text{NS}^1(X)_{\mathbb{R}}. \quad (9.8)$$

{eq:temp7}

Write

$$\text{Sing}_X \varphi_i = \sum_E a_i^E E, \quad \text{Sing}_X \varphi = \sum_E a^E E,$$

where  $E$  runs over all prime divisors on  $X$ . By [Theorem 6.2.4](#),  $a_i^E \rightarrow a^E$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$ . When the number of  $E$ 's is finite, (9.8) follows trivially. Otherwise, we write the prime divisors on  $X$  having positive coefficients in either  $\text{Sing}_X \varphi_i$  or  $\text{Sing}_X \varphi$  as  $E_1, E_2, \dots$ .

We fix a basis  $e_1, \dots, e_N$  of the finite-dimensional vector space  $\text{NS}^1(X)_{\mathbb{R}}$ , so that the pseudo-effective cone is contained in the cone  $\sum_d \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} e_d$ . Write

$$E_i = \sum_{d=1}^N f_i^d e_d, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots$$

Then we need to show that for any  $d = 1, \dots, N$ ,

$$\lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} a_i^{E_j} f_j^d = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} a^{E_j} f_j^d.$$

This follows from the dominated convergence theorem, since

$$\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} a_i^{E_j} E_j \leq c_1(L), \quad \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} a^{E_j} E_j \leq c_1(L).$$

A mixed version of [Theorem 9.2.1](#) is also true:

thm:nefbvolume2

**Theorem 9.2.3** *Let  $\hat{L}_1, \dots, \hat{L}_n$  be Hermitian big line bundles on  $X$ . Then*

$$\frac{1}{n!} (\mathbb{D}(\hat{L}_1), \dots, \mathbb{D}(\hat{L}_n)) = \text{vol}(\hat{L}_1, \dots, \hat{L}_n) \geq \frac{1}{n!} \int_X c_1(\hat{L}_1) \wedge \dots \wedge c_1(\hat{L}_n). \quad (9.9)$$

{eq:bdivmixint}

If each  $\hat{L}_i$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good, then equality holds.

**Proof** The inequality part of (9.9) is obvious. It suffices to establish the equality part.

**Step 1.** We first handle the case of when each  $\hat{L}_i$  has analytic singularities. We may clearly reduce to the case of log singularities along a snc  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $D_i$  on  $X$ . In this case, the left-hand side of (9.9) is just  $(L_1 - D_1, \dots, L_n - D_n)$ . The middle term is  $\int_X c_1(\hat{L}_1) \wedge \dots \wedge c_1(\hat{L}_n)$ . By polarization, this follows from [Theorem 9.2.1](#).

**Step 2.** Assume that the  $\text{dd}^c h_{L_i}$ 's are Kähler currents. Let  $(h_i^j)_j$  be a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $h_{L_i}$ . By [Theorem 9.1.2](#), the left-hand side of (9.9) is continuous along these approximations:

$$\lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} (\mathbb{D}(L_1, h_1^j), \dots, \mathbb{D}(L_n, h_n^j)) = (\mathbb{D}(\hat{L}_1), \dots, \mathbb{D}(\hat{L}_n)).$$

On the other hand, by [Theorem 6.2.1](#), the middle part of (9.9) is also continuous:

$$\lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} \text{vol}((L_1, h_1^j), \dots, (L_n, h_n^j)) = \text{vol}(\hat{L}_1, \dots, \hat{L}_n).$$

So we reduce to Step 1.

**Step 3.** The general case follows from the same argument as Step 3 in the proof [Theorem 9.2.1](#).  $\square$



## Chapter 10

### Test curves

chap:testcurve

#### 10.1 The notion of test curves

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $\theta$  be a smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing a big cohomology class.

def:testcur

**Definition 10.1.1** A *test curve*  $\Gamma$  in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  consists of a real number  $\Gamma_{\max}$  together with a map  $(-\infty, \Gamma_{\max}) \rightarrow \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  denoted by  $\tau \mapsto \Gamma_\tau$  satisfying the following conditions:

- (1) The map  $\tau \mapsto \Gamma_\tau$  is concave and decreasing;
- (2) Each  $\Gamma_\tau$  is a model potential;
- (3) The potential

$$\Gamma_{-\infty} := \sup_{\tau < \Gamma_{\max}}^* \Gamma_\tau \quad (10.1)$$

{eq:Gammaminf}

satisfies

$$\int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c \Gamma_{-\infty})^n > 0.$$

Let  $\phi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  be a model potential. The set of test curves  $\Gamma$  with  $\Gamma_{-\infty} = \phi$  is denoted by  $\text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$ .

The set of all  $\text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$ 's for various model potentials  $\phi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  is denoted by  $\text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ .

By 2,  $\sup_X \Gamma_\tau = 0$  for each  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ . So  $\Gamma_{-\infty} \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  defined in (10.1) by [Proposition 1.2.1](#). Moreover,  $\Gamma_{-\infty}$  is a model potential by [Proposition 3.1.9](#).

*Remark 10.1.1* Sometimes it is convenient to extend  $\Gamma_\tau$  to  $\tau \geq \Gamma_{\max}$  as well. This can be done as follows: for  $\tau > \Gamma_{\max}$ , we set  $\Gamma_\tau \equiv -\infty$ . For  $\tau = \Gamma_{\max}$ , we set

$$\Gamma_\tau := \inf_{\tau' < \Gamma_{\max}} \Gamma_{\tau'} \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta).$$

We will always make this extension in the sequel.

Recall that according to our general principle, we only talk about model potentials when a potential has positive mass. Fortunately, this principle is not violated in the above definition, as shown below:

lma:testcurvposmass

**Lemma 10.1.1** *Assume that  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Then for each  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ , we have*

$$\int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c \Gamma_\tau)^n > 0. \quad (10.2)$$

{eq:dalethtauposmass}

**Proof** Fix  $\tau \in (-\infty, \Gamma_{\max})$ .

By assumption,  $\Gamma_{-\infty}$  has positive mass. By [Corollary 2.3.1](#), we have

$$\int_X \theta_{\Gamma_{-\infty}}^n = \lim_{\tau \rightarrow -\infty} \int_X \theta_{\Gamma_\tau}^n.$$

In particular, for a sufficiently small  $\tau_0 < \tau$ , we have

$$\int_X \theta_{\Gamma_{\tau_0}}^n > 0.$$

Now take  $\tau' \in (\tau, \Gamma_{\max})$  and  $t \in (0, 1)$  so that

$$\tau = (1 - t)\tau' + t\tau_0.$$

From the concavity of  $\Gamma$ , we find that

$$\Gamma_\tau \geq (1 - t)\Gamma_{\tau'} + t\Gamma_{\tau_0}.$$

By [Theorem 2.3.2](#),

$$\int_X \theta_{\Gamma_\tau}^n \geq \int_X \theta_{(1-t)\Gamma_{\tau'} + t\Gamma_{\tau_0}}^n \geq t^n \int_X \theta_{\Gamma_{\tau_0}}^n > 0$$

and (10.2) follows.  $\square$

prop:testcurvmasslogconc

**Proposition 10.1.1.1** *Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Then the map*

$$[-\infty, \Gamma_{\max}) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, \quad \tau \mapsto \log \int_X \theta_{\Gamma_\tau}^n$$

*is concave and continuous.*

**Proof** The concavity of this function follows from [Theorem 2.3.3](#) and [Theorem 2.3.2](#). The continuity at  $-\infty$  is a consequence of [Corollary 2.3.1](#).  $\square$

**Definition 10.1.2** Let  $\phi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  be a model potential.

A test curve  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$  is said to be *bounded* if for  $\tau$  small enough,  $\Gamma_\tau = \phi$ . The subset of bounded test curves is denoted by  $\text{TC}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$ . In this case, we write

$$\Gamma_{\min} := \{\tau \in \mathbb{R} : \Gamma_\tau = \phi\}.$$

A test curve  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$  is said to have *finite energy* if

$$\mathbf{E}^\phi(\Gamma) := \Gamma_{\max} \int_X \theta_\phi^n + \int_{-\infty}^{\Gamma_{\max}} \left( \int_X \theta_{\Gamma_\tau}^n - \int_X \theta_\phi^n \right) d\tau > -\infty. \quad (10.3)$$

{eq:tcfiniteenergy}

The subset of test curves with finite energy is denoted by  $\text{TC}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ .

We first observe that the notion of test curves does not really depend on the choice of  $\theta$  within its cohomology class.

prop:testcurveindeptheta

**Proposition 10.1.2** *Let  $\theta'$  be another smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing the same cohomology class as  $\theta$ . Let  $\phi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  be a model potential. Let  $\phi' \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta')_{>0}$  be the unique model potential satisfying  $\phi \sim \phi'$ .*

*Then there is a canonical bijection*

$$\text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{TC}(X, \theta'; \phi').$$

*This bijection induces the following bijections:*

$$\text{TC}^1(X, \theta; \phi) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{TC}^1(X, \theta'; \phi'), \quad \text{TC}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{TC}^\infty(X, \theta'; \phi').$$

*These bijections satisfy the obvious cocycle conditions.*

**Proof** Choose  $g \in C^\infty(X)$  such that  $\theta' = \theta + \text{dd}^c g$ . Given any  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$ , we observe that  $\Gamma': (-\infty, \Gamma_{\max}) \rightarrow \text{PSH}(X, \theta')$  defined as

$$\tau \mapsto P_{\theta'}[\Gamma_\tau - g]$$

lies in  $\text{TC}(X, \theta'; \phi')$ . Moreover, the choice of  $g$  is irrelevant since for any other choice of  $g$ , say  $g'$ , we have

$$\Gamma_\tau - g \sim \Gamma_\tau - g'.$$

All assertions follow directly from the definition.  $\square$

prop:ETCbimero

**Proposition 10.1.3** *Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism from a compact Kähler manifold. Then the pointwise pull-back induces a bijection*

$$\pi^*: \text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{TC}(Y, \pi^* \theta; \pi^* \phi).$$

**Proof** This follows immediately from [Proposition 3.1.3](#).  $\square$

prop:Gammaclosed

**Proposition 10.1.4** *Let  $\Gamma$  be a test curve in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . For each  $x \in X$ , the map  $\mathbb{R} \ni \tau \mapsto \Gamma_\tau(x)$  is a closed concave function. Moreover, the map is proper as long as  $\Gamma_{\Gamma_{\max}}(x) \neq -\infty$ .*

The notion of closedness is recalled in [Definition A.1.6](#).

**Proof** We argue the closedness. Fix  $x \in X$ . Assume that  $\Gamma_\tau(x) \neq -\infty$  for some  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$ . We only need to argue the upper-semicontinuity of  $\tau \mapsto \Gamma_\tau(x)$ . The upper semi-continuity is clear at  $\tau \geq \Gamma_{\max}$ , so we are reduced to prove the following:

$$\Gamma_\tau = \inf_{\tau' < \tau} \Gamma_{\tau'} \quad (10.4)$$

{eq:Gammatautemp1}

for any  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ . Take  $\tau'' \in (\tau, \Gamma_{\max})$ . Outside the polar locus of  $\Gamma_{\tau''}$ , we know that (10.4) holds by continuity. So (10.4) holds everywhere by Proposition 1.2.5.

The final assertion is trivial.  $\square$

def:Ptestcurve

**Definition 10.1.3** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\omega$  be a smooth closed real positive  $(1, 1)$ -form. Then we define  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma] \in \text{TC}(X, \theta + \omega)_{>0}$  as follows:

(1) Define

$$P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma]_{\max} = \Gamma_{\max};$$

(2) For each  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ , define

$$P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma]_\tau = P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma_\tau].$$

It follows from Proposition 3.1.4 that  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma] \in \text{TC}(X, \theta + \omega)_{>0}$ .

## 10.2 Ross–Witt Nyström correspondence

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $\theta$  be a smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing a big cohomology class. Fix a model potential  $\phi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ .

Proposition 10.1.4 allows us to talk about the Legendre transforms in the expected way.

The general definition of the Legendre transform Definition A.2.1 can be translated as follows:

def:Legtrans

**Definition 10.2.1** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$ . We define its *Legendre transform* as  $\Gamma^*: [0, \infty) \rightarrow \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  given by

$$\Gamma_t^* = \sup_{\tau \in \mathbb{R}} (t\tau + \Gamma_\tau). \quad (10.5)$$

{eq:testcurveLegtran}

rmk:negativeray

**Remark 10.2.1** Here we do not talk about the case  $t < 0$  because its behaviour there pretty trivial: take  $x \in X$ , if  $\Gamma_\tau(x) = -\infty$  for all  $\tau$ , then  $\Gamma_t^* = -\infty$ ; otherwise,  $\Gamma_t^* = \infty$ .

As we will see later on, the information about  $t \geq 0$  suffices to characterize  $\Gamma$ .

We have made a non-trivial claim that  $\Gamma_t^* \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  for all  $t \geq 0$ . Let us prove this.

lma:testcurvelegusc

**Lemma 10.2.1** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$ . Then  $\Gamma_t^* \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  for all  $t \geq 0$ . In fact,  $\Gamma$  is upper semicontinuous as a function of  $X \times (0, \infty)$ .



**Proof** We first observe that for each  $x \in X$ , we have

$$\Gamma_t^*(x) \leq t\Gamma_{\max} < \infty.$$

Let  $R = \{a + ib \in \mathbb{C} : a > 0\}$ . We consider

$$F: X \times R \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty), \quad (x, a + ib) \mapsto \Gamma_a^*(x).$$

Let  $\pi: X \times R \rightarrow X$  be the natural projection. Observe that the upper semicontinuous envelope  $G$  of  $F$  is  $\pi^*\theta$ -psh by [Proposition 1.2.1](#). It suffices to show that  $F = G$ . We let

$$E := \{(x, z) \in X \times R : F(x, z) < G(x, z)\}.$$

We want to argue that  $E = \emptyset$ . Clearly,  $E$  can be written as  $B \times i\mathbb{R}$  for some set  $B \subseteq X \times (0, \infty)$ . Since  $E$  is a pluripolar set by [Proposition 1.2.3](#), it has zero Lebesgue measure. Hence,  $B$  has zero Lebesgue measure. For each  $x \in X$ , write

$$B_x = \{t \in (0, \infty) : (t, x) \in B\}.$$

By Fubini theorem,  $B_x$  has zero 1-dimensional Lebesgue measure for all  $x \in X \setminus Z$ , where  $Z \subseteq X$  is a subset of measure 0. We may assume that  $Z \supseteq \{\Gamma_{-\infty} = 0\}$  so that for  $x \in X \setminus Z$ ,  $\Gamma_t(x) \neq -\infty$  for all  $t > 0$ .

For any  $x \in X \setminus Z$ , both  $t \mapsto F(x, t)$  and  $G(x, t)$  are convex functions with values in  $\mathbb{R}$  on  $(0, \infty)$ . They agree almost everywhere, hence everywhere by their continuity. It follows that for  $x \in X \setminus Z$ , we have  $B_x = \emptyset$ .

By [Theorem A.2.1](#), for any  $x \in X$ , we have

$$\Gamma_\tau(x) = \inf_{t>0} (F(t, x) - t\tau), \quad \tau < \Gamma_{\max}.$$

On the other hand, let

$$\chi_\tau(x) = \inf_{t>0} (G(t, x) - t\tau), \quad \tau < \Gamma_{\max}, x \in X.$$

By Kiselman's principle [Proposition 1.2.6](#),  $\chi_\tau \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . But on  $X \setminus Z$ , we already know that  $\Gamma_\tau = \chi_\tau$  for all  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ . By [Proposition 1.2.5](#), they are equal everywhere. By [Theorem A.2.1](#) again, we find that  $F = G$ .  $\square$

lma:suplegenlinear

**Lemma 10.2.2** *Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$ , then*

$$\sup_X \Gamma_t^* = t\Gamma_{\max}$$

for all  $t \geq 0$ .

*In particular,  $t \mapsto \Gamma_t^* - t\Gamma_{\max}$  is a decreasing function in  $t \geq 0$ .*

**Proof** Choose  $x \in X$  such that  $\Gamma_{\max}(x) = 0$ . Then

$$\Gamma_t^*(x) = t\Gamma_{\max}$$

by definition. On the other hand, since  $\Gamma_\tau \leq 0$  for all  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ , we have

$$\sup_X \Gamma_t^* \leq t\Gamma_{\max}.$$

lma:LegendsTCtoR

**Lemma 10.2.3** *Given  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$ , we have  $\Gamma^* \in \mathcal{R}(X, \theta; \phi)$ .*

**Proof** It follows from [Lemma 10.2.1](#), (10.5) and [Proposition 1.2.1](#) that  $\Gamma^*$  is a subgeodesic (in the sense that for each  $0 \leq a \leq b$ , the restriction  $(\Gamma_t^*)_{t \in (a,b)}$  is a subgeodesic from  $\Gamma_a^*$  to  $\Gamma_b^*$ ).

First observe that as  $t \rightarrow 0+$ , we have

$$\Gamma_t^* \xrightarrow{L^1} \phi. \quad (10.6)$$

{eq:GammatophiL1temp}

To see this, first observe that by (10.5), for any fixed  $t > 0$  and any  $x \in X$  with  $\phi(x) \neq -\infty$ , we have

$$\Gamma_t^*(x) \leq t\Gamma_{\max} + \phi(x).$$

By [Proposition 1.2.5](#), the same holds everywhere. Therefore, any  $L^1$ -cluster point  $\psi$  of  $\Gamma_t^*$  as  $t \rightarrow 0$  satisfies  $\psi \leq \phi$ . On the other hand, for any fixed  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ , by (10.5), we have

$$\Gamma_t^* \geq \Gamma_\tau + t\tau$$

for any  $t > 0$ . So  $\psi \geq \Gamma_\tau$  almost everywhere and hence everywhere by [Proposition 1.2.5](#). It follows that  $\psi \geq \phi$ . Therefore,  $\psi = \phi$ . On the other hand, from the above estimates and [Proposition 1.5.1](#) that  $(\Gamma_t^*)_{t \in (0,1)}$  is a relative compact subset in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  with respect to the  $L^1$ -topology. We therefore conclude (10.6).

Assume that  $\Gamma^*$  is not a geodesic ray. Then we can find  $0 \leq a < b$  such that  $(\Gamma_t^*)_{t \in (a,b)}$  differs from the geodesic  $(\eta_t)_{t \in (a,b)}$  from  $\Gamma_a^*$  to  $\Gamma_b^*$ . We consider the subgeodesic  $(\ell_t)_{t > 0}$  given by  $\ell_t = \eta_t$  for  $t \in (a, b)$  and  $\ell_t = \Gamma_t^*$  otherwise. Consider the Legendre transform

$$\Gamma'_\tau = \inf_{t > 0} (\ell_t - t\tau), \quad \tau \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Then  $\Gamma'_\tau \geq \Gamma_\tau$  and  $\Gamma'_\tau \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) \cup \{-\infty\}$  by [Proposition 1.2.6](#) for all  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$ .

We claim that

$$\Gamma'_\tau \leq \Gamma_\tau + (b - a)(\Gamma_{\max} - \tau), \quad \tau \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Observe that  $\Gamma'_\tau \equiv -\infty$  when  $\tau > \Gamma_{\max}$  by [Lemma 10.2.2](#). So it suffices to consider  $\tau \leq \Gamma_{\max}$ . In this case, we compute

$$\inf_{t \in [a,b]} (\ell_t - t\tau) \leq \Gamma_b^* - b\tau \leq (b - a)(\Gamma_{\max} - \tau) \inf_{t \in [a,b]} (\Gamma_t^* - t\tau),$$

where we applied [Lemma 10.2.2](#). In particular, for any  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ , we have

$$\Gamma'_\tau \leq \Gamma_\tau.$$

On the other hand, by definition of  $\Gamma'_\tau$ , we clearly have  $\Gamma'_\tau \leq 0$  for all  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ . It follows from the fact that  $\Gamma_\tau$  is a model potential that  $\Gamma_\tau = \Gamma'_\tau$  for all  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ . Therefore, by [Theorem A.2.1](#), we have  $\Gamma_t^* = \ell'_t$  for all  $t > 0$ , which is a contradiction.  $\square$

thm:Legenbij

**Theorem 10.2.1** *The Legendre transform in [Definition 10.2.1](#) is a bijection*

$$\mathrm{TC}(X, \theta; \phi) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{R}(X, \theta; \phi).$$

Moreover, this bijection restricts to the following bijections:

$$\mathrm{TC}^1(X, \theta; \phi) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta; \phi), \quad \mathrm{TC}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{R}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi).$$

For any  $\Gamma \in \mathrm{TC}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ , we have

$$\mathbf{E}^\phi(\Gamma) = \mathbf{E}^\phi(\Gamma^*). \quad (10.7)$$

{eq:RWNenergy}

**Proof** It follows from [Lemma 10.2.3](#) that the forward map is well-defined.

The inverse map is of course also given by the Legendre transform: given  $\ell \in \mathcal{R}(X, \theta; \phi)$ , its Legendre transform is given by

$$\ell_\tau^* := \inf_{t>0} (\ell_t - t\tau), \quad \tau \in \mathbb{R}. \quad (10.8)$$

{eq:invLeg}

By [Proposition 4.3.4](#), there is a constant  $C > 0$  such that  $\ell_t \leq Ct$ .

Note that it follows from [Proposition 1.2.6](#) that  $\ell_\tau^* \in \mathrm{PSH}(X, \theta) \cup \{-\infty\}$  for all  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$ .

We need to argue for any  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $\ell_\tau^* \neq -\infty$ , we have  $P_\theta[\ell_\tau^*] = \ell_\tau^*$ . Fix such  $\tau$  and some  $C > 0$ . It suffices to show that

$$(\ell_\tau^* + C) \wedge \phi \leq \ell_\tau^*. \quad (10.9)$$

{eq:ellstarleqetemp1}

For this purpose, let us consider the following geodesics: for any  $M > 0$  and  $t \in [0, 1]$ , let

$$\ell_t^{1,M} = \ell_{tM} - tM\tau, \quad \ell_t^{2,M} = (\ell_\tau^* + C) \wedge \phi - Ct.$$

It is clear that at  $t = 0, 1$ , we have  $\ell_t^{2,M} \leq \ell_t^{1,M}$ . Hence, the same holds for all  $t \in [0, 1]$ . In particular, for any fixed  $s \in [0, 1]$ , we have

$$(\ell_\tau^* + C) \wedge \phi - Cs \leq \ell_{sM} - sM.$$

Take infimum with respect to  $M \geq 1$  and then the supremum with respect to  $s$ , we conclude [\(10.9\)](#).

The two operations are inverse to each other thanks to [Theorem A.2.1](#).

Next we consider the bounded situation. Suppose that  $\Gamma \in \mathrm{TC}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$ . Take  $\tau_0 \in \mathbb{R}$  so that  $\Gamma_\tau = \phi$  for all  $\tau \leq \tau_0$ . It follows from that

$$\Gamma_t^* \geq \phi + t\tau_0$$

for all  $t > 0$ . Therefore,  $\Gamma_t^* \sim \phi$  for all  $t > 0$  and hence  $\Gamma^* \in \mathcal{R}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$ .

Conversely, suppose that  $\ell \in \mathcal{R}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$ . Thanks to [Proposition 4.3.3](#), there is a constant  $C > 0$  such that

$$\ell_t \geq \phi - Ct.$$

Therefore, according to (10.8), we have

$$\ell_\tau^* \geq \inf_{t>0} \phi - (C + \tau)t = \phi$$

if  $\tau \leq -C$ . Therefore,  $\ell_\tau^* = \phi$  for all  $\tau \leq -C$ .

Finally, it remains to handle (10.7). Take  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$ . We may assume that  $\Gamma_{\max} = 0$  after a translation.

For  $N \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ ,  $M \in \mathbb{Z}$ , we introduce the following:

$$\Gamma_t^{*,N,M} := \max_{\substack{k \in \mathbb{Z} \\ k \leq M}} \left( \Gamma_{k/2^N} + tk/2^N \right) \in \mathcal{E}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi), \quad t > 0.$$

Moreover, we now argue that

$$\frac{t}{2^N} \int_X \theta_{\Gamma_{(M+1)/2^N}}^n \leq E_\theta^\phi(\Gamma_t^{*,N,M+1}) - E_\theta^\phi(\Gamma_t^{*,N,M}) \leq \frac{t}{2^N} \int_X \theta_{\Gamma_{M/2^N}}^n. \quad (10.10)$$

{eq: diff\_eq\_I}

Indeed, for elementary reasons:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_X \left( \Gamma_t^{*,N,M+1} - \Gamma_t^{*,N,M} \right) \theta_{\Gamma_t^{*,N,M+1}}^n &\leq E_\theta^\phi(\Gamma_t^{*,N,M+1}) - E_\theta^\phi(\Gamma_t^{*,N,M}) \\ &\leq \int_X \left( \Gamma_t^{*,N,M+1} - \Gamma_t^{*,N,M} \right) \theta_{\Gamma_t^{*,N,M}}^n. \end{aligned} \quad (10.11)$$

{eq: first\_I\_ineq}

Clearly  $\Gamma_t^{*,N,M+1} \geq \Gamma_t^{*,N,M}$ , and using  $\tau$ -concavity, we notice that

$$U_t := \left\{ \Gamma_t^{*,N,M+1} - \Gamma_t^{*,N,M} > 0 \right\} = \left\{ \Gamma_{(M+1)/2^N} + 2^{-N}t - \Gamma_{M/2^N} > 0 \right\}.$$

Moreover, on  $U_t$  we have

$$\Gamma_t^{*,N,M+1} = \Gamma_{(M+1)/2^N} + t(M+1)/2^N, \quad \Gamma_t^{*,N,M} = \Gamma_{M/2^N} + tM/2^N.$$

We also note that  $U_t$  is an open set in the plurifine topology, implying that

$$\begin{aligned} \theta_{\Gamma_{(M+1)/2^N}}^n|_{U_t} &= \theta_{\Gamma_t^{*,N,M+1}}^n|_{U_t}, \\ \theta_{\Gamma_{M/2^N}}^n|_{U_t} &= \theta_{\Gamma_t^{*,N,M}}^n|_{U_t}. \end{aligned}$$

Recall that  $\theta_{\Gamma_{M/2^N}}^n$  and  $\theta_{\Gamma_{(M+1)/2^N}}^n$  are supported on the sets  $\{\Gamma_{M/2^N} = 0\}$  and  $\{\Gamma_{(M+1)/2^N} = 0\}$  respectively, see [Theorem 3.1.2](#). Since  $\{\Gamma_{(M+1)/2^N} = 0\} \subseteq U_t$  and  $\{\Gamma_{(M+1)/2^N} = 0\} \subseteq \{\Gamma_{M/2^N} = 0\}$ , applying the above to (10.11), we arrive at (10.10).

Fixing  $N$ , let  $M = \lfloor 2^N \Gamma_{\min} \rfloor$ . Then repeated application of (10.10) yields

$$\sum_{M+1 \leq j \leq 0} \frac{t}{2^N} \int_X \theta_{\Gamma_{j/2^N}}^n \leq E_\theta^\phi(\Gamma_t^{*,N,0}) - E_\theta^\phi(E_t^{*,N,M}) \leq \sum_{M \leq j \leq -1} \frac{t}{2^N} \int_X \theta_{\Gamma_{j/2^N}}^n.$$

Since  $M \leq 2^N \Gamma_{\min}$ , we have that

$$\Gamma_t^{*,N,M} = \Gamma_{M/2^N} + tM/2^N = \phi + tM/2^N,$$

we can continue to write

$$\sum_{j=M+1}^0 \frac{t}{2^N} \left( \int_X \theta_{\Gamma_{j/2^N}}^n - \int_X \theta_\phi^n \right) \leq E_\phi^\theta(\Gamma_t^{*,N,0}) \leq \sum_{j=M}^{-1} \frac{t}{2^N} \left( \int_X \theta_{\Gamma_{j/2^N}}^n - \int_X \theta_\phi^n \right).$$

We now notice that we have Riemann sums on both the left and right of the above inequality. Using Proposition 10.1.1, it is possible to let  $N \rightarrow \infty$  and obtain

$$E_\phi^\theta(\Gamma_t^*) = t\mathbf{E}^\phi(\Gamma)$$

So (10.7) follows as desired. Note that we have furthermore shown that  $t \mapsto E_\phi^\theta(\Gamma_t^*)$  is linear.

Finally, let us come back to the general case. Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$ . Again, we may assume that  $\Gamma_{\max} = 0$ . For each  $\epsilon > 0$ , we introduce  $\Gamma^\epsilon \in \text{TC}^\infty(X, \theta; \phi)$  as follows:

- (1) we let  $\Gamma_{\max}^\epsilon = 0$ ;
- (2) for each  $\tau < 0$ , we set

$$\Gamma_\tau^\epsilon = P_\theta[(1 + \epsilon\tau) \vee 0) \Gamma_\tau + (1 - (1 + \epsilon\tau) \vee 0)) \phi].$$

It follows from Corollary 3.1.2 that for each  $\tau < 0$ , the sequence  $\Gamma_\tau^\epsilon$  is a decreasing sequence with limit  $\Gamma_\tau$  as  $\epsilon \searrow 0$ . Therefore by Proposition 3.1.8, we have

$$\lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0+} \int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c \Gamma_\tau^\epsilon)^n = \int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c \Gamma_\tau)^n$$

for all  $\tau < 0$ . Hence by the monotone convergence theorem, we find

$$\mathbf{E}^\phi(\Gamma) = \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0+} \mathbf{E}^\phi(\Gamma^\epsilon) = \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0+} \mathbf{E}^\phi(\Gamma^{\epsilon,*}). \quad (10.12)$$

{eq:EphiGammatempl}

Furthermore, according to Proposition A.2.2, we have

$$\Gamma_t^* = \inf_{\epsilon > 0} \Gamma_t^{\epsilon,*}$$

for all  $t > 0$ .

Now suppose that  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ . Then it follows from Theorem 4.3.1 that for each  $t > 0$ ,

$$E_\theta^\phi(\Gamma_t^*) = \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0+} E_\theta^\phi(\Gamma_t^{\epsilon,*}) = t\mathbf{E}^\phi(\Gamma).$$

Hence,  $\Gamma^* \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ .

Conversely, suppose that  $\Gamma^* \in \mathcal{E}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ . Then (10.12) implies that  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ .  $\square$

As an immediate consequence of the proof, we have

**Corollary 10.2.1** *Let  $\ell \in \mathcal{R}^1(X, \theta; \phi)$ , then  $[0, \infty) \ni t \mapsto E_\theta^\phi(\ell_t)$  is linear.*

**Corollary 10.2.2** *Let  $\ell \in \mathcal{R}(X, \theta; \phi)$ . Then  $\sup_X \ell_t = \ell_{\max}^* t$ .*

*Proof* This follows from Lemma 10.2.2 and Theorem 10.2.1.  $\square$

### 10.3 $\mathcal{I}$ -model test curves

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $\theta$  be a smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing a big cohomology class. Fix a model potential  $\phi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ .

**Definition 10.3.1** A test curve  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -model if for any  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ , the potential  $\Gamma_\tau$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -model.

The subset of  $\mathcal{I}$ -model test curves in  $\text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$  is denoted by  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta; \phi)$ .

The set of  $\mathcal{I}$ -model test curves in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  for any model potential  $\phi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  is denoted by  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ .

**Proposition 10.3.1** *Let  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Then  $\Gamma_{-\infty}$  is an  $\mathcal{I}$ -model potential.*

*Proof* This follows from Proposition 3.2.12.  $\square$

**Proposition 10.3.2** *Let  $\theta'$  be another smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing the same cohomology class as  $\theta$ . Then there is a canonical bijection*

$$\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0} \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta')_{>0}.$$

*This bijection satisfies the obvious cocycle condition.*

*Proof* This is an immediate consequence of Proposition 10.1.2 and Example 7.1.2.  $\square$

**Proposition 10.3.3** *Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism from a compact Kähler manifold. Then the pointwise pull-back induces a bijection*

$$\pi^*: \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta; \phi) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(Y, \pi^*\theta; \pi^*\phi).$$

*Proof* This is an immediate consequence of Proposition 10.1.3 and Proposition 3.2.5.  $\square$

**Definition 10.3.2** Given  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$ , we define  $P_\theta[\Gamma]_{\mathcal{I}}$  as the map  $(-\infty, \Gamma_{\max}) \rightarrow \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  given by

$$\tau \mapsto P_\theta[\Gamma]_{\mathcal{I}}.$$

prop:transitionPI

**Proposition 10.3.4** *Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta; \phi)$ , then*

$$P_\theta[\Gamma]_I \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta; P_\theta[\phi]_I).$$

*More generally, for any closed real smooth positive  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\omega$  on  $X$ , we have*

$$P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma]_I \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta + \omega; P_{\theta+\omega}[\phi]_I).$$

**Proof** The only non-trivial point is to show that

$$\sup_{\tau < \Gamma_{\max}}^* P_\theta[\Gamma_\tau]_I = P_\theta[\phi]_I, \quad \sup_{\tau < \Gamma_{\max}}^* P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma_\tau]_I = P_{\theta+\omega}[\phi]_I.$$

This follows from [Proposition 3.2.12](#).  $\square$

## 10.4 Operations on test curves

sec:operationontc

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $\theta, \theta', \theta''$  be smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -forms on  $X$  representing big cohomology classes.

def:potestcurve

**Definition 10.4.1** Given  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , we say  $\Gamma \leq \Gamma'$  if for all  $\Gamma_{\max} \leq \Gamma'_{\max}$  and for all  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ , we have

$$\Gamma_\tau \leq \Gamma'_\tau. \quad (10.13)$$

{eq:GammatauGammap}

Observe that (10.13) actually holds for all  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$ . It is easy to verify that for all  $\leq$  defines a partial order on  $\text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ .

lma:testcurord1

**Lemma 10.4.1** *Let  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\omega$  be a closed real smooth positive  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . Then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $\Gamma \leq \Gamma'$ ;
- (2)  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma] = P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma']$ .

**Proof** It suffices to observe that we could rewrite (10.13) as

$$\Gamma_\tau \leq_P \Gamma'_\tau,$$

since both potentials are model.  $\square$

def:sumtestcur

**Definition 10.4.2** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta')_{>0}$ , then we define  $\Gamma + \Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta + \theta')_{>0}$  as follows:

- (1) we set

$$(\Gamma + \Gamma')_{\max} := \Gamma_{\max} + \Gamma'_{\max};$$

- (2) for any  $\tau < (\Gamma + \Gamma')_{\max}$ , we define

$$(\Gamma + \Gamma')_\tau := P_\theta \left[ \sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} (\Gamma_t + \Gamma'_{\tau-t}) \right]. \quad (10.14)$$

{eq:GammaGammagsum}

lma:testcurvplus

**Lemma 10.4.2** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta')_{>0}$ , then for any  $\tau < (\Gamma + \Gamma')_{\max}$ , we have

$$\sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} (\Gamma_t + \Gamma'_{\tau-t}) \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta).$$

This potential is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good if  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta')_{>0}$ .

In particular, (10.14) in [Definition 10.4.2](#) makes sense.

**Proof** Let

$$\eta_\tau = \sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} (\Gamma_t + \Gamma'_{\tau-t}) = \sup_{t < \Gamma_{\max}, \tau-t < \Gamma'_{\max}} (\Gamma_t + \Gamma'_{\tau-t})$$

for all  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$ . Set

$$Z = \{x \in X : \Gamma_{-\infty}(x) = -\infty \text{ or } \Gamma'_{-\infty}(x) = -\infty\}.$$

It follows from [Proposition A.2.3](#) that for any  $x \in X \setminus Z$ , we have

$$\eta_t^*(x) = \Gamma_t^*(x) + \Gamma_t'^*(x)$$

for all  $t > 0$ . The same trivially holds when  $x \in Z$ , so the equation holds everywhere. In particular, by [Theorem A.2.1](#) and [Proposition 1.2.6](#), we have

$$\eta_\tau = (\Gamma^* + \Gamma'^*)_\tau^* \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta + \theta') \cup \{-\infty\}.$$

Next, assume that  $\Gamma$  and  $\Gamma'$  are  $\mathcal{I}$ -model. We need to argue that so is  $\Gamma + \Gamma'$ . Fix  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max} + \Gamma'_{\max}$ . Then for each  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $t < \Gamma_{\max}$  and  $\tau - t < \Gamma'_{\max}$ , we know that  $\Gamma_t \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\Gamma'_{\tau-t} \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta')_{>0}$  by [Lemma 10.1.1](#). It follows from [Example 7.1.2](#) that  $\Gamma_t$  and  $\Gamma'_{\tau-t}$  are both  $\mathcal{I}$ -good, hence so is  $\Gamma_t + \Gamma'_{\tau-t} \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta + \theta')_{>0}$  by [Proposition 7.2.1](#). Therefore,  $\eta_\tau$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good by [Proposition 7.2.2](#). Therefore,  $\Gamma + \Gamma'$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -model.  $\square$

prop:testcurvesumproperty

**Proposition 10.4.1** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta')_{>0}$ , then  $\Gamma + \Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta + \theta')_{>0}$ . Moreover,

$$(\Gamma + \Gamma')_{-\infty} = P_{\theta+\theta'}[\Gamma_{-\infty} + \Gamma'_{-\infty}]. \quad (10.15)$$

{eq:sumGammaGammap}

When  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta')_{>0}$ , we have  $\Gamma + \Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta + \theta')_{>0}$ .

The operation  $+$  is commutative and associative.

**Proof** It follows immediately from [Lemma 10.4.2](#) that  $\Gamma + \Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta + \theta')_{>0}$  and it lies in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta + \theta')_{>0}$  if  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta')_{>0}$ .

We argue (10.15). By definition, for any small enough  $\tau$ , we have

$$(\Gamma + \Gamma')_{-\infty} \geq (\Gamma + \Gamma')_{2\tau} \geq_P \Gamma_\tau + \Gamma'_\tau.$$

Letting  $\tau \rightarrow -\infty$  and applying [Proposition 6.2.4](#) and [Theorem 6.2.2](#), we find that

$$(\Gamma + \Gamma')_{-\infty} \geq_P \Gamma_{-\infty} + \Gamma'_{-\infty}.$$



On the other hand, for each small enough  $\tau$ , we have

$$(\Gamma + \Gamma')_\tau \sim_P \sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} (\Gamma_t + \Gamma'_{\tau-t}) \leq_P \Gamma_{-\infty} + \Gamma'_{-\infty}$$

by [Proposition 6.1.5](#) and [Proposition 6.2.4](#). We apply [Proposition 6.2.4](#) again, we conclude that

$$(\Gamma + \Gamma')_{-\infty} \leq_P \Gamma_{-\infty} + \Gamma'_{-\infty}.$$

So [\(10.15\)](#) follows.

Finally, let us show that  $+$  is commutative and associative. Commutativity is obvious. Let  $\Gamma'' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta'')_{>0}$ . Then we want to show that

$$(\Gamma + \Gamma') + \Gamma'' = \Gamma + (\Gamma' + \Gamma'').$$

First observe that

$$((\Gamma + \Gamma') + \Gamma'')_{\max} = (\Gamma + (\Gamma' + \Gamma''))_{\max}.$$

Fix  $\tau$  less than this common value. We observe that

$$\begin{aligned} & ((\Gamma + \Gamma') + \Gamma'')_\tau \\ &= P_\theta \left[ \sup_{t_1 \in \mathbb{R}} ((\Gamma + \Gamma')_{t_1} + \Gamma''_{\tau-t_1}) \right] \\ &\sim_P \sup_{t_1 \in \mathbb{R}} ((\Gamma + \Gamma')_{t_1} + \Gamma''_{\tau-t_1}) \\ &\sim_P \sup_{t_1, t_2 \in \mathbb{R}} (\Gamma_{t_2} + \Gamma'_{t_1-t_2} + \Gamma''_{\tau-t_1}), \end{aligned}$$

where in the last line, we applied [Proposition 6.2.4](#) and [Proposition 6.1.5](#). Similarly, for  $(\Gamma + (\Gamma' + \Gamma''))_\tau$ , we get the same expression. The associativity follows.  $\square$

lma:testcursumcomp

**Lemma 10.4.3** *Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta')_{>0}$ , then for any closed smooth positive  $(1, 1)$ -forms  $\omega$  and  $\omega'$  on  $X$ , we have*

$$P_{\theta+\omega+\theta'+\omega'}[\Gamma + \Gamma'] = P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma] + P_{\theta'+\omega'}[\Gamma].$$

**Proof** Observe that

$$P_{\theta+\omega+\theta'+\omega'}[\Gamma + \Gamma']_{\max} = (P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma] + P_{\theta'+\omega'}[\Gamma])_{\max} = \Gamma_{\max} + \Gamma'_{\max}.$$

Take  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$  less than this common value, we need to verify that

$$(\Gamma + \Gamma')_\tau \sim_P (P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma] + P_{\theta'+\omega'}[\Gamma])_\tau.$$

By definition, this means that

$$\sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} (\Gamma_t + \Gamma'_{\tau-t}) \sim_P \sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} (P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma_t] + P_{\theta'+\omega'}[\Gamma'_{\tau-t}]).$$

This is a consequence of [Proposition 6.1.5](#) and [Proposition 6.1.6](#).  $\square$

`def:testcurvplusC`

**Definition 10.4.3** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $C \in \mathbb{R}$ , we define  $\Gamma + C \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  as follows:

(1) we set

$$(\Gamma + C)_{\max} := \Gamma_{\max} + C;$$

(2) for any  $\tau < (\Gamma + C)_{\max}$ , we set

$$\Gamma_{\tau} := \Gamma_{\tau-C}.$$

It is obvious that if  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , then so is  $\Gamma + C$ .

`prop:testcurveplusC`

**Proposition 10.4.2** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ ,  $\Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta')_{>0}$  and  $C, C' \in \mathbb{R}$ , then

(1)  $(\Gamma + \Gamma') + C = \Gamma + (\Gamma' + C) = (\Gamma + C) + \Gamma'$ ;

(2)  $\Gamma + (C + C') = (\Gamma + C) + C'$ .

**Proof** 1. We first observe that

$$((\Gamma + \Gamma') + C)_{\max} = (\Gamma + (\Gamma' + C))_{\max} = ((\Gamma + C) + \Gamma')_{\max} = \Gamma_{\max} + \Gamma'_{\max} + C.$$

Take any  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$  less than this common value. We compute

$$\begin{aligned} ((\Gamma + \Gamma') + C)_{\tau} &= (\Gamma + \Gamma')_{\tau-C} = P_{\theta+\theta'} \left[ \sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} (\Gamma_t + \Gamma'_{\tau-C-t}) \right], \\ (\Gamma + (\Gamma' + C))_{\tau} &= P_{\theta+\theta'} \left[ \sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} (\Gamma_t + (\Gamma' + C)_{\tau-t}) \right] = P_{\theta+\theta'} \left[ \sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} (\Gamma_t + \Gamma'_{\tau-C-t}) \right], \\ ((\Gamma + C) + \Gamma')_{\tau} &= P_{\theta+\theta'} \left[ \sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} ((\Gamma + C)_{\tau+t} + \Gamma'_{\tau-C-t}) \right] = P_{\theta+\theta'} \left[ \sup_{t \in \mathbb{R}} (\Gamma_t + \Gamma'_{\tau-C-t}) \right]. \end{aligned}$$

2. Observe that

$$(\Gamma + (C + C'))_{\max} = ((\Gamma + C) + C')_{\max} = \Gamma_{\max} + C + C'.$$

For any  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$  less than this value, we have

$$(\Gamma + (C + C'))_{\tau} = \Gamma_{\tau-C-C'} = ((\Gamma + C) + C')_{\tau}.$$

`def:testcurlor`

**Definition 10.4.4** Let  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . We define  $\Gamma \vee \Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  as follows:

(1) We set

$$(\Gamma \vee \Gamma')_{\max} := \Gamma_{\max} \vee \Gamma'_{\max};$$

(2) for any  $\tau < (\Gamma \vee \Gamma')_{\max}$ , we define

$$(\Gamma \vee \Gamma')_{\tau} := P_{\theta} \left[ \text{CE} \left( \rho \mapsto \Gamma_{\rho} \vee \Gamma'_{\rho} \right) \right]. \quad (10.16)$$

`{eq:testcurlordef}`

Recall that the upper convex hull CE is defined in [Definition A.1.4](#). Trivially, we have  $\Gamma \vee \Gamma' \geq \Gamma$  and  $\Gamma \vee \Gamma' \geq \Gamma'$ .

lma:testcurlor

**Lemma 10.4.4** *Let  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Then for any  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max} \vee \Gamma'_{\max}$ , we have*

$$\text{CE} \left( \rho \mapsto \Gamma_\rho \vee \Gamma'_\rho \right)_\tau \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta).$$

*This potential is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good if  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ .*

*In particular, (10.16) in [Definition 10.4.4](#) makes sense.*

**Proof** To simply the notations, we write

$$\psi_\tau = \text{CE} \left( \rho \mapsto \Gamma_\rho \vee \Gamma'_\rho \right)_\tau$$

for all  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$ . Thanks to [Proposition A.2.2](#), we have

$$\psi_t^*(x) = \Gamma_t^*(x) \vee \Gamma_t'^*(x) \quad (10.17)$$

{eq:psistartempl}

for all  $t > 0$  as long as  $\Gamma_\tau(x) \neq -\infty$  and  $\Gamma'_\tau(x) \neq -\infty$  for some  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$ . Otherwise, assume that  $x \in X$  is such that  $\Gamma_\tau = -\infty$  for all  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$ , then by definition,  $\psi_\tau(x) = \Gamma'_\tau(x)$  for all  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$ . Therefore,  $\Gamma_t^*(x) = -\infty$  for all  $t > 0$  and hence (10.17) continues to hold. Therefore, we have shown that

$$\psi_t^* = \Gamma_t^* \vee \Gamma_t'^* \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta).$$

It follows from [Proposition 4.1.2](#) that  $(\psi_t^*)_{t \in [a, b]}$  is a subgeodesic for any  $0 < a < b$ .

Next we observe that  $\psi_\bullet$  is closed by definition. So it follows from [Proposition A.2.2](#) and [Proposition 1.2.6](#) that

$$\psi_\tau = (\psi_\bullet^*)_\tau^* \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta) \cup \{-\infty\}.$$

Due to [Proposition 10.1.4](#) and [Proposition A.1.2](#), there is a pluripolar set  $Z \subseteq X$  such that for  $x \in X \setminus Z$ , we have

$$\psi_\tau(x) = \sup \left\{ \lambda \Gamma_\rho(x) + (1 - \lambda) \Gamma'_{\rho'}(x) : \lambda \in (0, 1), \rho, \rho' \in \mathbb{R}, \lambda \rho + (1 - \lambda) \rho' = \tau \right\}$$

for all  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max} \vee \Gamma'_{\max}$ . It follows from [Proposition 1.2.5](#) that

$$\psi_\tau = \sup^* \left\{ \lambda \Gamma_\rho + (1 - \lambda) \Gamma'_{\rho'} : \lambda \in (0, 1), \rho, \rho' \in \mathbb{R}, \lambda \rho + (1 - \lambda) \rho' = \tau \right\} \quad (10.18)$$

{eq:psitausupslinartemp}

for all  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max} \vee \Gamma'_{\max}$ .

It follows from (10.18) that  $\psi_\tau$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good if  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , thanks to [Proposition 7.2.1](#) and [Proposition 7.2.2](#).  $\square$

cor:testcurvlorprop

**Corollary 10.4.1** *Let  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Then  $\Gamma \vee \Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and*

$$(\Gamma \vee \Gamma')_{-\infty} = P_\theta \left[ \Gamma_{-\infty} \vee \Gamma'_{-\infty} \right]. \quad (10.19)$$

{eq:GammalorGammaminfty}

If  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , then  $\Gamma \vee \Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ .

For each  $\Gamma'' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and each  $\Gamma'' \geq \Gamma$  and  $\Gamma'' \geq \Gamma'$ , we have  $\Gamma'' \geq \Gamma \vee \Gamma'$ .

Moreover, the operation  $\vee$  is associative and commutative.

**Proof** It follows immediately from [Lemma 10.4.4](#) that  $\Gamma \vee \Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and it lies in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  if  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ .

The argument of [\(10.19\)](#) is very similar to that of [\(10.15\)](#), which we leave to the readers.

Take  $\Gamma''$  as in the statement of the proposition. First observe that

$$\Gamma''_{\max} \geq \Gamma_{\max} \vee \Gamma'_{\max} = (\Gamma \vee \Gamma')_{\max}.$$

Take  $\tau < (\Gamma \vee \Gamma')_{\max}$ , we argue that

$$\Gamma''_{\tau} \geq (\Gamma \vee \Gamma')_{\tau}.$$

By the concavity of  $\Gamma''$ , this is equivalent to

$$\Gamma''_{\tau} \geq \Gamma_{\tau} \vee \Gamma'_{\tau}.$$

Therefore,

$$\Gamma'' \geq \Gamma \vee \Gamma'.$$

The commutativity and associativity of  $\vee$  are trivial.  $\square$

**Lemma 10.4.5** Let  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\omega$  be a closed smooth positive  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . Then

$$P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma \vee \Gamma'] = P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma] \vee P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma'].$$

**Proof** We first observe that

$$(P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma \vee \Gamma'])_{\max} = (P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma] \vee P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma'])_{\max} = \Gamma_{\max} \vee \Gamma'_{\max}.$$

Let  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$  be less than this common value. We need to show that

$$(\Gamma \vee \Gamma')_{\tau} \sim_P (P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma] \vee P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma'])_{\tau}.$$

We need the formula [\(10.18\)](#) proved in the proof of [Lemma 10.4.4](#):

$$(\Gamma \vee \Gamma')_{\tau} = \sup^* \left\{ \lambda \Gamma_{\rho} + (1 - \lambda) \Gamma'_{\rho'} : \lambda \in (0, 1), \rho, \rho' \in \mathbb{R}, \lambda \rho + (1 - \lambda) \rho' = \tau \right\}.$$

A similar result holds with  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma]$  and  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma']$  in place of  $\Gamma$  and  $\Gamma'$ . So our assertion is a direct consequence of [Proposition 6.1.5](#) and [Proposition 6.1.6](#).  $\square$

**Definition 10.4.5** Let  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  be an increasing net in  $\text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Assume that

$$\sup_{i \in I} \Gamma^i_{\max} < \infty. \tag{10.20}$$

Then we define  $\sup^*_{i \in I} \Gamma^i \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  as follows:

def:testcursup

{eq:Gammmaisupfinite1}

(1) we set

$$\left( \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \right)_{\max} = \sup_{i \in I} \Gamma_{\max}^i;$$

(2) For any  $\tau < \sup_{i \in I} \Gamma_{\max}^i$ , we let

$$\left( \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \right)_{\tau} := \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma_{\tau}^i.$$

prop:supsincnetteestcur

**Proposition 10.4.3** *Let  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  be an increasing net in  $\text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  satisfying (10.20). Then  $\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i$  as defined in Definition 10.4.5 lies in  $\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Moreover, if  $\Gamma^i \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  for all  $i \in I$ , then  $\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i$  lies in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  as well.*

Moreover, we have

$$\left( \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \right)_{-\infty} = \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma_{-\infty}^i. \quad (10.21)$$

{eq:Gammiminf}

**Proof** The first assertion follows easily from Proposition 3.1.9, while the second follows from Proposition 3.2.12.

It remains to argue (10.21). Without loss of generality, we may assume that  $I$  contains a minimal element  $i_0$ .

By Proposition 1.2.3, there is a pluripolar set  $Z \subseteq X$  such that for any  $x \in X \setminus Z$ ,

$$\left( \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \right)_{-\infty}(x) = \sup_{\tau < \Gamma_{\max}^{i_0}} \left( \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma_{\tau}^i \right)(x) = \sup_{\tau < \Gamma_{\max}^{i_0}, i \in I} \Gamma_{\tau}^i(x) = \sup_{i \in I} \Gamma_{-\infty}^i(x).$$

So they are equal everywhere by Proposition 1.2.5.  $\square$

lma:suptestcurvcompatible

**Lemma 10.4.6** *Let  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  be an increasing net in  $\text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  satisfying (10.20). Assume that  $\omega$  is a closed smooth positive  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . Then*

$$P_{\theta+\omega} \left[ \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \right] = \sup_{i \in I}^* P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma^i].$$

**Proof** Observe that

$$\left( P_{\theta+\omega} \left[ \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \right] \right)_{\max} = \left( \sup_{i \in I}^* P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma^i] \right)_{\max} = \sup_{i \in I} \Gamma_{\max}^i.$$

Fix  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$  less than this common value.

It suffices to show that

$$\left( \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \right)_{\tau} = \left( \sup_{i \in I}^* P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma^i] \right)_{\tau}.$$

This is an immediate consequence of Proposition 6.1.6.  $\square$

def:testcurvsupsgeneral

**Definition 10.4.6** Let  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  be a non-empty family in  $\text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  satisfying (10.20). Then we define

$$\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i := \sup_{J \in \text{Fin}(I)}^* \left( \bigvee_{j \in J} \Gamma^j \right). \quad (10.22)$$

{eq:generalsupstestcurv}

Observe that by Definition 10.4.4, we have

$$\sup_{J \in \text{Fin}(I)} \left( \bigvee_{j \in J} \Gamma^j \right)_{\max} = \sup_{i \in I} \Gamma_{\max}^i < \infty.$$

So (10.22) makes sense. In particular,

$$\left( \sup_{i \in I} \Gamma^i \right)_{\max} = \sup_{i \in I} \Gamma_{\max}^i. \quad (10.23)$$

{eq:testcursupmax}

It is clear that Definition 10.4.6 extends both Definition 10.4.5 and Definition 10.4.4.

**Proposition 10.4.4** Let  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  be a non-empty family in  $\text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  satisfying (10.20). Then  $\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Moreover, if  $\Gamma^i \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , then so is  $\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i$ .

Finally, we have

$$\left( \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \right)_{-\infty} = P_{\theta}[\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma_{-\infty}^i]. \quad (10.24)$$

{eq:supsminfty}

**Proof** The first assertion and the second follow from Proposition 10.4.3 and Corollary 10.4.1.

It remains to argue (10.24). For this purpose, it suffices to show that

$$\left( \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \right)_{-\infty} \sim_P \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma_{-\infty}^i.$$

For any  $J \in \text{Fin}(I)$ , it follows from Corollary 10.4.1 and Proposition 6.1.6 that

$$\left( \bigvee_{j \in J} \Gamma^j \right)_{-\infty} \sim_P \bigvee_{j \in J} \Gamma_{-\infty}^j.$$

From this, applying Proposition 6.1.6 and Proposition 10.4.3, we conclude our assertion.  $\square$

lma:testcursupcompatible

**Lemma 10.4.7** Let  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  be a non-empty family in  $\text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  satisfying (10.20). Assume that  $\omega$  is a closed smooth positive  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . Then

$$P_{\theta+\omega} \left[ \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \right] = \sup_{i \in I}^* P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma^i].$$

**Proof** This is a direct consequence of [Lemma 10.4.6](#) and [Lemma 10.4.5](#).  $\square$

prop:testcurvChoquet

**Proposition 10.4.5** *Let  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  be a non-empty family in  $\text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  satisfying (10.20). Then there is a countable subset  $I' \subseteq I$  such that*

$$\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i = \sup_{i \in I'}^* \Gamma^i.$$

**Proof** We may assume that  $I$  is infinite.

It follows from [Proposition 1.2.2](#) that we can find a countable subset  $I' \subseteq I$  such that for each

$$\tau \in \left( -\infty, \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma_{\max}^i \right) \cap \mathbb{Q},$$

we have

$$\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma_{\tau}^i = \sup_{i \in I'}^* \Gamma_{\tau}^i.$$

Let  $\Gamma' = \sup_{i \in I'}^* \Gamma^i$ . Then clearly,  $\Gamma' \leq \Gamma$ . We claim that they are actually equal. For this purpose, it suffices to show that for any  $\tau < \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma_{\max}^i$ , we have

$$\int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c \Gamma'_{\tau})^n = \int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c \Gamma_{\tau})^n.$$

Since we know that this holds on a dense subset of  $\tau$ , this holds everywhere by [Theorem 2.3.3](#).  $\square$

prop:supGammiiotherprop

**Proposition 10.4.6** *Let  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  be a non-empty family in  $\text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  satisfying (10.20). Let  $C \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then*

$$\sup_{i \in I}^* (\Gamma^i + C) = \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i + C.$$

*Suppose that  $(\Gamma'^i)_{i \in I}$  is another family in  $\text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  satisfying (10.20). Suppose that  $\Gamma^i \leq \Gamma'^i$  for all  $i \in I$ , then*

$$\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \leq \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma'^i.$$

**Proof** This is immediate by definition.  $\square$

def:res

**Definition 10.4.7** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\lambda > 0$ , we define  $\lambda\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \lambda\theta)_{>0}$  as follows:

(1) we set

$$(\lambda\Gamma)_{\max} = \lambda\Gamma_{\max};$$

(2) For any  $\tau < \lambda\Gamma_{\max}$ , we set

$$(\lambda\Gamma)_{\tau} = \lambda\Gamma_{\lambda^{-1}\tau}.$$

prop:testcurrecaling

**Proposition 10.4.7** *Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\lambda > 0$ , then  $\lambda\Gamma$  as defined in [Definition 10.4.7](#) lies in  $\text{TC}(X, \lambda\theta)_{>0}$ . Moreover, if  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , then  $\lambda\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \lambda\theta)_{>0}$ .*

We have

$$(\lambda\Gamma)_{-\infty} = \lambda\Gamma_{-\infty}. \quad (10.25)$$

prop:resclacompat

**Proposition 10.4.8** *Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ ,  $\Gamma' \in \text{TC}(X, \theta')_{>0}$ ,  $C \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $\lambda, \lambda' > 0$ , we have*

$$\lambda(\Gamma + \Gamma') = \lambda\Gamma + \lambda\Gamma',$$

$$(\lambda\lambda')\Gamma = \lambda(\lambda'\Gamma),$$

$$\lambda(\Gamma + C) = \lambda\Gamma + \lambda C.$$

Suppose that  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  is a non-empty family in  $\text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  satisfying [\(10.20\)](#), then

$$\lambda \left( \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \right) = \sup_{i \in I}^* (\lambda\Gamma^i).$$

lma:testcurvrescompatible

**Lemma 10.4.8** *Let  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and  $\lambda > 0$ . Then for any closed smooth positive  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\omega$  on  $X$ , we have*

$$P_{\lambda(\theta+\omega)}[\lambda\Gamma] = \lambda P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma].$$

**Proof** This is clear by definition. □



# Chapter 11

## The theory of Okounkov bodies

chap:Okou

### 11.1 The Okounkov bodies of almost semigroups

sec:clo

Fix an integer  $n \geq 0$ . Fix a closed convex cone  $C \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  such that  $C \cap \{x_{n+1} = 0\} = \{0\}$ . Here  $x_{n+1}$  is the last coordinate of  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1}$ .

#### 11.1.1 Generality on semigroups

Write  $\hat{S}(C)$  for the set of subsets of  $C \cap \mathbb{Z}^{n+1}$  and  $\mathcal{S}(C)$  for the set of sub-semigroups  $S \subseteq C \cap \mathbb{Z}^{n+1}$ . For each  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $S \in \hat{S}(C)$ , we write

$$S_k := \{x \in \mathbb{Z}^n : (x, k) \in S\}.$$

Note that  $S_k$  is a finite set by our assumption on  $C$ .

We introduce a pseudometric on  $\hat{S}(C)$  as follows:

$$d(S, S') := \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} k^{-n} (|S_k| + |S'_k| - 2|(S \cap S')_k|).$$

Here  $|\bullet|$  denotes the cardinality of a finite set.

lma:dps

**Lemma 11.1.1** *The above defined  $d$  is a pseudometric on  $\hat{S}(C)$ .*

**Proof** Only the triangle inequality needs to be argued. Take  $S, S', S'' \in \hat{S}(C)$ . We claim that for any  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ ,

$$|S_k| + |S'_k| - 2|S_k \cap S'_k| + |S''_k| + |S'_k| - 2|S''_k \cap S'_k| \geq |S_k| + |S''_k| - 2|S_k \cap S''_k|.$$

From this the triangle inequality follows. To argue the claim, we rearrange it to the following form:

$$|S'_k| - |S_k \cap S'_k| \geq |S'_k \cap S''_k| - |S_k \cap S''_k|,$$

which is obvious. □

Given  $S, S' \in \hat{\mathcal{S}}(C)$ , we say  $S$  is equivalent to  $S'$  and write  $S \sim S'$  if  $d(S, S') = 0$ . This is an equivalence relation by [Lemma 11.1.1](#).

lma:dBi1

**Lemma 11.1.2** *Given  $S, S', S'' \in \hat{\mathcal{S}}(C)$ , we have*

$$d(S \cap S'', S' \cap S'') \leq d(S, S').$$

*In particular, if  $S^i, S'^i \in \hat{\mathcal{S}}(C)$  ( $i \in \mathbb{N}$ ) and  $S^i \rightarrow S$ ,  $S'^i \rightarrow S'$ , then*

$$S^i \cap S'^i \rightarrow S \cap S'.$$

**Proof** Observe that for any  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ ,

$$|S_k \cap S''_k| - |S_k \cap S'_k \cap S''_k| \leq |S_k| - |S_k \cap S'_k|.$$

The same holds if we interchange  $S$  with  $S'$ . It follows that

$$|S_k \cap S''_k| + |S'_k \cap S''_k| - 2|S_k \cap S'_k \cap S''_k| \leq |S_k| + |S'_k| - 2|S_k \cap S'_k|.$$

The first assertion follows.

Next we compute

$$d(S^i \cap S'^i, S \cap S') \leq d(S^i \cap S'^i, S^i \cap S') + d(S^i \cap S', S \cap S') \leq d(S'^i, S') + d(S^i, S)$$

and the second assertion follows.  $\square$

The volume of  $S \in \mathcal{S}(C)$  is defined as

$$\text{vol } S := \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} (ka)^{-n} |S_{ka}| = \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} k^{-n} |S_k|,$$

where  $a$  is a sufficiently divisible positive integer. The existence of the limit and its independence from  $a$  both follow from the more precise result [\[KK12, Theorem 2\]](#). KK12

lma:vollip

**Lemma 11.1.3** *Let  $S, S' \in \mathcal{S}(C)$ , then*

$$|\text{vol } S - \text{vol } S'| \leq d(S, S').$$

**Proof** By definition, we have

$$d(S, S') \geq \text{vol } S + \text{vol } S' - 2 \text{vol}(S \cap S').$$

It follows that  $\text{vol } S - \text{vol } S' \leq d(S, S')$  and  $\text{vol } S' - \text{vol } S \leq d(S, S')$ .  $\square$

We define  $\overline{\mathcal{S}}(C)$  as the closure of  $\mathcal{S}(C)$  in  $\hat{\mathcal{S}}(C)$  with respect to the topology defined by the pseudometric  $d$ . By [Lemma 11.1.3](#),  $\text{vol}: \mathcal{S}(C) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  admits a unique 1-Lipschitz extension to

$$\text{vol}: \overline{\mathcal{S}}(C) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}. \tag{11.1}$$

{eq:volex}

lma:volcompa

**Lemma 11.1.4** Suppose that  $S, S' \in \overline{\mathcal{S}}(C)$  and  $S \subseteq S'$ . Then

$$\text{vol } S \leq \text{vol } S'.$$

**Proof** Take sequences  $S^j, S'^j$  in  $\mathcal{S}(C)$  such that  $S^j \rightarrow S$ ,  $S'^j \rightarrow S'$ . By [Lemma 11.1.2](#), after replacing  $S^j$  by  $S^j \cap S'^j$ , we may assume that  $S^j \subseteq S'^j$  for each  $j$ . Then our assertion follows easily.  $\square$

### 11.1.2 Okounkov bodies of semigroups

Given  $S \in \hat{\mathcal{S}}(C)$ , we will write  $C(S) \subseteq C$  for the closed convex cone generated by  $S \cup \{0\}$ . Moreover, for each  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ , we define

$$\Delta_k(S) := \text{Conv} \{k^{-1}x \in \mathbb{R}^n : x \in S_k\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n.$$

Here  $\text{Conv}$  denotes the convex hull.

**Definition 11.1.1** Let  $\mathcal{S}'(C)$  be the subset of  $\mathcal{S}(C)$  consisting of semigroups  $S$  such that  $S$  generates  $\mathbb{Z}^{n+1}$  (as an Abelian group).

Note that for any  $S \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$ , the cone  $C(S)$  has full dimension (i.e. the topological interior is non-empty). Given a full-dimensional subcone  $C' \subseteq C$ , it is clear that  $C' \cap \mathbb{Z}^{n+1} \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$ .

This class behaves well under intersections:

lma:intersecS'

**Lemma 11.1.5** Let  $S, S' \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$ . Assume that  $\text{vol}(S \cap S') > 0$ , then  $S \cap S' \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$ .

The lemma obviously fails if  $\text{vol}(S \cap S') = 0$ .

**Proof** We first observe that the cone  $C(S) \cap C(S')$  has full dimension since otherwise  $\text{vol}(S \cap S') = 0$ . Take a full-dimensional subcone  $C'$  in  $C(S) \cap C(S')$  such that  $C'$  intersects the boundary of  $C(S) \cap C(S')$  only at 0. It follows from [\[KK12, Theorem 1\]](#) that there is an integer  $N > 0$  such that for any  $x \in \mathbb{Z}^{n+1} \cap C'$  with Euclidean norm no less than  $N$  lies in  $S \cap S'$ . Therefore,  $S \cap S' \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$ .  $\square$

We recall the following definition from [\[KK12\]](#).

def:Okokk

**Definition 11.1.2** Given  $S \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$ , its *Okounkov body* is defined as follows

$$\Delta(S) := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : (x, 1) \in C(S)\}.$$

thm:HausOkoun

**Theorem 11.1.1** For each  $S \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$ , we have

$$\text{vol } S = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} k^{-n} |S_k| = \text{vol } \Delta(S) > 0. \quad (11.2)$$

{eq:volWvolDelta}

Moreover, as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ ,

$$\Delta_k(S) \xrightarrow{d_n} \Delta(S). \quad (11.3)$$

{eq:HausconvDeltaGLS}

This is essentially proved in [WN14, Lemma 4.8], which itself follows from a theorem of Khovanskii [Kho92]. We remind the readers that (11.2) fails for a general  $W \in \mathcal{S}(C)$ , see [KK12, Theorem 2].

**Proof** The equalities (11.2) follow from the general theorem [KK12, Theorem 2].

It remains to prove (11.3). By the argument of [WN14, Lemma 4.8], for any compact set  $K \subseteq \text{Int } \Delta(S)$ , there is  $k_0 > 0$  such that for any  $k \geq k_0$ ,  $\alpha \in K \cap (k^{-1}\mathbb{Z})^n$  implies that  $\alpha \in \Delta_k(S)$ .

In particular, taking  $K = \Delta(S)^\delta$  for any  $\delta > 0$  and applying Lemma A.6.3, we find

$$d_n(\Delta(S), \Delta_k(S)) \leq n^{1/2}k^{-1} + \delta$$

when  $k$  is large enough. This implies (11.3).  $\square$

cor:dist

**Corollary 11.1.1** *Let  $S, S' \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$ . Assume that  $\text{vol}(S \cap S') > 0$ , then we have*

$$d(S, S') = \text{vol}(S) + \text{vol}(S') - 2 \text{vol}(S \cap S').$$

**Proof** This is a direct consequence of Lemma 11.1.5 and (11.2).  $\square$

lma:regularizat

**Lemma 11.1.6** *Given  $S \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$ , we have  $S \sim \text{Reg}(S)$ .*

Recall that the regularization  $\text{Reg}(S)$  of  $S$  is defined as  $C(S) \cap \mathbb{Z}^{n+1}$ .

**Proof** Since  $S$  and  $\text{Reg}(S)$  have the same Okounkov body, we have  $\text{vol } S = \text{vol } \text{Reg}(S)$  by Theorem 11.1.1. By Corollary 11.1.1 again,

$$d(\text{Reg}(S), S) = \text{vol } \text{Reg}(S) - \text{vol } S = 0.$$

lma:Deltaindclass

**Lemma 11.1.7** *Let  $S, S' \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$ . Assume that  $d(S, S') = 0$ , then  $\Delta(S) = \Delta(S')$ .*

**Proof** Observe that  $\text{vol}(S \cap S') > 0$ , as otherwise

$$d(S, S') \geq \text{vol } S + \text{vol } S' > 0,$$

which is a contradiction.

It follows from Lemma 11.1.5 that  $S \cap S' \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$ . It suffices to show that  $\Delta(S) = \Delta(S \cap S')$ . In fact, suppose that this holds, since  $\text{vol } \Delta(S') = \text{vol } S' = \text{vol } S = \text{vol } \Delta(S)$ , the inclusion  $\Delta(S') \supseteq \Delta(S \cap S') = \Delta(S)$  is an equality.

By Lemma 11.1.2, we can therefore replace  $S'$  by  $S \cap S'$  and assume that  $S \supseteq S'$ . Then clearly  $\Delta(S) \supseteq \Delta(S')$ . By (11.2),

$$\text{vol } \Delta(S) = \text{vol } \Delta(S') > 0.$$

Thus,  $\Delta(S) = \Delta(S')$ .  $\square$

lma:Sprimeint

**Lemma 11.1.8** *Suppose that  $S^i \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$  is a decreasing sequence such that*

$$\lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \text{vol } S^i > 0.$$

*Then there is  $S \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$  such that  $S^i \rightarrow S$ .*

In general, one cannot simply take  $S = \bigcap_i S^i$ . For example, consider the sequence  $S^i = S^1 \cap \{x_{n+1} \geq i\}$ .

**Proof** By [Lemma 11.1.6](#), we may replace  $S^i$  by its regularization and assume that  $S^i = C(S^i) \cap \mathbb{Z}^{n+1}$ . We define

$$S = \left( \bigcap_{i=1}^{\infty} C(S^i) \right) \cap \mathbb{Z}^{n+1}.$$

Since  $\bigcap_{i=1}^{\infty} C(S^i)$  is a full-dimensional cone by assumption, we have  $S \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$ . By [Corollary 11.1.1](#) and [Theorem 11.1.1](#), we can compute the distance

$$d(S, S^i) = \text{vol } S^i - \text{vol } S = \text{vol } \Delta(S^i) - \text{vol } \Delta(S),$$

which tends to 0 by construction.  $\square$

### 11.1.3 Okounkov bodies of almost semigroups

subsec:Okobalmsg

**Definition 11.1.3** We define  $\overline{\mathcal{S}'(C)}_{>0}$  as elements in the closure of  $\mathcal{S}'(C)$  in  $\hat{\mathcal{S}}(C)$  with positive volume. An element in  $\overline{\mathcal{S}'(C)}_{>0}$  is called an *almost semigroup* in  $C$ .

Recall that the volume here is defined in [\(11.1\)](#).

Our goal is to prove the following theorem:

thm:Okocont

**Theorem 11.1.2** The Okounkov body map  $\Delta: \mathcal{S}'(C) \rightarrow \mathcal{K}_n$  as defined in [Definition 11.1.2](#) admits a unique continuous extension

$$\Delta: \overline{\mathcal{S}'(C)}_{>0} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}_n. \quad (11.4)$$

{eq:Deltagensg}

Moreover, for any  $S \in \overline{\mathcal{S}'(C)}_{>0}$ , we have

$$\text{vol } S = \text{vol } \Delta(S). \quad (11.5)$$

{eq:volWfinal}

**Proof** The uniqueness of the extension is clear as long as it exists. Moreover, [\(11.5\)](#) follows easily from [Theorem 11.1.1](#) and [Theorem A.6.2](#) by continuity. It remains to argue the existence of the continuous extension. We first construct an extension and prove its continuity.

**Step 1.** We construct the desired map [\(11.4\)](#). Let  $S \in \overline{\mathcal{S}'(C)}_{>0}$ . We wish to construct a convex body  $\Delta(S) \in \mathcal{K}_n$ .

Let  $S^i \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$  be a sequence that converges to  $S$  such that

$$d(S^i, S^{i+1}) \leq 2^{-i}.$$

For each  $i, j \geq 0$ , we introduce

$$S^{i,j} = S^i \cap S^{i+1} \cdots \cap S^{i+j}.$$

Then by [Lemma 11.1.2](#),

$$d(S^{i,j}, S^{i,j+1}) \leq 2^{-i-j}.$$

Take  $i_0 > 0$  large enough so that for  $i \geq i_0$ ,  $\text{vol } S^i > 2^{-1} \text{vol } S$  and  $2^{2-i} < \text{vol } S$  and hence

$$\text{vol } S^i - \text{vol } S^{i,j} \leq d(S^{i,0}, S^{i,1}) + d(S^{i,1}, S^{i,2}) + \cdots + d(S^{i,j-1}, S^{i,j}) \leq 2^{1-i}.$$

It follows that  $\text{vol } S^{i,j} > 2^{-1} \text{vol } S - 2^{1-i} > 0$  whenever  $i \geq i_0$ . In particular, by [Lemma 11.1.5](#),  $S^{i,j} \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$  for  $i \geq i_0$ .

By [Lemma 11.1.8](#), for  $i \geq i_0$ , there exists  $T^i \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$  such that  $S^{i,j} \rightarrow T^i$  as  $j \rightarrow \infty$ . Moreover,

$$d(T^i, S) = \lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} d(S^{i,j}, S) \leq \lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} d(S^{i,j}, S^i) + d(S^i, S) \leq 2^{1-i} + d(S^i, S).$$

Therefore,  $T^i \rightarrow S$ . We then define

$$\Delta(S) := \overline{\bigcup_{i=i_0}^{\infty} \Delta(T^i)}.$$

In other words, we have defined

$$\Delta(S) := \varliminf_{i \rightarrow \infty} \Delta(S^i).$$

This is an honest limit: if  $\Delta$  is the limit of a subsequence of  $\Delta(S^i)$ , then  $\Delta(S) \subseteq \Delta$  by [\(A.7\)](#). Comparing the volumes, we find that equality holds. So by [Theorem A.6.1](#),

$$\Delta(S) = \lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \Delta(S^i). \quad (11.6)$$

{eq:deltawtemp}

Next we claim that  $\Delta(S)$  as defined above does not depend on the choice of the sequence  $S^i$ . In fact, suppose that  $S'^i \in \mathcal{S}'(C)$  is another sequence satisfying the same conditions as  $S^i$ . The same holds for  $R^i := S^{i+1} \cap S'^{i+1}$ . It follows that

$$\lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \Delta(R^i) \subseteq \lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \Delta(S^i).$$

Comparing the volumes, we find that equality holds. The same is true with  $S'^i$  in place of  $S^i$ . So we conclude that  $\Delta(S)$  as in [\(11.6\)](#) does not depend on the choices we made.

**Step 2.** It remains to prove the continuity of  $\Delta$  defined in Step 1. Suppose that  $S^i \in \overline{\mathcal{S}'(C)}_{>0}$  is a sequence with limit  $S \in \overline{\mathcal{S}'(C)}_{>0}$ . We want to show that

$$\Delta(S^i) \xrightarrow{d_n} \Delta(S). \quad (11.7)$$

{eq:temp5}

We first reduce to the case where  $S^i \in S'(C)$ . By (11.6), for each  $i$ , we can choose  $T^i \in S'(C)$  such that  $d(S^i, T^i) < 2^{-i}$  and  $d_n(\Delta(S^i), \Delta(T^i)) < 2^{-i}$ . If we have shown  $\Delta(T^i) \xrightarrow{d_n} \Delta(S)$ , then (11.7) follows immediately.

Next we reduce to the case where  $d(S^i, S^{i+1}) \leq 2^{-i}$ . In fact, thanks to [Theorem A.6.1](#), in order to prove (11.7), it suffices to show that each subsequence of  $\Delta(S^i)$  admits a subsequence that converges to  $\Delta(S)$ . Hence, we easily reduce to the required case.

After these reductions, (11.7) is nothing but (11.6).  $\square$

cor:Okocomp

**Corollary 11.1.2** *Suppose that  $S, S' \in \overline{S'(C)}_{>0}$  with  $S \subseteq S'$ , then*

$$\Delta(S) \subseteq \Delta(S'). \quad (11.8)$$

{eq:Deltacontain}

**Proof** Let  $S^j, S'^j \in S'(C)$  be elements such that  $S^j \rightarrow S, S'^j \rightarrow S'$ . Then it follows from [Lemma 11.1.2](#) that  $S^j \cap S'^j \rightarrow S$ . Since  $\text{vol}$  is continuous, for large  $j$ ,  $S^j \cap S'^j$  has positive volume and hence lies in  $S'(C)$  by [Lemma 11.1.5](#). We may therefore replace  $S^j$  by  $S^j \cap S'^j$  and assume that  $S^j \subseteq S'^j$ . Hence (11.8) follows from the continuity of  $\Delta$  proved in [Theorem 11.1.2](#).  $\square$

*Remark 11.1.1* As the readers can easily verify, the construction of  $\Delta$  is independent of the choice of  $C$  in the following sense: Suppose that  $C'$  is another cone satisfying the same assumptions as  $C$  and  $C' \supseteq C$ , then the Okounkov body map  $\Delta: \overline{S'(C')}_{>0} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}_n$  is an extension of the corresponding map (11.4). We will constantly use this fact without further explanations.

## 11.2 Flags and valuations

### 11.2.1 The algebraic setting

Let  $X$  be an irreducible normal projective variety of dimension  $n$ .

def:admfl

**Definition 11.2.1** An *admissible flag*  $(Y_\bullet)$  on  $X$  is a flag of subvarieties

$$X = Y_0 \supseteq Y_1 \supseteq \cdots \supseteq Y_n$$

such that  $Y_i$  is irreducible of codimension  $i$  and smooth at the point  $Y_n$ .

Given any admissible flag  $(Y_\bullet)$ , we can define a rank  $n$  valuation  $v_{(Y_\bullet)}: \mathbb{C}(X)^\times \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^n$  as in [\[LM09\]](#). Here we consider  $\mathbb{Z}^n$  as a totally ordered Abelian group with the lexicographic order. We recall the definition: let  $s \in \mathbb{C}(X)^\times$ . Let  $v_1(s) = \text{ord}_{Y_1} s$ . After localization around  $Y_n$ , we can take a local defining equation  $t^1$  of  $Y_1$ , set  $s_1 = (s(t^1)^{-v_1(s)})|_{Y_1}$ . Then  $s_1 \in \mathbb{C}(Y_1)$ . We can repeat this construction with  $Y_2$  in place of  $Y_1$  to get  $v_2(s)$  and  $s_2$ . Repeating this construction  $n$  times, we get  $v_{(Y_\bullet)}(s) = v(s) = (v_1(s), v_2(s), \dots, v_n(s)) \in \mathbb{Z}^n$ . It is easy to verify that  $v$  is indeed a rank  $n$  valuation.

rmk:Abhyankar

**Remark 11.2.1** Conversely, by a theorem of Abhyankar, any valuation of  $\mathbb{C}(X)$  with Noetherian valuation ring of rank  $n$  is equivalent to a valuation taking value in  $\mathbb{Z}^n$ , see [FK18, Chapter 0, Theorem 6.5.2]. As shown in [CFK<sup>+</sup>17, Theorem 2.9], any such valuation is equivalent to (but not necessarily equal to) a valuation induced by an admissible flag on a birational modification of  $X$ . Here two valuations  $\nu, \nu'$  with value in  $\mathbb{Z}^n$  are equivalent if one can find a matrix  $G$  of the form  $I + N$ , where  $N$  is strictly upper triangular with integral entries, such that  $\nu' = G\nu$ .

### 11.2.2 The transcendental setting

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$ .

**Definition 11.2.2** A *smooth flag*  $Y_\bullet$  on  $X$  consists of the following connected submanifolds of  $X$ :

$$X = Y_0 \supseteq Y_1 \supseteq \cdots \supseteq Y_n,$$

where  $Y_i$  has dimension  $n - i$ .

In this section, we will fix a smooth flag  $Y_\bullet$  on  $X$ .

Let  $\mathbb{Z}_{\text{lex}}^n$  denote the ordered Abelian group  $\mathbb{Z}^n$  with the lexicographic order. The elements of  $\mathbb{Z}_{\text{lex}}^n$  will be written as row vectors.

The automorphism group  $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{Z}_{\text{lex}}^n)$  of  $\mathbb{Z}_{\text{lex}}^n$  is then identified with the subgroup of  $\text{GL}(n, \mathbb{Z})$  consisting of matrices of the form  $I + U$ , where  $I$  is the identity matrix and  $U$  is a strictly upper triangular matrix with elements in  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

def:valcurr

**Definition 11.2.3** Let  $T$  be a closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current on  $X$ . We define the *valuation* of  $T$  along  $Y_\bullet$  as

$$\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T) = (\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T)_1, \dots, \nu_{Y_\bullet}(T)_n) \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}^n$$

by induction on  $n$ . When  $n = 0$ , we define  $\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T)$  as the unique point in  $\mathbb{R}^0$ . When  $n > 1$ , we define

$$\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T)_1(T) = \nu(T, Y_1);$$

Then for  $i = 2, \dots, n$ , we define

$$\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T)_i = \nu_{Y_1 \supseteq \cdots \supseteq Y_n} (\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1]))_{i-1}.$$

**Proposition 11.2.1** Let  $T$  be a closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current on  $X$ . Then  $\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T) \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}^n$  defined in Definition 11.2.3 is independent of the choices of the trace operators in the definition. Moreover,  $\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T)$  depends only on the  $\mathcal{I}$ -equivalence class of  $T$ .

**Proof** We will prove both statements at the same time by induction on  $n \geq 0$ . The case  $n = 0$  is trivial.

Let us consider the case  $n > 0$  and assume that the result is known in dimension  $n - 1$ . We first observe that  $\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T)$  is independent of the choice of the trace operator:



different choices of  $\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1])$  are  $I$ -equivalent by [Proposition 8.1.2](#). Therefore, by induction, its valuation is well-defined.

Next, let  $T'$  be another closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current such that  $T \sim_I T'$ . Using [Proposition 3.2.1](#), we know that  $\nu(T, Y_1) = \nu(T', Y_1)$ . Therefore,

$$T - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1] \sim_I T' - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1].$$

It follows by induction that

$$\nu_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}(\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1])) = \nu_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}(\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T' - \nu(T', Y_1)[Y_1])).$$

prop:nuvaluationlinear

**Proposition 11.2.2** *Let  $T, S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X)$ ,  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ . Then*

(1) *if  $T \leq_I S$ , we have*

$$\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T) \geq_{\text{lex}} \nu_{Y_\bullet}(S); \quad (11.9)$$

{eq:nuTS}

(2)

$$\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T + S) = \nu_{Y_\bullet}(T) + \nu_{Y_\bullet}(S), \quad \nu_{Y_\bullet}(\lambda T) = \lambda \nu_{Y_\bullet}(T). \quad (11.10)$$

{eq:nuvaluationlinear}

**Proof** 1: We make an induction on  $n \geq 1$ . The case  $n = 1$  is trivial. Assume that  $n \geq 2$  and the case  $n - 1$  is known. Observe that  $\nu(T, Y_1) \geq \nu(S, Y_1)$ , if the inequality is strict, we are done. So let us assume that  $\nu(T, Y_1) = \nu(S, Y_1)$ . By [Proposition 8.2.1](#), we find that

$$\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1]) \leq_I \text{Tr}_{Y_1}(S - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1]).$$

By the inductive hypothesis, we conclude (11.9).

2: We make an induction on  $n \geq 0$ . The cases  $n = 0, 1$  are trivial. Assume that  $n \geq 2$  and the case  $n - 1$  is known. By [Proposition 1.4.2](#), we have

$$\nu(T + S, Y_1) = \nu(T, Y_1) + \nu(S, Y_1), \quad \nu(\lambda T, Y_1) = \lambda \nu(T, Y_1).$$

By [Proposition 8.2.1](#), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T + S - \nu(T + S, Y_1)[Y_1]) &\sim_P \text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1]) + \text{Tr}_{Y_1}(S - \nu(S, Y_1)[Y_1]), \\ \text{Tr}_{Y_1}(\lambda T - \nu(\lambda T, Y_1)[Y_1]) &\sim_P \lambda \text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1]). \end{aligned}$$

By the inductive hypothesis, we conclude (11.10).

**Definition 11.2.4** Let  $\pi: Z \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism with  $Z$  being a Kähler manifold. We say that a smooth flag  $W_\bullet = (W_0 \supset \dots \supset W_n)$  is a *lifting* of  $Y_\bullet$  to  $Z$  if the restriction of  $\pi$  to  $W_i \rightarrow Y_i$  is defined and bimeromorphic for  $i = 0, \dots, n$ .

In this case, we define  $\text{cor}(Y_\bullet, \pi) \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{Z}_{\text{lex}}^n)$  inductively as follows:

$$\text{cor}(Y_\bullet, \pi) := \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\nu_{W_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W_n}((\pi^*[Y_1] - [W_1])|_{W_1}) \\ 0 & \text{cor}(Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n, \pi|_{W_1}: W_1 \rightarrow Y_1) \end{bmatrix}. \quad (11.11)$$

{eq:correcur}

We observe that a lifting  $W_\bullet$  of  $Y_\bullet$  on  $Z$  is unique if it exists. For each  $i = 0, \dots, n-1$ , the component  $W_{i+1}$  is necessarily the strict transform of  $Y_{i+1}$  with respect to the bimeromorphic morphism  $W_i \rightarrow Y_i$ . We shall also say that  $(W_\bullet, \text{cor}(Y_\bullet, \pi))$  is the *lifting* of  $Y_\bullet$  to  $Z$ .

prop:cormult

**Proposition 11.2.3** *Let  $\pi: Z \rightarrow X$ ,  $p: Z' \rightarrow Z$  be proper bimeromorphic morphisms with  $Z$  and  $Z'$  being Kähler manifolds. Assume that  $Y_\bullet$  admits a lifting  $W_\bullet$  (resp.  $W'_\bullet$ ) to  $Z$  (resp.  $Z'$ ). Then*

$$\text{cor}(Y_\bullet, \pi \circ p) = \text{cor}(Y_\bullet, \pi) \text{cor}(W_\bullet, p). \quad (11.12)$$

{eq:cormul}

**Proof** We let  $\pi' = \pi \circ p$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z' & \xrightarrow{p} & Z \\ & \searrow \pi' & \swarrow \pi \\ & X & \end{array} .$$

We make induction on  $n \geq 1$ . The case  $n = 1$  is trivial. Assume that  $n \geq 2$  and the case  $n - 1$  has been solved. Then by (11.11), the desired formula (11.12) can be reformulated as

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\nu_{W'_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W'_n}((\pi'^*[Y_1] - [W'_1])|_{W'_1}) \\ 0 & \text{cor}(Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n, \pi'|_{W'_1}: W'_1 \rightarrow Y_1) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\nu_{W_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W_n}((\pi^*[Y_1] - [W_1])|_{W_1}) \\ 0 & \text{cor}(Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n, \pi|_{W_1}: W_1 \rightarrow Y_1) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\nu_{W'_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W'_n}((p^*[W_1] - [W'_1])|_{W'_1}) \\ 0 & \text{cor}(W_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W_n, p|_{W'_1}: W'_1 \rightarrow W_1) \end{bmatrix}$$

By the inductive hypothesis, this is equivalent to

$$\begin{aligned} \nu_{W'_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W'_n}((\pi'^*[Y_1] - [W'_1])|_{W'_1}) &= \nu_{W'_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W'_n}((p^*[W_1] - [W'_1])|_{W'_1}) + \\ \nu_{W_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W_n}((\pi^*[Y_1] - [W_1])|_{W_1}) &\text{cor}(W_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W_n, p|_{W'_1}: W'_1 \rightarrow W_1), \end{aligned}$$

which can be further rewritten as

$$\begin{aligned} \nu_{W'_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W'_n}((\pi'^*[Y_1] - [W'_1])|_{W'_1}) &= \nu_{W'_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W'_n}((p^*[W_1] - [W'_1])|_{W'_1}) + \\ \nu_{W'_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W'_n}(p|_{W'_1}^*(\pi^*[Y_1] - [W_1])|_{W'_1}). \end{aligned}$$

This follows from [Proposition 11.2.2](#).  $\square$

prop:cormatrix

**Proposition 11.2.4** *Let  $\pi: Z \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism with  $Z$  being a Kähler manifold. Let  $W_\bullet$  be a lifting of  $Y_\bullet$ , then for any closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current  $T$  on  $X$ , we have*

$$\nu_{W_\bullet}(\pi^*T) = \nu_{Y_\bullet}(T) \text{cor}(Y_\bullet, \pi). \quad (11.13)$$

**Proof** We make induction on  $n \geq 0$ . The case  $n = 0$  is trivial. In general, assume that  $n \geq 1$  and the result is proved in dimension  $n - 1$ .

For simplicity, we write  $\nu = \nu_{Y_\bullet}$  and  $\nu' = \nu_{W_\bullet}$ . Let  $\mu$  (resp.  $\mu'$ ) be the valuation of currents defined by the truncated flag  $Y_1 \supseteq \cdots \supseteq Y_n$  (resp.  $W_1 \supseteq \cdots \supseteq W_n$ ). Then we need to show that

$$\left[ \nu'(\pi^*T)_1 \mu'(\text{Tr}_{W_1}(\pi^*T - \nu'(\pi^*T)_1[W_1])) \right] = \left[ \nu(T)_1 \mu(\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T - \nu(T)_1[Y_1])) \right] \text{cor}(Y_\bullet, \pi). \quad (11.14)$$

{eq:mubiration}

By Zariski's main theorem,

$$\nu'(\pi^*T)_1 = \nu(T)_1 =: c.$$

By the inductive hypothesis, we have

$$\mu'(\Pi^* \text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T - c[Y_1])) = \mu(\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T - c[Y_1])) \text{cor}(Y_1 \supseteq \cdots \supseteq Y_n, \Pi), \quad (11.15)$$

{eq: ind\_hypos}

where  $\Pi: W_1 \rightarrow Y_1$  is the restriction of  $\pi$ . By [Lemma 8.2.1](#) and [Proposition 8.2.1](#),

$$\Pi^* \text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T - c[Y_1]) \sim_P \text{Tr}_{W_1}(\pi^*(T - c[Y_1])) \sim_P \text{Tr}_{W_1}(\pi^*T - c[W_1]) + c \text{Tr}_{W_1}(\pi^*[Y_1] - [W_1]).$$

So

$$\mu'(\Pi^* \text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T - c[Y_1])) = \mu'(\text{Tr}_{W_1}(\pi^*T - c[W_1])) + c\mu'(\text{Tr}_{W_1}(\pi^*[Y_1] - [W_1])).$$

Combining the above with (11.15), we see that (11.14) follows.  $\square$

thm:lifttableflag

**Theorem 11.2.1** *Let  $\pi: Z \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism from a reduced complex space  $Z$ . Then there is a modification  $W \rightarrow X$  dominating  $Z \rightarrow X$  such that  $Y_\bullet$  admits a lifting to  $W$ .*

**Proof** By Hironaka's Chow lemma, we may assume that  $\pi$  is a modification.

We begin by setting  $W_0 = Z$ . We will construct  $W_i$  inductively for each  $i$ . Assume that for  $0 \leq i < n$  a smooth partial flag  $W_0 \supset \cdots \supset W_i$  has been constructed on a modification  $\pi_i: Z_i \rightarrow Z$  so that  $\pi \circ \pi_i$  restricts to bimeromorphic morphisms  $W_j \rightarrow Y_j$  for each  $j = 0, \dots, i$ .

By Zariski's main theorem,  $W_i \rightarrow Y_i$  is an isomorphism outside a codimension 2 subset of  $Y_i$ . We let  $W_{i+1}$  be the strict transform of  $Y_{i+1}$  in  $W_i$ . The problem is that  $W_{i+1}$  is not necessarily smooth.

We will further modify  $Z_i$  and lift  $W_1, \dots, W_{i+1}$  in order to make the flag smooth. Take the embedded resolution of  $(W_j, W_{i+1})$ , say  $W'_j \rightarrow W_j$  for each  $j = 0, \dots, i$ .

We have canonical embeddings  $W'_i \hookrightarrow W'_{i-1} \hookrightarrow \cdots \hookrightarrow W'_0$  making the following diagram commutative:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} W'_i & \hookrightarrow & W'_{i-1} & \hookrightarrow & \cdots & \hookrightarrow & W'_0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \vdots & & \downarrow \\ W_i & \hookrightarrow & W_{i-1} & \hookrightarrow & \cdots & \hookrightarrow & W_0 \end{array}$$

Let  $W'_{i+1}$  be the strict transform of  $W_{i+1}$  in  $W'_i$ . It suffices to define  $\pi_{i+1}$  as the morphism  $W'_0 \rightarrow Z_i \rightarrow Z$  and replace  $W_0 \supset \cdots \supset W_{i+1}$  by  $W'_0 \supset \cdots \supset W'_{i+1}$ .  $\square$

### 11.3 Algebraic partial Okounkov bodies

sec:PoB

Let  $X$  be an irreducible smooth complex projective variety of dimension  $n$  and  $L$  be a big line bundle on  $X$ . Take a singular psh metric  $\phi$  on  $L$ . We assume that  $\text{vol}(L, \phi) > 0$ . Let  $h$  be a smooth Hermitian metric on  $L$ . Let  $\theta = c_1(L, h)$ . Then we can identify  $\phi$  with a function  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ . We will use interchangeably the notations  $(\theta, \varphi)$  and  $(L, \phi)$ .

For each  $k \geq 0$ ,

$$W_k(\theta, \varphi) := H^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)), \quad W(\theta, \varphi) := \bigoplus_{k=0}^{\infty} W_k(\theta, \varphi).$$

We omit  $(\theta, \varphi)$  from our notations when there is no risk of confusion. Observe that  $W_k(\theta, \varphi) \neq 0$  when  $k$  is large enough, as follows from [Theorem 7.3.1](#).

Fix a rank  $n$  valuation  $\nu: \mathbb{C}(X)^\times \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^n$  (which is assumed to be surjective). We will write

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_{\nu, k}(\theta, \varphi) &= \{k^{-1}\nu(s) : s \in W_k(\theta, \varphi)^\times\}, \quad k \geq 1 \\ \Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi) &= \{(\nu(s), k) : k \in \mathbb{N}, s \in W_k(\theta, \varphi)^\times\}. \end{aligned}$$

In [\[LM09\]](#), Lazarsfeld–Mustață only considered the case where  $\nu$  is induced by an admissible flag, but thanks to [Remark 11.2.1](#), their results can be easily extended to the current setup. We will use these results without further comments.

#### 11.3.1 Construction of partial Okounkov bodies

Our goal in this section is to show that  $\Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi) \in \overline{\mathcal{S}'(\Delta_\nu(L))}_{>0}$ , namely it is an almost semigroup. Then we shall define

$$\Delta_\nu(\theta, \varphi) := \Delta(\Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi)) \tag{11.16}$$

{eq:Deltalbdef}

using the theory of Okounkov bodies of almost semigroups developed in [Section 11.1.3](#). Moreover, we have

$$\text{vol } \Delta_\nu(\theta, \varphi) = \frac{1}{n!} \int_X \theta_{P[\varphi]}^n. \tag{11.17}$$

{eq:Okov}

##### 11.3.1.1 The case of analytic singularities

Assume that  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities and  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current.

For any rational  $\epsilon \geq 0$ , we define

$$W_k^\epsilon = W_k^\epsilon(\theta, \varphi) := \left\{ s \in H^0(X, L^k) : |s|_{h^k}^2 e^{-k(1-\epsilon)\varphi} \text{ is bounded} \right\}. \tag{11.18}$$

{eq:Weps}

Then  $W^\epsilon := \bigoplus_{k=0}^{\infty} W_k^\epsilon$  has the property that

$$\Gamma_\nu(W^\epsilon) := \{(\nu(s), k) : k \in \mathbb{N}, s \in W_k^{\epsilon, \times}\} \in \mathcal{S}'(\Delta_\nu(L)). \quad (11.19)$$

{eq:Weps1}

To see this, we may assume that  $\varphi$  has log singularities along an effective  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $E$ , then (11.19) follows from the fact that  $L - (1 - \epsilon)E$  is big, c.f. [LM09, Lemma 2.2].

For any  $\epsilon \in \mathbb{Q}_{>0}$ , we have that

$$W_k^0 \subseteq W_k \subseteq W_k^\epsilon \quad (11.20)$$

{eq:OTc}

for  $k$  large enough depending on  $\epsilon$ . The first inclusion is of course trivial. The second inclusion is widely known among experts. A detailed proof can be found in [DX21, Remark 2.9].

Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a resolution such that  $\pi^*\varphi$  has analytic singularities along a normal crossing  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $E$ . Then we have a natural identification for sufficiently divisible  $k$ ,

$$W_k^\epsilon \cong H^0(Y, \pi^*L^k \otimes \mathcal{O}_Y(-(1 - \epsilon)kE)).$$

On the other hand,

$$W_k^0 \cong H^0(Y, \pi^*L^k \otimes \mathcal{O}_Y(-kE)) \subseteq H^0(Y, \pi^*L^k).$$

We compute the volumes,

$$\text{vol } \Gamma_\nu(W^\epsilon) = \frac{1}{n!} \int_X \theta_{(1-\epsilon)\varphi}^n, \quad \text{vol } \Gamma_\nu(W^0) = \frac{1}{n!} \int_X \theta_\varphi^n. \quad (11.21)$$

{eq:volDeltas}

It follows that  $\Gamma_\nu(W^\epsilon) \rightarrow \Gamma_\nu(W^0)$  and  $\Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi)$  is equivalent to  $\Gamma_\nu(W^0)$ . In particular,  $\Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi) \in \overline{\mathcal{S}'(\Delta_\nu(L))}_{>0}$ , (11.16) makes sense and (11.17) holds.

rmk:DeltaanaW0

*Remark 11.3.1* It follows from the proof that if  $W^0(\theta, \varphi)$  is defined as in (11.18) and (11.19):

$$W_k^0(\theta, \varphi) := \{s \in H^0(X, L^k) : |s|_{h^k}^2 e^{-k\varphi} \text{ is bounded}\},$$

then

$$\Delta(\Gamma_\nu(W^0(\theta, \varphi))) = \Delta_\nu(\theta, \varphi). \quad (11.22)$$

{eq:DeltaanaW0}

If we assume furthermore that  $\pi^*\varphi$  has analytic singularity along some normal crossing  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $E$  on  $Y$ , then  $\Delta_\nu(\theta, \varphi)$  is just the translation of  $\Delta_\nu(\pi^*L - E)$  by  $\nu(E)$ .

### 11.3.1.2 The case of Kähler currents

Now assume that  $\theta_\varphi$  is Kähler current. Let  $\varphi^j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  be a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$ . Then  $\varphi^j \xrightarrow{d_S} P[\varphi]_I$  by Corollary 7.1.2.

In this case, we claim that

$$\Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi^j) \rightarrow \Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi). \quad (11.23) \quad \{\text{eq:WtoWclaim}\}$$

In fact, by [Theorem 7.3.1](#), we have

$$\begin{aligned} d(\Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi^j), \Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi)) &= \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} k^{-n} \left( h^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi^j)) - h^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) \right) \\ &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} k^{-n} h^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi^j)) - \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} k^{-n} h^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) \\ &= \frac{1}{n!} \int_X \theta_{\varphi^j}^n - \frac{1}{n!} \int_X \theta_{P[\varphi]_I}^n. \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $j \rightarrow \infty$ , we conclude (11.23) by [Theorem 6.2.1](#).

Thus,  $\Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi) \in \overline{S'(\Delta_\nu(L))}_{>0}$  and (11.16) makes sense. By [Theorem 11.1.2](#), we find that

$$\Delta_\nu(\theta, \varphi) = \bigcap_{j=0}^{\infty} \Delta_\nu(\theta, \varphi^j).$$

In particular, (11.17) holds.

### 11.3.1.3 General case

Now we consider general  $\varphi$  with the assumption that  $\int_X \theta_{P[\varphi]_I}^n > 0$ . We may replace  $\varphi$  with  $P[\varphi]_I$  and then assume that the non-pluripolar mass of  $\varphi$  is positive. Take a potential  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that  $\psi \leq \varphi$  and  $\theta_\psi$  is a Kähler current. The existence of  $\psi$  is proved in [Lemma 2.3.2](#). For each  $\epsilon \in \mathbb{Q} \cap (0, 1]$ , let  $\varphi_\epsilon = (1 - \epsilon)\varphi + \epsilon\psi$ . Then we have  $W(\theta, \varphi_\epsilon) \subseteq W(\theta, \varphi)$ . By (11.17),

$$\text{vol } \Delta_\nu(\theta, \varphi_\epsilon) = \frac{1}{n!} \int_X \theta_{P[\varphi_\epsilon]_I}^n.$$

We claim that

$$\Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi_\epsilon) \rightarrow \Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi).$$

In fact, this follows from the simple computation:

$$\begin{aligned} d(\Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi_\epsilon), \Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi)) &= \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} k^{-n} \left( h^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) - h^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi_\epsilon)) \right) \\ &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} k^{-n} h^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) - \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} k^{-n} h^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi_\epsilon)) \\ &= \frac{1}{n!} \int_X \theta_\varphi^n - \frac{1}{n!} \int_X \theta_{P[\varphi_\epsilon]_I}^n. \end{aligned}$$

By [Theorem 6.2.5](#), as  $\epsilon$  decreases to 0,  $P[\varphi_\epsilon]_I$  increases to  $P[\varphi]_I = \varphi$  a.e., which implies the  $d_S$ -convergence by [Corollary 6.2.3](#). Therefore, the right-hand side of the above equation converges to 0 by [Theorem 6.2.1](#). Our claim is proved. It follows that  $\Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi) \in \overline{S'(\Delta_\nu(L))}_{>0}$  and (11.16) makes sense. By [Theorem 11.1.2](#),

$$\Delta_\nu(\theta, \varphi) = \overline{\bigcup_{\epsilon > 0} \Delta_\nu(\theta, \varphi_\epsilon)}.$$

It remains to verify (11.17):

$$\text{vol } \Delta_\nu(\theta, \varphi) = \frac{1}{n!} \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0^+} \int_X \theta_{P[\varphi_\epsilon]_I}^n = \frac{1}{n!} \int_X \theta_{P[\varphi]_I}^n.$$

**Definition 11.3.1** Assume that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ ,  $\int_X \theta_{P[\varphi]_I}^n > 0$ . We call  $\Delta_\nu(\theta, \varphi)$  the *partial Okounkov body* of  $(L, \phi)$  or of  $(\theta, \varphi)$  with respect to  $\nu$ . When  $\nu$  is induced by an admissible flag  $(Y_\bullet)$  on  $X$  (see Definition 11.2.1), we also say that  $\Delta_\nu(\theta, \varphi)$  the *partial Okounkov body* of  $(L, \phi)$  or of  $(\theta, \varphi)$  with respect to  $(Y_\bullet)$ . In this case, we also write  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}$  instead of  $\Delta_\nu$ .

We use interchangeably the notations  $\Delta_\nu(\theta, \varphi)$  and  $\Delta_\nu(L, \phi)$ . When there is no risk of confusion, we write  $\Delta$  instead of  $\Delta_\nu$  or  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}$ .

### 11.3.2 Basic properties of partial Okounkov bodies

We first show that  $\Delta(\theta, \varphi)$  does not depend on the explicit choices of  $L$ ,  $h$  and  $\varphi$ , it just depends on  $\text{dd}^c \phi$ .

lma:indepL

**Lemma 11.3.1** Let  $L'$  be another big line bundle on  $X$ . Let  $h'$  be a smooth Hermitian metric on  $L'$  with  $c_1(L, h) = c_1(L', h')$ . Then  $\Delta(\theta, \varphi)$  defined with respect to  $(L, h)$  is the same as the one defined with respect to  $(L', h')$ .

**Proof** From our construction, we may assume that  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current and  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities. After taking a birational resolution, it suffices to deal with the case where  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities along normal crossing  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisors  $E$ . By rescaling, we may also assume that  $E$  is a divisor. By Remark 11.3.1, we further reduce to the case without the singular potential  $\phi$ .

In this case, the assertion is proved in [LM09, Proposition 4.1].  $\square$

lma:indepvarphi

**Lemma 11.3.2** Let  $h'$  be another smooth Hermitian metric on  $L$ . Set  $\theta' = c_1(L, h')$ . Write  $\text{dd}^c f = \theta - \theta'$ . Let  $\varphi' = \varphi + f \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta')$ . Then

$$\Delta(\theta, \varphi) = \Delta(\theta', \varphi'). \quad (11.24)$$

{eq:DeltaDelta1}

**Proof** This is obvious as  $W(\theta, \varphi) = W(\theta', \varphi')$ .  $\square$

cor:Okocurrent

**Corollary 11.3.1** The partial Okounkov body  $\Delta(L, \phi)$  depends only on  $\text{dd}^c \phi$ , not on the explicit choices of  $L$ ,  $\phi$ ,  $h$ .

Thanks to this result, given a closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current  $T \in c_1(L)$  on  $X$  with  $\int_X T^n > 0$ , we can define  $\Delta(T)$  as  $\Delta(\theta, \varphi)$  if  $T = \theta + \text{dd}^c \varphi$  for some  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

**Proof** This is a direct consequence of Lemma 11.3.1 and Lemma 11.3.2.  $\square$

Let  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  denote the subset of  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  consisting of potentials  $\varphi$  such that  $\int_X \theta_\varphi^n > 0$ .

prop:IcompimplyDeltacomp

**Proposition 11.3.1** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Assume that  $\varphi \leq_I \psi$ , then*

$$\Delta(\theta, \varphi) \subseteq \Delta(\theta, \psi). \quad (11.25)$$

{eq:Deltacomp}

In particular, as by definition,  $\Delta(\theta, V_\theta) = \Delta(L)$ , we have

$$\Delta(\theta, \varphi) \subseteq \Delta(L).$$

**Proof** This follows from [Corollary 11.1.2](#).  $\square$

thm:Okoucont

**Theorem 11.3.1** *The Okounkov body map*

$$\Delta(\theta, \bullet) : (\text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}, d_S) \rightarrow (\mathcal{K}_n, d_n)$$

*is continuous.*

**Proof** Let  $\varphi_j \rightarrow \varphi$  be a  $d_S$ -convergent sequence in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . We want to show that

$$\Delta(\theta, \varphi_j) \xrightarrow{d_n} \Delta(\theta, \varphi). \quad (11.26)$$

{eq:Deltavjv}

By [Proposition 11.3.1](#), we may assume that all  $\varphi_j$ 's and  $\varphi$  are model potentials.

By [Theorem A.6.1](#) and [Proposition 6.2.3](#), we may assume that  $\varphi_j$  is either decreasing or increasing. By [Theorem 6.2.3](#), we may further assume that the  $\varphi_j$ 's are  $\mathcal{I}$ -model. In both cases, we claim that  $\Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi_j) \rightarrow \Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi)$ . In fact, we can compute their distance as follows

$$\begin{aligned} d(\Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi_j), \Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi)) &= \overline{\lim}_{k \rightarrow \infty} k^{-n} |h^0(X, L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k\varphi_j)) - h^0(X, L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k\varphi))| \\ &= \frac{1}{n!} \left| \int_X \theta_{\varphi_j}^n - \int_X \theta_\varphi^n \right|, \end{aligned}$$

where we applied [Theorem 7.3.1](#) at the last step. Then [Theorem 6.2.1](#) implies our claim. Hence, (11.26) follows from [Theorem 11.1.2](#).  $\square$

Although  $W(\theta, \varphi)$  and  $\Gamma_\nu(\theta, \varphi)$  are not birationally invariant, we could still show that the Okounkov body is.

prop:birinv0

**Proposition 11.3.2** *Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a birational resolution. Let  $(L, \phi)$  be a Hermitian big line bundle on  $X$  with positive volume, then*

$$\Delta(\pi^*L, \pi^*\phi) = \Delta(L, \phi).$$

Here we are using the same valuation  $\nu$  on the function field  $\mathbb{C}(Y) = \mathbb{C}(X)$  of  $Y$ .

**Proof** By [Proposition 3.2.5](#),  $P_\theta[\bullet]_{\mathcal{I}}$  commutes with birational pullbacks, we may assume that  $\varphi$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -model. By [Theorem 7.1.1](#), we can find a sequence  $\varphi^j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  with analytic singularities such that  $\varphi^j \xrightarrow{d_S} \varphi$ . It is clear that  $\pi^*\varphi^j \xrightarrow{d_S} \pi^*\varphi$ . By



**Theorem 11.3.1**, we may then reduce to the case where  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities. In this case, up to replacing  $Y$  by a further sequences of blowups, we may assume that  $\pi^*\varphi$  has analytic singularities along a normal crossing  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $D$ . It suffices to apply **Remark 11.3.1**.  $\square$

prop:suba

**Proposition 11.3.3** *Let  $(L', \phi')$  be another Hermitian big line bundle on  $X$  with positive volume. Then*

$$\Delta(L, \phi) + \Delta(L', \phi') \subseteq \Delta(L \otimes L', \phi \otimes \phi').$$

**Proof** Take a smooth metric  $h'$  on  $L'$ , let  $\theta' = c_1(L', h')$ . We identify  $\phi'$  with  $\varphi' \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta')$ . Then we need to show

$$\Delta(\theta, \varphi) + \Delta(\theta', \varphi') \subseteq \Delta(\theta + \theta', \varphi + \varphi'). \quad (11.27)$$

{eq:suba}

By **Theorem 7.1.1**, we can find  $\varphi^j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ ,  $\varphi'^j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta')$  such that

- (1)  $\varphi^j$  and  $\varphi'^j$  both have analytic singularities and have positive masses.
- (2)  $\varphi^j \xrightarrow{ds} \varphi$ ,  $\varphi'^j \xrightarrow{ds} \varphi'$ .

Then  $\varphi^j + \varphi'^j \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta + \theta')$  and  $\varphi^j + \varphi'^j \xrightarrow{ds} \varphi + \varphi'$  by **Theorem 6.2.2**. Thus, by **Theorem 11.3.1**, we may assume that  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  both have analytic singularities. Taking a birational resolution, we may further assume that they have analytic singularities along some normal crossing divisors. By **Remark 11.3.1**, we reduce to the case without singularities, in which case the result is well-known, see [LM09, The proof of Corollary 4.12] for example.  $\square$

thm:conc0ko

**Theorem 11.3.2** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Then for any  $t \in (0, 1)$ ,*

$$\Delta(\theta, t\varphi + (1-t)\psi) \supseteq t\Delta(\theta, \varphi) + (1-t)\Delta(\theta, \psi). \quad (11.28)$$

{eq:Deltaconcave}

**Proof** We may assume that  $t$  is rational as a consequence of **Theorem 11.3.1**. Similarly, by **Theorem 7.1.1**, we could reduce to the case where both  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  has analytic singularities. Taking a resolution, we may assume that  $\varphi$  (resp.  $\psi$ ) has analytic singularities along a normal crossing  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $E$  (resp.  $E'$ ). In this case, let  $N > 0$  be an integer such that  $Nt$  is an integer. Then for any  $s \in W_k^0(\theta, \varphi)$ ,  $r \in W_k^0(\theta, \psi)$ , we have

$$\left(s^t r^{1-t}\right)^N \in W_{Nk}^0(\theta, t\varphi + (1-t)\psi).$$

By **Theorem 11.1.1**, (11.28) follows.  $\square$

prop:res

**Proposition 11.3.4** *For any integer  $a > 0$ ,*

$$\Delta(a\theta, a\varphi) = a\Delta(\theta, \varphi).$$

**Proof** By **Theorem 11.3.1**, it suffices to treat the case where  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities. Taking a birational resolution, we may assume that  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities

along a normal crossing  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $E$ . By [Remark 11.3.1](#), we reduce to the case without the singularity  $\varphi$ , which is already proved in [\[LM09\]](#).  $\square$

In particular, if  $T$  is a closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current on  $X$  with  $\int_X T^n > 0$  and such that the cohomology class of  $T$  lies in the Néron–Severi group with rational coefficients, then we can define  $\Delta(T)$  as  $a^{-1}\Delta(aT)$  for a sufficiently divisible positive integer  $a$ .

We also need the following perturbation. Let  $A$  be an ample line bundle on  $X$ . Fix a smooth Hermitian metric  $h_A$  on  $A$  such that  $\omega := c_1(A, h_A)$  is a Kähler form on  $X$ . Then for any  $\delta \in \mathbb{Q}_{>0}$ , we can define

$$\Delta(\theta + \delta\omega, \varphi) := \Delta(\theta + \delta\omega + dd^c\varphi) = C^{-1}\Delta(C\theta + C\delta\omega, C\varphi),$$

where  $C \in \mathbb{N}_{>0}$  is any integer so that  $C\delta \in \mathbb{N}$ .

[prop:Deltapert](#)

**Proposition 11.3.5** *Under the above assumptions, as  $\delta \in \mathbb{Q}_{>0}$  decreases to 0,  $\Delta(\theta + \delta\omega, \varphi)$  is decreasing under inclusion with Hausdorff limit  $\Delta(\theta, \varphi)$ .*

**Proof** Let  $0 \leq \delta < \delta'$  be two rational numbers. Take  $C \in \mathbb{N}_{>0}$  divisible enough, so that  $C\delta$  and  $C\delta'$  are both integers. Then by [Proposition 11.3.3](#),

$$\Delta(C\theta + C\delta\omega, C\varphi) \subseteq \Delta(C\theta + C\delta'\omega, C\varphi).$$

It follows that

$$\Delta(\theta + \delta\omega, \varphi) \subseteq \Delta(\theta + \delta'\omega, \varphi).$$

On the other hand,

$$\text{vol } \Delta(\theta + \delta\omega, \varphi) = \frac{1}{n!} \int_X (\theta + \delta\omega)_{P_{\theta+\delta\omega}[\varphi]}^n = \frac{1}{n!} \int_X (\theta + \delta\omega)_{P_\theta[\varphi]}^n,$$

where we applied [Example 7.1.2](#). As  $\delta \rightarrow 0+$ , the right-hand side converges to

$$\text{vol } \Delta(\theta, \varphi) = \frac{1}{n!} \int_X \theta_{P_\theta[\varphi]}^n.$$

It follows that

$$\Delta(\theta, \varphi) = \bigcap_{\delta \in \mathbb{Q}_{>0}} \Delta(\theta + \delta\omega, \varphi).$$

### 11.3.3 The Hausdorff convergence property of partial Okounkov bodies

For each  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ , we introduce

$$\Delta_k(\theta, \varphi) := \text{Conv} \{k^{-1}\nu(f) : f \in H^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi))^\times\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n. \quad (11.29)$$

[{eq:Deltakthetaphi}](#)

Here  $\text{Conv}$  denotes the convex hull. The convex hull is a polytope if it is non-empty by [LM09, Lemma 1.4]. For large enough  $\Delta_k(\theta, \varphi)$  is non-empty thanks to [Theorem 7.3.1](#).

For later use, we introduce a twisted version as well. If  $T$  is a holomorphic line bundle on  $X$ , we introduce

$$\Delta_{k,T}(\theta, \varphi) := \text{Conv} \{k^{-1}\nu(f) : f \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes \mathcal{I}(k\varphi))^\times\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n.$$

We also write

$$\Delta_{k,T}(L) := \text{Conv} \{k^{-1}\nu(f) : f \in H^0(X, T \otimes L^k)^\times\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$$

and

$$\Delta_k(L) := \text{Conv} \{k^{-1}\nu(f) : f \in H^0(X, L^k)^\times\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n.$$

We write  $\mathcal{I}_\infty(\varphi) = \mathcal{I}_\infty(\phi)$  for the ideal sheaf on  $X$  locally consisting of holomorphic functions  $f$  such that  $|f|_\phi$  is locally bounded.

The main result is the following:

thm:HCP

**Theorem 11.3.3 (Hausdorff convergence property)** *Let  $T$  be a holomorphic line bundle on  $X$ . As  $k \rightarrow \infty$ , we have  $\Delta_{k,T}(\theta, \varphi) \xrightarrow{d_n} \Delta(\theta, \varphi)$ .*

Although we are only interested in the untwisted case, the proof given below requires twisted case.

We first extend [Theorem 11.1.1](#) to the twisted case.

prop-Deltaconvtwisted

**Proposition 11.3.6** *For any holomorphic line bundle  $T$  on  $X$ , as  $k \rightarrow \infty$*

$$\Delta_{k,T}(L) \xrightarrow{d_n} \Delta(L).$$

**Proof** As  $L$  is big, we can take  $k_0 \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  so that

- (1)  $T^{-1} \otimes L^{k_0}$  admits a non-zero global holomorphic section  $s_0$ ;
- (2)  $T \otimes L^{k_0}$  admits a non-zero global holomorphic section  $s_1$ .

Then for  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>k_0}$ , we have injective linear maps

$$H^0(X, L^{k-k_0}) \xrightarrow{\times s_1} H^0(X, T \otimes L^k) \xrightarrow{\times s_0} H^0(X, L^{k+k_0}).$$

It follows that

$$(k - k_0)\Delta_{k-k_0}(L) + \nu(s_1) \subseteq k\Delta_{k,T}(L) \subseteq (k + k_0)\Delta_{k+k_0}(L) - \nu(s_0).$$

By [Theorem 11.1.1](#), we conclude.  $\square$

lma-twistedHcp

**Lemma 11.3.3** *Let  $T$  be a holomorphic line bundle on  $X$ . Assume that  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities and  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current, then as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ ,*

$$\Delta_{k,T}(\theta, \varphi) \xrightarrow{d_n} \Delta(\theta, \varphi).$$

**Proof** Up to replacing  $X$  by a birational model and twisting  $T$  accordingly, we may assume that  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities along a normal crossing  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $D$ , c.f. **Proposition 11.3.2**. Take  $\epsilon \in (0, 1) \cap \mathbb{Q}$ . In this case, as in (11.20), for large enough  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  we have

$$H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I_\infty(k\varphi)) \subseteq H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) \subseteq H^0(X, T \otimes L^k \otimes I_\infty(k(1-\epsilon)\varphi)).$$

Take an integer  $N \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  so that  $ND$  is a divisor and  $N\epsilon$  is an integer.

Let  $\Delta'$  be the limit of a subsequence of  $(\Delta_{k,T}(\theta, \varphi))_k$ , say the sequence defined by the indices  $k_1, k_2, \dots$ . We want to show that  $\Delta' = \Delta(\theta, \varphi)$ .

There exists  $t \in \{0, 1, \dots, N-1\}$  such that  $k_i \equiv t$  modulo  $N$  for infinitely many  $i$ , up to replacing  $k_i$  by a subsequence, we may assume that  $k_i \equiv t$  modulo  $N$  for all  $i$ . Write  $k_i = Ng_i + t$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} H^0(X, T \otimes L^{-N+t} \otimes L^{N(g_i+1)} \otimes I_\infty(N(g_i+1)\varphi)) &\subseteq H^0(X, T \otimes L^{k_i} \otimes I(k_i\varphi)) \\ &\subseteq H^0(X, T \otimes L^t \otimes L^{Ng_i} \otimes I_\infty(g_iN(1-\epsilon)\varphi)). \end{aligned}$$

So

$$\begin{aligned} (g_i+1)\Delta_{g_i+1, T \otimes L^{-N+t}}(NL - ND) + N(g_i+1)v(D) &\subseteq (Ng_i+t)\Delta_{k,T}(\theta, \varphi) \\ &\subseteq g_i\Delta_{g_i, T \otimes L^t}(NL - N(1-\epsilon)D) + Ng_i(1-\epsilon)v(D). \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $i \rightarrow \infty$ , by **Proposition 11.3.6**,

$$\Delta(L - D) + v(D) \subseteq \Delta' \subseteq \Delta(L - (1-\epsilon)D) + (1-\epsilon)v(D).$$

Letting  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0+$ , we find that

$$\Delta(L - D) + v(D) = \Delta'.$$

It follows from **Theorem A.6.1** that

$$\Delta_{k,T}(\theta, \varphi) \xrightarrow{d_n} \Delta(L - D) + v(D) = \Delta(\theta, \varphi)$$

as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ . □

lma-Hausconvbetato0

**Lemma 11.3.4** Assume that  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current, then as  $\mathbb{Q} \ni \beta \rightarrow 0+$ , we have

$$\Delta((1-\beta)\theta, \varphi) \rightarrow \Delta(\theta, \varphi).$$

**Proof** By **Proposition 11.3.3**, we have

$$\Delta((1-\beta)\theta, \varphi) + \beta\Delta(L) \subseteq \Delta(\theta, \varphi).$$

In particular, if  $\Delta'$  is a limit of a subsequence of  $(\Delta((1-\beta)\theta, \varphi))_\beta$ , then

$$\Delta' \subseteq \Delta(\theta, \varphi).$$

But

$$\text{vol } \Delta' = \lim_{\beta \rightarrow 0^+} \Delta((1-\beta)\theta, \varphi) = \lim_{\beta \rightarrow 0^+} \int_X ((1-\beta)\theta + \text{dd}^c P^{(1-\beta)\theta}[\varphi]_I)^n = \int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c P^\theta[\varphi]_I)^n,$$

where the last step follows easily from [Theorem 9.2.1](#). It follows that  $\Delta' = \Delta(\theta, \varphi)$ . We conclude by [Theorem A.6.1](#).  $\square$

**Proof (Proof of [Theorem 11.3.3](#))** Fix a Kähler form  $\omega \geq \theta$  on  $X$ .

**Step 1.** We first handle the case where  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current, say  $\theta_\varphi \geq \beta_0 \omega$  for some  $\beta_0 \in (0, 1)$ .

Take a decreasing quasi-equisingular approximation  $\varphi_j$  of  $\varphi$ . Up to replacing  $\beta_0$  by  $\beta_0/2$ , we may assume that  $\theta_{\varphi_j} \geq \beta_0 \omega$  for all  $j \geq 1$ .

Let  $\Delta'$  be a limit of a subsequence of  $(\Delta_{k,T}(\theta, \varphi))_k$ . Let us say the indices of the subsequence are  $k_1 < k_2 < \dots$ . By [Theorem A.6.1](#), it suffices to show that  $\Delta' = \Delta(\theta, \varphi)$ .

As  $[\varphi] \leq [\varphi_j]$  for each  $j \geq 1$ , we have  $\Delta' \subseteq \Delta(\theta, \varphi_j)$  by [Lemma 11.3.3](#). Letting  $j \rightarrow \infty$ , we find

$$\Delta' \subseteq \Delta(\theta, \varphi).$$

In particular, it suffices to prove that

$$\text{vol } \Delta' \geq \text{vol } \Delta(\theta, \varphi).$$

Take  $\beta \in (0, \beta_0) \cap \mathbb{Q}$ . Write  $\beta = p/q$  with  $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ . Observe that for any  $j \geq 1$ ,

$$\theta_{\varphi_j} \geq \beta \omega \geq \beta \theta.$$

Namely,  $\varphi_j \in \text{PSH}(X, (1-\beta)\theta)$ . Similarly,  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, (1-\beta)\theta)$ . By [Lemma 11.3.4](#), it suffices to argue that

$$\text{vol } \Delta' \geq \text{vol } \Delta((1-\beta)\theta, \varphi). \quad (11.30)$$

{eq:volDeltatoprove}

For this purpose, we are free to replace  $k_i$ 's by a subsequence, so we may assume that  $k_i \equiv a$  modulo  $q$  for all  $i \geq 1$ , where  $a \in \{0, 1, \dots, q-1\}$ . We write  $k_i = g_i q + a$ . Observe that for each  $i \geq 1$ ,

$$H^0(X, T \otimes L^{k_i} \otimes I(k_i \varphi)) \supseteq H^0(X, T \otimes L^{-q+a} \otimes L^{g_i q + a} \otimes I((g_i q + a)\varphi)).$$

Up to replacing  $T$  by  $T \otimes L^{-q+a}$ , we may therefore assume that  $a = 0$ .

By [\[DX21, Lemma 4.2\]](#), we can find  $k' \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  such that for all  $k \geq k'$ , there is  $v_{\beta,k} \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  satisfying

- (1)  $P[\varphi]_I \geq (1-\beta)\varphi_k + \beta v_{\beta,k}$ ;
- (2)  $v_{\beta,k}$  has positive mass.

Fix  $k \geq k'$ . It suffices to show that

$$\Delta((1-\beta)\theta, \varphi_k) + v' \subseteq \Delta' \quad (11.31)$$

{eq:DeltatransinDeltaprime}

for some  $v' \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . In fact, if this is true, we have

$$\text{vol } \Delta' \geq \text{vol } \Delta((1 - \beta)\theta, \varphi_k).$$

Letting  $k \rightarrow \infty$  and applying [Theorem 11.3.1](#), we conclude (11.30).

It remains to prove (11.31). We will fix  $k \geq k'$ . Let  $\pi : Y \rightarrow X$  be a log resolution of the singularities of  $\varphi_k$ . By the proof of [Eq. \(7.4\)](#), there is  $j_0 = j_0(\beta, k) \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  such that for any  $j \geq j_0$ , we can find a non-zero section  $s_j \in H^0(Y, \pi^* L^{pj} \otimes I(jp\pi^* v_{\beta, k}))$  such that we get an injective linear map

$$H^0(Y, \pi^* T \otimes K_{Y/X} \otimes \pi^* L^{(q-p)j} \otimes I(jq\pi^* \varphi_k)) \xrightarrow{\times s_j} H^0(X, T \otimes L^{jq} \otimes I(jq\varphi)).$$

In particular, when  $j = k_i$  for some  $i$  large enough, we then find

$$\Delta_{k_i, \pi^* T \otimes K_{Y/X}}((1 - \beta)q\pi^* \theta, q\pi^* \varphi_k) + (k_i)^{-1} v(s_{k_i}) \subseteq q\Delta_{k_i, T}(\theta, \varphi).$$

We observe that  $(k_i)^{-1} v(s_{k_i})$  is bounded as both convex bodies appearing in this equation are bounded when  $i$  varies. Then by [Lemma 11.3.3](#), there is a vector  $v' \in \mathbb{R}^n$  such that

$$\Delta((1 - \beta)\pi^* \theta, \pi^* \varphi_k) + v' \subseteq \Delta'.$$

By [Proposition 11.3.2](#), we find (11.31).

**Step 2.** Next we handle the general case.

Let  $\Delta'$  be the limit of a subsequence of  $(\Delta_{k, T}(\theta, \varphi))_k$ , say the subsequence with indices  $k_1 < k_2 < \dots$ . By [Theorem A.6.1](#), it suffices to prove that  $\Delta' = \Delta(\theta, \varphi)$ .

Take  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that

- (1)  $\theta_\psi$  is a Kähler current;
- (2)  $\psi \leq \varphi$ .

The existence of  $\psi$  follows from [Lemma 2.3.2](#).

Then for any  $\epsilon \in \mathbb{Q} \cap (0, 1)$ ,

$$\Delta_{k, T}(\theta, \varphi) \supseteq \Delta_{k, T}(\theta, (1 - \epsilon)\varphi + \epsilon\psi)$$

for all  $k$ . It follows from Step 1 that

$$\Delta' \supseteq \Delta(\theta, (1 - \epsilon)\varphi + \epsilon\psi).$$

Letting  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$  and applying [Theorem 11.3.1](#), we have  $\Delta' \supseteq \Delta(\theta, \varphi)$ . It remains to establish that

$$\text{vol } \Delta' \leq \text{vol } \Delta(\theta, \varphi). \tag{11.32}$$

{eq:Deltavolumeupp}

For this purpose, we are free to replace  $k_1 < k_2 < \dots$  by a subsequence. Fix  $q > 0$ , we may then assume that  $k_i \equiv a$  modulo  $q$  for all  $i \geq 1$  for some  $a \in \{0, 1, \dots, q-1\}$ .

We write  $k_i = g_i q + a$ . Observe that

$$H^0(X, T \otimes L^{k_i} \otimes I(k_i \varphi)) \subseteq H^0(X, T \otimes L^a \otimes L^{g_i q} \otimes I(g_i q \varphi)).$$

Up to replacing  $T$  by  $T \otimes L^a$ , we may assume that  $a = 0$ .

Take a very ample line bundle  $H$  on  $X$  and fix a Kähler form  $\omega \in c_1(H)$ , take a non-zero section  $s \in H^0(X, H)$ .

We have an injective linear map

$$H^0(X, T \otimes L^{jq} \otimes I(jq\varphi)) \xrightarrow{\times s^j} H^0(X, T \otimes H^j \otimes L^{jq} \otimes I(jq\varphi))$$

for each  $j \geq 1$ . In particular, for each  $i \geq 1$ ,

$$k_i \Delta_{k_i, T}(q\theta, q\varphi) + k_i \nu(s) \subseteq k_i \Delta_{k_i, T}(\omega + q\theta, q\varphi).$$

Letting  $i \rightarrow \infty$ , by Step 1, we have

$$q\Delta' + \nu(s) \subseteq \Delta(\omega + q\theta, q\varphi).$$

So

$$\text{vol } \Delta' \leq \text{vol } \Delta(q^{-1}\omega + \theta, \varphi) = \int_X (q^{-1}\omega + \theta + \text{dd}^c P^{q^{-1}\omega + \theta}[\varphi]_T)^n.$$

By [Example 7.1.2](#),

$$\text{vol } \Delta' \leq \int_X (q^{-1}\omega + \theta + \text{dd}^c P^\theta[\varphi]_T)^n.$$

Letting  $q \rightarrow \infty$ , we conclude [\(11.32\)](#).  $\square$

### 11.3.4 Recover Lelong numbers from partial Okounkov bodies

lma: qesana

**Lemma 11.3.5** *Suppose that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current. Let  $\varphi^j$  be a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$ . Then  $\nu(\varphi^j, E) \rightarrow \nu(\varphi, E)$  for any prime divisor  $E$  over  $X$ .*

This result is essentially [\[Xia20, Lemma 2.2\]](#), proved under slightly different assumptions. We reproduce the argument for the convenience of the readers.

**Proof** Fix  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ ,  $\delta \in \mathbb{Q}_{>0}$ , take  $j_0 > 0$ , so that when  $j > j_0$ ,  $I((1 + \delta)k\varphi^j) \subseteq I(k\varphi)$ . When  $j > j_0$ , we get

$$\frac{1}{k} \text{ord}_E(I(k\varphi)) \leq \frac{1}{k} \text{ord}_E(I((1 + \delta)k\varphi^j)).$$

By Fekete's lemma,

$$\nu(\varphi^j, E) = \sup_{k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}} \frac{1}{k} \text{ord}_E(I(k\varphi^j)).$$

So

$$\frac{1}{k} \operatorname{ord}_E(I(k\varphi)) \leq (1 + \delta) \nu(\varphi^j, E).$$

Take sup with respect to  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ , we get

$$\nu(\varphi, E) \leq (1 + \delta) \nu(\varphi^j, E).$$

Letting  $j \rightarrow \infty$  and then  $\delta \rightarrow 0+$ , we get

$$\nu(\varphi, E) \leq \lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} \nu(\varphi^j, E).$$

The reverse inequality is trivial.  $\square$

thm:nuOk

**Theorem 11.3.4** *Let  $E$  be a prime divisor on  $X$ . Let  $Y_\bullet$  be an admissible flag with  $E = Y_1$ . Then*

$$\nu(\varphi, E) = \min_{x \in \Delta(\theta, \varphi)} x_1. \quad (11.33)$$

{eq:numinOk}

Here  $x_1$  denotes the first component of  $x$ . The generic Lelong number  $\nu(\varphi, E)$  means the minimum of  $\nu(\varphi, x)$  for various  $x \in E$ .

**Proof** We first reduce to the case where  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current. Let  $\psi \leq \varphi$ ,  $\theta_\psi$  is a Kähler current. Then by (11.33) applied to  $\varphi_\epsilon := (1 - \epsilon)\varphi + \epsilon\psi$ , we have

$$\nu(\varphi_\epsilon, E) = \min_{x \in \Delta(\theta, \varphi_\epsilon)} x_1.$$

Let  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0+$  using Theorem 11.3.1, we conclude (11.33).

Similarly, taking a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$  and applying Lemma 11.3.5, we easily reduce to the case where  $\varphi$  also has analytic singularities. Replacing  $X$  by a birational model, we may assume that  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities along a simple normal crossing  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $F$ . Perturbing  $L$  by an ample  $\mathbb{Q}$ -line bundle by Proposition 11.3.5, we may assume that  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current. Finally, by rescaling, we may assume that  $F$  is a divisor and  $L$  is a line bundle and  $L - F$  is ample.

By Theorem 11.3.3, we know that

$$\min_{x \in \Delta(\theta, \varphi)} x_1 = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \min_{x \in \Delta_k(\theta, \varphi)} x_1.$$

By definition,

$$\min_{x \in \Delta_k(\theta, \varphi)} x_1 = k^{-1} \operatorname{ord}_E H^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)).$$

It remains to show that

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} k^{-1} \operatorname{ord}_E H^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} k^{-1} \operatorname{ord}_E I(k\varphi). \quad (11.34)$$

{eq:templ}

The  $\geq$  direction is trivial, we prove the converse. Observe that

$$H^0(X, L^k \otimes I(k\varphi)) = H^0(X, L^k \otimes \mathcal{O}_X(-kF)), \quad I(k\varphi) = \mathcal{O}_X(-kF).$$

As  $L - F$  is ample, for large enough  $k$ , we have



$$\mathrm{ord}_E H^0(X, L^k \otimes \mathcal{O}_X(-kF)) = \mathrm{ord}_E(kF).$$

Thus, (11.34) is clear.  $\square$

cor:Deltacontimplyvarphi

**Corollary 11.3.2** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \mathrm{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . If*

$$\Delta(\pi^*\theta, \pi^*\varphi) \subseteq \Delta(\pi^*\theta, \pi^*\psi)$$

*for all birational models  $\pi : Y \rightarrow X$  and all admissible flags on  $Y$ , then  $\varphi \leq_I \psi$ .*

**Proof** In view of Theorem 11.3.4, the assumption implies the following: for any prime divisor  $E$  over  $X$ , we have  $v(\varphi, E) \geq v(\psi, E)$ . This implies  $\varphi \leq_I \psi$ .  $\square$

cor:numin

**Corollary 11.3.3** *Let  $E$  be a prime divisor over  $X$ . Then*

$$v(V_\theta, E) = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{k} \mathrm{ord}_E H^0(X, L^k). \quad (11.35)$$

**Proof** This follows from Theorem 11.3.4 and the fact that  $\Delta(\theta, V_\theta) = \Delta(L)$ .  $\square$

## 11.4 Transcendental partial Okounkov bodies

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$ .

### 11.4.1 The traditional approach to the Okounkov body problem

Fix a smooth flag  $Y_\bullet$  on  $X$ .

**Definition 11.4.1** Let  $\alpha$  be a big cohomology class on  $X$ .

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha) = \overline{\{v(S) : S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha), S \text{ has gentle analytic singularities}\}}. \quad (11.36)$$

{eq:twodefspob}

The results of [DRWNXZ, DRWN<sup>+</sup>23] can be summarized as follows:

thm:Okounkovtranmain

**Theorem 11.4.1** *For any big cohomology class  $\alpha$  on  $X$ , the set  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  is a convex body satisfying the following properties:*

(1) *we have*

$$\mathrm{vol} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha) = \frac{1}{n!} \mathrm{vol} \alpha;$$

(2) *For any Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ , we have*

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha + [\omega]);$$

(3) *Given another big cohomology class  $\alpha'$  on  $X$ , we have*

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha) + \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha') \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha + \alpha');$$

(4) Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism with  $Y$  being a Kähler manifold. Assume that  $(W_\bullet, g)$  is the lifting of  $Y_\bullet$  to  $Y$ , then

$$\Delta_{W_\bullet}(\pi^*\alpha) = \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha)g;$$

(5)  $\alpha \mapsto \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha)$  is continuous in the big cone with respect to the Hausdorff metric;

(6) For any small enough  $t > 0$ , we have

$$\{y \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1} : (t, y) \in \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\beta)\} = \Delta_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}((\beta - t\{Y_1\})|_{Y_1}).$$

(7) The map  $\xi \mapsto \Delta'_{Y_\bullet}(\xi)$  from the big cone of  $X$  to  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is continuous with respect to the Hausdorff metric.

## 11.4.2 Definitions of partial Okounkov bodies

Fix a smooth flag  $Y_\bullet$  on  $X$ . Let  $\theta$  be a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing a big cohomology class  $\alpha$ .

Let  $T = \theta_\varphi \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$ . We shall define a convex body  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ , which is also written as  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \varphi)$ . This convex body is called the *partial Okounkov body* of  $T$  with respect to the flag  $Y_\bullet$ .

### 11.4.2.1 The case of analytic singularities

def:POBanalsing

**Definition 11.4.2** When  $T$  is a Kähler current with analytic singularities, we take a modification  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  so that

$$\pi^*T = [D] + \beta, \tag{11.37}$$

{eq:resolveanalytic}

where  $D$  is an effective  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor on  $Y$  and  $\beta$  is a closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current with bounded potential and the lifting  $(Z_\bullet, g)$  of  $Y_\bullet$  to  $Y$  exists. This is possible by [Theorem 1.6.1](#) and [Theorem 11.2.1](#).

Define

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) := \Delta_{Z_\bullet}(\{\beta\})g^{-1} + \nu_{Z_\bullet}([D])g^{-1}.$$

**Lemma 11.4.1** The convex body  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)$  defined in [Definition 11.4.2](#) is independent of the choice of  $\pi$ .

**Proof** Take another map  $\pi': Y' \rightarrow X$  with the same properties. We want to show that  $\pi$  and  $\pi'$  defines the same  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)$ . We may assume that  $\pi'$  dominates  $\pi$  through  $p: Y' \rightarrow Y$ . We take  $D$  and  $\beta$  as in [\(11.37\)](#). Then

$$\pi'^*T = [p^*D] + p^*\beta.$$

Write  $(Z_\bullet, g)$  and  $(Z'_\bullet, g')$  for the liftings of  $Y_\bullet$  to  $Y$  and  $Y'$  respective. We need to prove that

$$\Delta_{Z_\bullet}([\beta])g^{-1} + \nu_{Z_\bullet}([D])g^{-1} = \Delta_{Z'_\bullet}([p^*\beta])g'^{-1} + \nu_{Z'_\bullet}([p^*D])g'^{-1}.$$

This follows [Theorem 11.4.1](#), [Proposition 11.2.4](#) and [Proposition 11.2.3](#).  $\square$

Note that from the above proof, we could describe the bimeromorphic behaviour of  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)$  as follows:

lma:liftOkounana

**Lemma 11.4.2** *Let  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$  be a Kähler current with analytic singularities. Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism and  $(W_\bullet, g)$  be the lifting of  $Y_\bullet$  to  $Y$ . Then*

$$\Delta_{W_\bullet}(\pi^*T) = \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)g.$$

lma:Okounkovanalycomp

**Lemma 11.4.3** *Assume that  $T, S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$  are two currents with analytic singularities and  $T \leq S$ , then*

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(S) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha).$$

Moreover,

$$\text{vol } \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) = \frac{1}{n!} \int_X T^n. \quad (11.38)$$

{eq:volpobanaly}

**Proof** We first show that

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(S).$$

From [Lemma 11.4.2](#), we may assume that  $T$  and  $S$  have log singularities along effective  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisors  $E$  and  $F$  respectively. By assumption,  $E \geq F$ . Replacing  $T$  and  $S$  by  $T - [E]$  and  $S - [E]$  respectively, we may assume that  $E = 0$ .

In this case, we need to show that

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha) \supseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha - \{F\}) + \nu_{Y_\bullet}([F]),$$

which is obvious.

Next we prove that

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha).$$

By [Lemma 11.4.2](#) and [Theorem 11.4.1](#) again, we may assume that  $T$  has log singularities. We take  $D$  and  $\beta$  as in [\(11.37\)](#). We need to show that

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha - \{D\}) + \nu_{Y_\bullet}([D]) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha),$$

which is again obvious.

Finally, [\(11.38\)](#) follows immediately from [Theorem 11.4.1](#).  $\square$

### 11.4.2.2 The case of Kähler currents

def:POBKahcurr

**Definition 11.4.3** Let  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$  be a Kähler current. Take a quasi-equisingular approximation  $T_j \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$  of  $T$ . Then we define

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) := \bigcap_{j=1}^{\infty} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T_j).$$

**Lemma 11.4.4** *The convex body  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)$  in Definition 11.4.3 is independent of the choices of the  $T_j$ 's.*

In particular, if  $T$  also has analytic singularities, then the  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)$ 's defined in Definition 11.4.3 and in Definition 11.4.2 coincide.

**Proof** Let  $S_j \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$  be another quasi-equisingular approximation of  $T$ . By Proposition 1.6.3, for any small rational  $\epsilon > 0$ ,  $j > 0$ , we can find  $k > 0$  so that

$$S_k \leq (1 - \epsilon)T_j.$$

It is more convenient to use the language of  $\theta$ -psh functions at this point. Let  $\psi_k$  (resp.  $\varphi_k$ ) denote the potentials in  $\text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  corresponding to  $S_k$  (resp.  $T_k$ ). Note that  $\psi_k$  and  $\varphi_k$  are unique up to additive constants.

By Lemma 11.4.3,

$$\bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \psi_k) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, (1 - \epsilon)\varphi_j).$$

On the other hand, observe that

$$\bigcap_{\epsilon \in \mathbb{Q}_{>0} \text{ small enough}} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, (1 - \epsilon)\varphi_j) = \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \varphi_j).$$

In fact, the  $\supseteq$  direction follows from Lemma 11.4.3, so it suffices to show that the two sides have the same volume. This follows from (11.38).

It follows that

$$\bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \psi_k) \subseteq \bigcap_{j=1}^{\infty} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \varphi_j).$$

The other inclusion follows by symmetry.  $\square$

The same argument shows that

cor:Kahlercurrentcase

**Corollary 11.4.1** *Suppose that  $T, S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$  are two Kähler currents satisfying  $T \leq_I S$ . Then*

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(S) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha).$$

**Proposition 11.4.1** *Let  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$  be a Kähler current. Then*

$$\text{vol } \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) = \frac{1}{n!} \text{vol } T. \quad (11.39)$$

{eq:vol0kocur}

**Proof** Note that  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T_j)$  is decreasing in  $j$ , as follows from Lemma 11.4.3. Our assertion follows from (11.38) and 6.2.5.  $\square$

lma:Okomonotone

**Lemma 11.4.5** *Let  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$  be a Kähler current and  $\omega$  be a Kähler form on  $X$ . Then*

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T + \omega).$$

**Proof** Taking quasi-equisingular approximations, we reduce immediately to the case where  $T$  has analytic singularities. By Lemma 11.4.2, we may assume that  $T$  has log singularities. Write  $T = [D] + \beta$  for some effective  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $D$  on  $X$  and some closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current  $\beta$  with bounded potential. By definition again, it suffices to show that

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}([\beta]) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}([\beta + \omega]),$$

which is clear by definition.  $\square$

### 11.4.2.3 The general case

**Definition 11.4.4** Let  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$ . Take a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ , we define

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) = \bigcap_{j=1}^{\infty} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T + j^{-1}\omega). \quad (11.40)$$

{eq:DeltaTgeneral}

This definition is clearly independent of the choice of  $\omega$  by Lemma 11.4.5. Moreover, it clearly extends Definition 11.4.3 and Definition 11.4.2.

The main properties of  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)$  are summarized as follows:

thm:pobmain

**Theorem 11.4.2** *The convex bodies  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)$ 's satisfies the following properties:*

(1) *Suppose that  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$ . We have*

$$\text{vol } \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) = \frac{1}{n!} \text{vol } T; \quad (11.41)$$

{eq:volpobgeneral}

(2) *For  $T, S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$  satisfying  $T \leq_I S$ , we have*

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(S) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha);$$

(3) *For any current  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$  with minimal singularities, we have*

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) = \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha);$$

(4)  *$T \mapsto \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)$  is a continuous map  $\mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}_n$ , where we endow the  $d_S$ -pseudometric on  $\mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$  and the Hausdorff topology on  $\mathcal{K}_n$ ;*

(5) *Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism with  $Y$  being a Kähler manifold. Assume that  $(W_\bullet, g)$  is the lifting of  $Y_\bullet$  to  $Y$ , then for any  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$ ,*

$$\Delta_{W_\bullet}(\pi^*T) = \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)g;$$

(6) *For  $T, S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$ , we have*

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) + \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(S) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T + S). \quad (11.42)$$

{eq:pobadditiv}

**Proof** 1. By (11.40) and (11.39), for any Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ ,

$$\text{vol } \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) = \lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T + j^{-1}\omega) = \frac{1}{n!} \lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} \text{vol}(T + j^{-1}\omega).$$

The right-hand side is computed in Proposition 7.2.3. Hence, (11.41) follows.

2. Fix a Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . By (11.40), for each  $j \geq 1$ ,

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T + j^{-1}\omega) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(S + j^{-1}\omega) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha + j^{-1}[\omega]).$$

It remains to show that

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha) = \bigcap_{j=1}^{\infty} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha + j^{-1}[\omega]).$$

The  $\subseteq$  direction is clear. Comparing the volumes using Theorem 11.4.1, we conclude that equality holds.

3. This follows from 1 and 2.

4. Let  $T_j$  be a sequence in  $\mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$  converging to  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$  with respect to  $d_S$ . We want to show that  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T_j) \rightarrow \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)$  with respect to the Hausdorff metric. By Proposition 6.2.3 and 2, we may assume that the singularity type of  $T_j$  is either increasing or decreasing. In both cases, the continuity follows from (1).

(5) Take a current  $S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$  such that  $S \leq T$ . The existence of  $S$  is proved in Lemma 2.3.2. Considering the linear interpolation between  $S$  and  $T$  and applying (4), we reduce to the case where  $T$  is a Kähler current. Let  $T_j$  be a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $T$ . We know that  $\pi^*T_j \xrightarrow{d_S} \pi^*T$ . By (4) again, it suffices to treat the case where  $T$  has analytic singularities, which is exactly Lemma 11.4.2.

(6) By (11.40), in order to prove (11.42), we may assume that  $T$  and  $S$  are both Kähler currents. Take quasi-equisingular approximations  $(T_j)_j$  and  $(S_j)_j$  of  $T$  and  $S$  respectively. By Theorem 6.2.2,  $T_j + S_j \xrightarrow{d_S} T + S$ . By (4), we may therefore assume that  $T$  and  $S$  have analytic singularities. Replacing  $X$  by a suitable modification, we may assume that  $T$  and  $S$  both have log singularities, say

$$T = [D] + \beta, \quad S = [D'] + \beta',$$

where  $D$  and  $D'$  are  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisors on  $X$  and  $\beta$  and  $\beta'$  are closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -currents with bounded potentials. We need to show that

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\{\beta\}) + \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\{\beta'\}) + \nu_{Y_\bullet}([D]) + \nu_{Y_\bullet}([D']) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\{\beta + \beta'\}) + \nu_{Y_\bullet}([D + D']).$$

By Proposition 11.2.2, this is equivalent to

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\{\beta\}) + \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\{\beta'\}) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\{\beta + \beta'\}),$$

which is already proved in [Theorem 11.4.1](#).  $\square$

**Corollary 11.4.2** *Assume that  $L$  is a big line bundle on  $X$  and  $h$  is a plurisubharmonic metric on  $L$  with positive volume. Then*

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\mathrm{dd}^c h) = \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(L, h). \quad (11.43)$$

[\{eq:tranOkounandalgOkoun\}](#)

**Proof** We may assume that  $h$  has positive mass and is  $\mathcal{I}$ -good. By the  $d_S$ -continuity of both sides of (11.43) as proved in [Theorem 11.4.2](#) and [Theorem 11.3.1](#), together with [Theorem 7.1.1](#), we may assume that  $\mathrm{dd}^c h$  has analytic singularities.

In this case, using the birational invariance of both sides of (11.43) as proved in [Proposition 11.3.2](#) and [Theorem 11.4.2](#), we may assume that  $\mathrm{dd}^c h$  has log singularities. In this case, the equality (11.43) holds by construction.  $\square$

**Definition 11.4.5** Let  $\alpha$  be a pseudoeffective cohomology class on  $X$ . Then we define the *Okounkov body* of  $\alpha$  with respect to  $Y_\bullet$  as

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha) = \overline{\{v(S) : S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)\}}.$$

### 11.4.3 The valutive characterization

**Theorem 11.4.3** *Let  $\alpha$  be a big cohomology class on  $X$  and  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$ . Then*

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha) = \overline{\{v(S) : S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha), S \leq_{\mathcal{I}} T\}}.$$

[\lma:Kahlerclassokounrest](#)

**Lemma 11.4.6** *Let  $\beta$  be a nef class on  $X$ . Then*

$$\{y \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1} : (0, y) \in \Delta'_{Y_\bullet}(\beta)\} = \Delta'_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}(\beta|_{Y_1}). \quad (11.44)$$

[\{eq:Deltaresttox10\}](#)

**Proof Step 1.** We first reduce to the case where  $\beta$  is a Kähler class.

Take a Kähler class  $\alpha$  on  $X$ . It follows from [Theorem 11.4.1](#) that

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\beta) = \bigcap_{\epsilon > 0} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\beta + \epsilon \alpha)$$

and

$$\Delta_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}(\beta|_{Y_1}) = \bigcap_{\epsilon > 0} \Delta_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}(\beta|_{Y_1} + \epsilon \alpha|_{Y_1}).$$

So it suffices to prove (11.44) with  $\beta + \epsilon \alpha$  in place of  $\beta$ .

**Step 2.** The  $\supseteq$  direction follows from the extension theorem [Theorem 1.6.3](#). To prove the other direction, recall that by [Theorem 11.4.1](#), for  $t > 0$  small enough, we have

$$\{y \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1} : (t, y) \in \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\beta)\} = \Delta_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}((\beta - t\{Y_1\})|_{Y_1}).$$

As  $t \rightarrow 0+$ , the right-hand side converges to  $\Delta_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}(\beta|_{Y_1})$  with respect to the Hausdorff metric, while the left-hand side converges to

$$\{y \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1} : (0, y) \in \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\beta)\}$$

by [Lemma A.6.1](#). We conclude our assertion.  $\square$

lma:slicebob

**Lemma 11.4.7** *Let  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$  be a Kähler current. Assume that  $\nu(T, Y_1) = 0$ , then*

$$\{y \in \mathbb{R}^{n-1} : (0, y) \in \Delta'_{Y_\bullet}(T)\} = \Delta'_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}(\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T)). \quad (11.45)$$

{eq:Deltaslice}

Here we take a representative  $\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T) \in \mathcal{Z}_+(Y_1, \alpha|_{Y_1})$ .

Note that  $\Delta_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}(\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T))$  is independent of the choice of the representative  $\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T)$ .

**Proof Step 1.** We first handle the case where  $T$  has analytic singularities. Let  $\pi: Z \rightarrow X$  be a modification such that

- (1)  $Y_\bullet$  admits a lifting  $(W_\bullet, g)$ ;
- (2)  $\pi^*T = [D] + \beta$ , where  $D$  is an effective  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor on  $Z$  and  $\beta$  is semi-positive with bounded potential.

This is possible by [Theorem 1.6.1](#) and [Theorem 11.2.1](#).

By [Lemma 8.2.1](#),

$$\Pi^* \text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T) \sim_P \text{Tr}_{W_1}(\pi^*T),$$

where  $\Pi: W_1 \rightarrow Y_1$  is the restriction of  $\pi$ . It follows from [Theorem 11.4.2](#) that

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_{W_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W_n}(\text{Tr}_{W_1}(\pi^*T)) &= \Delta_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}(\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T)) \text{cor}(Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n, \Pi), \\ \Delta_{W_\bullet}(\pi^*T) &= \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)g. \end{aligned}$$

Taking (11.11) into account, we find that it suffices to show that

$$\Delta_{W_\bullet}(\pi^*T) \cap \{x_1 = 0\} = \Delta_{W_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq W_n}(\text{Tr}_{W_1}(\pi^*T)).$$

We may assume that  $\pi$  is the identity map. Then we have

$$T = [D] + \beta, \quad T|_{Y_1} = [D]|_{Y_1} + \beta|_{Y_1}.$$

Note that  $[D]|_{Y_1} = [D']$ , where  $D'$  is the pullback of  $D$  along  $Y_1 \hookrightarrow X$  as a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -Cartier divisor.

In particular,

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta'_{Y_\bullet}(T) &= \Delta'_{Y_\bullet}(\{\beta\}) + \nu_{Y_\bullet}([D]), \\ \Delta'_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}(T|_{Y_1}) &= \Delta'_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}(\{\beta\}|_{Y_1}) + \nu_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}([D]|_{Y_1}). \end{aligned}$$

So it suffices to show that

$$\nu_{Y_\bullet}([D]) \cap \{x_1 = 0\} = \Delta'_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}(\{\beta\}|_{Y_1}),$$

which is exactly [Lemma 11.4.6](#).



**Step 2.** Next we consider the case where  $T$  is a Kähler current. Take a quasi-equisingular approximation  $T_j \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$  of  $T$ . From Step 1, we know that

$$\Delta'_{Y_\bullet}(T_j) \cap \{x_1 = 0\} = \Delta'_{Y_1 \supseteq \dots \supseteq Y_n}(\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T_j)).$$

Letting  $j \rightarrow \infty$  and applying [Theorem 11.4.2](#), we conclude [\(11.45\)](#).  $\square$

thm:KahcurrminOkoun

**Theorem 11.4.4** Assume that  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$  is a Kähler current. We have

$$\min_{\text{lex}} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) = \nu_{Y_\bullet}(T). \quad (11.46)$$

{eq:minOkounkov}

Here the minimum is with respect to the lexicographic order.

*Proof* By [Theorem 11.4.2](#), we know that

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1]) + \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1]) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T). \quad (11.47)$$

{eq:Deltatrans}

Observe that by definition,

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1]) = (\nu(T, Y_1), 0, \dots, 0).$$

Comparing the volumes of both sides of [\(11.47\)](#) using [Theorem 11.4.2](#) and [Proposition 7.2.3](#), we find that equality holds:

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1]) + (\nu(T, Y_1), 0, \dots, 0) = \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T).$$

Replacing  $T$  by  $T - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1]$ , we may therefore assume that  $\nu(T, Y_1) = 0$ . It suffices to apply [Lemma 11.4.7](#).  $\square$

cor:valuationcurrentinPOB

**Corollary 11.4.3** For any  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$ ,

$$\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T) \in \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha).$$

*Proof* When  $T$  is a Kähler current, this follows from [Theorem 11.4.4](#).

In general, by definition,  $\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T) = \nu_{Y_\bullet}(T + \omega)$  for any Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . It follows that

$$\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T) \in \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T + \omega)$$

for any Kähler form  $\omega$ . It follows that  $\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T) \in \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)$ .  $\square$

cor:Okounkovvalua1

**Corollary 11.4.4** We have

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha) = \overline{\{\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T) : T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)\}}.$$

The advantage of this formula is that  $\{\nu_{Y_\bullet}(T) : T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)\}$  is already convex. So we have a valuative interpretation for each interior point of the transcendental Okounkov body.

thm:Deltapartialint

**Theorem 11.4.5** For any  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$ ,

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) = \overline{\{v_{Y_\bullet}(S) : S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha), S \leq_I T\}}. \quad (11.48)$$

 $\{\text{eq:DeltaTequalallval}\}$ 

We expect that the closure operation is not necessary. This would require a further extension of the extension theorem proved in [DRWN<sup>+</sup>23], which seems to be out of reach for the time being.

**Proof** The  $\supseteq$  direction follows from Corollary 11.4.3.

Let us write

$$D_{Y_\bullet}(T) = \{v_{Y_\bullet}(S) : S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha), S \leq_I T\}$$

for the time being.

**Step 1.** Assume that  $T$  has analytic singularities. We have

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) \supseteq \overline{D_{Y_\bullet}(T)} \supseteq \overline{\{v_{Y_\bullet}(S) : \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha) \ni S \text{ has gental analytic singularities, } S \leq T\}}.$$

It follows easily from Theorem 11.4.1 that the volume of the right-hand side is equal to the volume of  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T)$ , so (11.48) holds.

**Step 2.** Assume that  $T$  is a Kähler current. Take a quasi-equisingular approximation  $T_j \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$  of  $T$ . Next we use the language of psh functions. Take a smooth form  $\theta$  representing  $\alpha$  and let  $\varphi_j, \varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  be the potentials of  $T_j, T$ .

We may assume that  $\varphi$  is  $I$ -model. For each  $\beta \in (0, 1)$  and large enough  $j \geq 1$  (depending on  $\beta$ ), we can find  $\psi_{\beta,j} \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  such that

$$\varphi \geq (1 - \beta)\varphi_j + \beta\psi_{\beta,j}.$$

The existence of  $\psi_{\beta,j}$  follows from Lemma 2.3.1. It follows that

$$D_{Y_\bullet}(T) \supseteq D_{Y_\bullet}(\theta + \text{dd}^c((1 - \beta)\varphi_j + \beta\psi_{\beta,j})) \supseteq (1 - \beta)D_{Y_\bullet}(T_j) + \beta D_{Y_\bullet}(\theta + \text{dd}^c\psi_{\beta,j}).$$

By Theorem A.6.1, up to replacing  $T_j$  by a subsequence, we may guarantee that  $\overline{D_{Y_\bullet}(\theta + \text{dd}^c\psi_{\beta,j})}$  admits a Hausdorff limit as  $j \rightarrow \infty$  for any rational  $\beta \in (0, 1)$ . Let  $j \rightarrow \infty$  and  $\beta \rightarrow 0$  then it follows that

$$\overline{D_{Y_\bullet}(T)} \supseteq \bigcap_{j=1}^{\infty} D_{Y_\bullet}(T_j).$$

By Lemma A.6.2,

$$\overline{D_{Y_\bullet}(T)} \supseteq \overline{\bigcap_{j=1}^{\infty} D_{Y_\bullet}(T_j)} = \bigcap_{j=1}^{\infty} \overline{D_{Y_\bullet}(T_j)}.$$

Therefore, by Step 1, we conclude that

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) = \bigcap_{j=1}^{\infty} \overline{\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T_j)} = \bigcap_{j=1}^{\infty} \overline{D_{Y_\bullet}(T_j)} \subseteq \overline{D_{Y_\bullet}(T)}.$$

The reverse direction is already known.

**Step 3.** Finally, consider the general case. Take a Kähler current  $T' \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)$  more singular than  $T$ . For each  $\epsilon \in (0, 1)$ . The existence of  $T'$  is proved in [Lemma 2.3.2](#). We know that

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}((1 - \epsilon)T + \epsilon T') &= \overline{\{v_{Y_\bullet}(S) : S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha), S \leq_I (1 - \epsilon)T + \epsilon T'\}} \\ &\subseteq \overline{\{v_{Y_\bullet}(S) : S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha), S \leq_I T\}}. \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0+$  and using [Proposition 7.2.3](#), we find that

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) \subseteq \overline{\{v_{Y_\bullet}(S) : S \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha), S \leq_I T\}}.$$

As the other inclusion is already known, we conclude.  $\square$

cor:KahcurrminOkoun

**Corollary 11.4.5** Assume that  $T \in \mathcal{Z}_+(X, \alpha)_{>0}$ . We have

$$\min_{\text{lex}} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) = v_{Y_\bullet}(T). \quad (11.49)$$

{eq:minOkounkov3}

**Proof** By [Theorem 11.4.5](#), it is clear that

$$\min_{\text{lex}} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) \leq_{\text{lex}} v_{Y_\bullet}(T).$$

On the other hand, we clearly have

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T + \omega)$$

for any Kähler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . It follows that

$$\min_{\text{lex}} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T) \geq_{\text{lex}} \min_{\text{lex}} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(T + \omega).$$

By [Theorem 11.4.4](#), the right-hand side is just  $v_{Y_\bullet}(T + \omega) = v_{Y_\bullet}(T)$ . We conclude the proof.  $\square$

## 11.5 Okounkov test curves

Let  $\Delta \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  be a convex body with positive volume.

def:Otc

**Definition 11.5.1** An *Okounkov test curve* relative to  $\Delta$  consists of

- (1) a number  $\Delta_{\max} \in \mathbb{R}$  and
- (2) an assignment  $(-\infty, \Delta_{\max}) \ni \tau \mapsto \Delta_\tau \in \mathcal{K}_n$  satisfying
  - a. the assignment  $\tau \mapsto \Delta_\tau$  is a decreasing and concave;
  - b. the convex bodies  $\Delta_\tau$  converge to  $\Delta$  as  $\tau \rightarrow -\infty$  with respect to the Hausdorff metric.

The set of Okounkov test curves relative to  $\Delta$  is denoted by  $\text{TC}(\Delta)$ .

An Okounkov test curve  $\Delta_\bullet$  is *bounded* if  $\Delta_\tau = \Delta$  when  $\Delta$  is small enough. The subset of bounded Okounkov test curves is denoted by  $\text{TC}^\infty(\Delta)$ .

An Okounkov test curve  $\Delta_\bullet$  is said to have *finite energy* if

$$\mathbf{E}(\Delta_\bullet) := n! \Delta_{\max} \text{vol } \Delta + n! \int_{-\infty}^{\Delta_{\max}} (\text{vol } \Delta_\tau - \text{vol } \Delta) \, d\tau > -\infty.$$

The subset of Okounkov test curves with finite energy is denoted by  $\text{TC}^1(\Delta)$ .

Here concavity refers to the concavity with respect to the Minkowski sum.

prop:Otccont

**Proposition 11.5.1** *Any Okounkov test curve  $(\Delta_\tau)_{\tau < \Delta_{\max}}$  relative to  $\Delta$  is continuous in  $\tau$ . Moreover,  $\text{vol } \Delta_\tau > 0$  for all  $\tau < \Delta_{\max}$ .*

**Proof** We first claim that  $\text{vol } \Delta_{\tau'} > 0$  for all  $\tau' < \Delta_{\max}$ . By Condition 2.b in [Definition 11.5.1](#) and [Theorem A.6.2](#), we know that  $\text{vol } \Delta_{\tau''} > 0$  when  $\tau''$  is small enough. Fix one such  $\tau''$ . Any  $\tau' < \tau^+$  can be written as a convex combination of  $\tau^+$  and  $\tau''$ , thus  $\Delta_{\tau'}$  has positive volume by the concavity.

Next we claim that  $\text{vol } \Delta_\tau$  is continuous for  $\tau < \Delta_{\max}$ . In fact, by the Minkowski inequality, we know that  $\log \text{vol } \Delta_\tau$  is concave for  $\tau < \Delta_{\max}$ . The continuity follows.

Next we show that

$$\Delta_\tau = \bigcap_{\tau' < \tau} \Delta_{\tau'}.$$

The  $\supseteq$  direction is obvious. By the continuity of the volume, both sides have the same volume and the volume is positive, hence, they are actually equal.

Similarly, we have

$$\Delta_\tau = \overline{\bigcup_{\tau' > \tau} \Delta_{\tau'}}.$$

The continuity of  $\Delta_\tau$  at  $\tau < \Delta_{\max}$  is proved.  $\square$

def:tf

**Definition 11.5.2** A *test function* on  $\Delta$  is a function  $F: \Delta \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  such that

- (1)  $F$  is concave;
- (2)  $F$  is finite on  $\text{Int } \Delta$ ;
- (3)  $F$  is upper semicontinuous.

A test function  $F$  is *bounded* if  $F$  is bounded from below.

A test function  $F$  has *finite energy* if

$$\mathbf{E}(F) := n! \int_{\Delta} F \, d\lambda > -\infty. \quad (11.50)$$

{eq:EF}

def:LegOkoun

**Definition 11.5.3** Let  $\Delta_\bullet \in \text{TC}(\Delta)$ . We define its *Legendre transform* as

$$G[\Delta_\bullet]: \Delta \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty), \quad a \mapsto \sup \{ \tau < \Delta_{\max} : a \in \Delta_\tau \}.$$

Given a test function  $F: \Delta \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$ , we define its inverse Legendre transform  $\Delta[F]_\bullet$  as the Okounkov test curve relative to  $\Delta$  defined as follows:

- (1)  $\Delta[F]_{\max} = \sup_{\Delta} F$ ;
- (2) For each  $\tau < \sup_{\Delta} F$ , we set

$$\Delta[F]_{\tau} = \{x \in \Delta : F \geq \tau\}.$$

lma:convbodyLegendre

**Lemma 11.5.1** *Let  $\Delta_{\bullet} \in \text{TC}(\Delta)$ . Then  $G[\Delta_{\bullet}]$  defined in [Definition 11.5.3](#) is a test function.*

*Similar, if  $F: \Delta \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  is a test function, then  $\Delta[F]_{\bullet}$  is an Okounkov test curve.*

**Proof** First suppose that  $\Delta_{\bullet} \in \text{TC}(\Delta)$ . We want to verify that  $G[\Delta_{\bullet}]$  satisfies the conditions in [Definition 11.5.2](#).

We first verify the concavity. Take  $a, b \in \Delta$ . We want to prove that for any  $t \in (0, 1)$ ,

$$G[\Delta_{\bullet}](ta + (1-t)b) \geq tG[\Delta_{\bullet}](a) + (1-t)G[\Delta_{\bullet}](b). \quad (11.51)$$

{eq:GDeltaconc}

There is nothing to prove if  $G[\Delta_{\bullet}](a)$  or  $G[\Delta_{\bullet}](b)$  is  $-\infty$ . So we assume that both are finite. Take  $\epsilon > 0$ , then  $a \in \Delta_{G[\Delta_{\bullet}](a)-\epsilon}$  and  $b \in \Delta_{G[\Delta_{\bullet}](b)-\epsilon}$ . Thus,

$$ta + (1-t)b \in t\Delta_{G[\Delta_{\bullet}](a)-\epsilon} + (1-t)\Delta_{G[\Delta_{\bullet}](b)-\epsilon} \subseteq \Delta_{tG[\Delta_{\bullet}](a)+(1-t)G[\Delta_{\bullet}](b)-\epsilon}.$$

We deduce that

$$G[\Delta_{\bullet}](ta + (1-t)b) \geq tG[\Delta_{\bullet}](a) + (1-t)G[\Delta_{\bullet}](b) - \epsilon.$$

Since  $\epsilon > 0$ , (11.51) follows.

It is clear that  $F$  is finite on the interior of  $\Delta$ . So it remains to argue that  $F$  is upper semicontinuous.

Let  $a_i \in \Delta$  with  $a_i \rightarrow a \in \Delta$ . Define  $\tau_i = G[\Delta_{\bullet}](a_i)$ . Let  $\tau = \overline{\lim}_i \tau_i$ . We need to show that

$$G[\Delta_{\bullet}](a) \geq \tau. \quad (11.52)$$

{eq:ainDelta1}

There is nothing to prove if  $\tau = -\infty$ . We assume that it is not this case. Up to subtracting a subsequence we may assume that  $\tau_i \rightarrow \tau$ . In particular, we can assume that  $\tau_i \neq -\infty$  for all  $i$ . Fix  $\epsilon > 0$ , then  $a_i \in \Delta_{\tau_i-\epsilon}$ . Observe that  $\Delta_{\tau_i-\epsilon} \xrightarrow{d_n} \Delta_{\tau-\epsilon}$ . By [Theorem A.6.3](#) it follows that  $a \in \Delta_{\tau-\epsilon}$ . Thus, (11.52) follows since  $\epsilon > 0$  is arbitrary.

Conversely, suppose that  $F: \Delta \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  is a test function. We argue that  $\Delta[F]_{\bullet}$  is an Okounkov test curve. We verify the conditions in [Definition 11.5.1](#).

Firstly, for each  $\tau < \sup_{\Delta} F$ ,  $\Delta[F](\tau)$  is a convex body as  $F$  is concave and usc. Moreover,  $\Delta[F]_{\tau}$  is clearly decreasing in  $\tau$ .

Secondly, for each  $a \in \Delta$ , we can write  $a = \lim_i a_i$  with  $a_i \in \text{Int } \Delta$ . By assumption,  $F$  is finite at  $a_i$ . Thus,

$$a \in \overline{\{F > -\infty\}} = \overline{\bigcup_{\tau} \Delta[F]_{\tau}}.$$

By **Theorem A.6.3**,  $\Delta[F]_\tau \xrightarrow{d_n} \Delta$  as  $\tau \rightarrow -\infty$ .

Thirdly,  $\Delta[F]$  is concave. To see, take  $\tau, \tau' < \tau^+$ , we need to prove that for any  $t \in (0, 1)$ ,

$$\Delta[F]_{t\tau+(1-t)\tau'} \supseteq t\Delta[F]_\tau + (1-t)\Delta[F]_{\tau'}. \quad (11.53)$$

{eq:Deconc}

Let  $a \in \Delta[F]_\tau$  and  $b \in \Delta[F]_{\tau'}$ . We have  $F(a) \geq \tau$  and  $F(b) \geq \tau'$ . As  $F$  is concave, we have  $F(ta + (1-t)b) \geq t\tau + (1-t)\tau'$ . Thus,

$$ta + (1-t)b \in \Delta[F]_{t\tau+(1-t)\tau'}$$

and (11.53) follows.  $\square$

thm:Okotestcurve

**Theorem 11.5.1** *The Legendre transform and inverse Legendre transform are inverse to each other, defining a bijection between  $\text{TC}(\Delta)$  and test functions on  $\Delta$ .*

*Under this bijection,  $\text{TC}^1(\Delta)$  corresponds to test functions on  $\Delta$  with finite energy and  $\text{TC}^\infty(\Delta)$  corresponds to bounded test functions.*

**Proof** Thanks to **Lemma 11.5.1**, in order to prove the first assertion, it only remains to see that the Legendre transform and the inverse Legendre transform are inverse to each other, which is immediate by definition.

It is obvious that  $\text{TC}^\infty(\Delta)$  corresponds to bounded test curves. Moreover, a direct computation shows that if  $\Delta_\bullet \in \text{TC}(\Delta)$ , then

$$\mathbf{E}(\Delta_\bullet) = \mathbf{E}(G[\Delta_\bullet]),$$

concluding the  $\text{TC}^1(\Delta)$  case.  $\square$

The main source of Okounkov test curves is the following:

thm:Okountescurve

**Theorem 11.5.2** *Let  $\theta$  be a closed smooth real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing a big cohomology class  $\alpha$ . Let  $Y_\bullet$  be a smooth flag on  $X$  and  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Then the map*

$$(-\infty, \Gamma_{\max}) \ni \tau \mapsto \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \Gamma)_\tau := \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \Gamma_\tau)$$

*defines an Okounkov test curve.*

*Moreover, if  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}^1(X, \theta)$  (resp.  $\text{TC}^\infty(X, \theta)$ ), then  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \Gamma) \in \text{TC}^1(\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha))$  (resp.  $\text{TC}^\infty(\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\alpha))$ ).*

**Proof** Consider  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . We need to verify that  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \Gamma)$  is an Okounkov test curve.

First observe that  $\tau \mapsto \Gamma_\tau$  is concave and decreasing for  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ . This is a direct consequence of **Theorem 11.4.5**.

Next we show that as  $\tau \rightarrow -\infty$ , we have

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \Gamma_\tau) \xrightarrow{d_n} \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \Gamma_{-\infty})$$

as  $\tau \rightarrow -\infty$ .

It suffices to compute

$$\lim_{\tau \rightarrow -\infty} \text{vol } \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \Gamma_\tau) = \frac{1}{n!} \lim_{\tau \rightarrow -\infty} \text{vol}(\theta + \text{dd}^c \Gamma_\tau) = \frac{1}{n!} \text{vol}(\theta + \text{dd}^c \Gamma_{-\infty}) = \text{vol } \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \Gamma_{-\infty}),$$

where we applied [Theorem 11.4.2](#) and [Theorem 6.2.5](#).

When  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}^\infty(X, \theta)$ , it is clear that  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \Gamma) \in \text{TC}^\infty(\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \Gamma_{-\infty}))$ .

When  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}^1(X, \theta)$ , by [Theorem 11.4.2](#), we have

$$\mathbf{E}(\Gamma) = \mathbf{E}(\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \Gamma)).$$

So  $\Gamma \in \text{TC}^1(\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \Gamma_{-\infty}))$ . □

**Definition 11.5.4** Let  $\Delta_\bullet$  be an Okounkov test curve relative to  $\Delta$ . We define the *Duistermaat–Heckman measure*  $\text{DH}(\Delta_\bullet)$  as

$$\text{DH}(\Delta_\bullet) := G[\Delta_\bullet]_*(d\lambda).$$

It is a Radon measure on  $\mathbb{R}$ .

In other words,  $\text{DH}(\Delta_\bullet)$  is the probability distribution of the random variable  $G[\Delta_\bullet]$  on the measure space  $(\Delta, d\lambda)$ .

For each  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ , the moments are given by

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} x^m \text{DH}(\Delta_\bullet)(x) = \int_{\Delta} G[\Delta_\bullet]^m d\lambda = \Delta_{\max}^m \text{vol } \Delta - \int_{-\infty}^{\Delta_{\max}} m \tau^{m-1} (\text{vol } \Delta - \text{vol } \Delta_\tau) d\tau. \quad (11.54)$$

[{eq:momentcalc}](#)

[lma:DHmconv](#)

**Lemma 11.5.2** Suppose that  $(\Delta_\bullet^k)_k$  is a decreasing sequence in  $\text{TC}(\Delta)$ . Assume that the pointwise Hausdorff limit  $(\Delta_\tau)_{\tau < \inf_k \Delta_{\max}^k}$  is still a Okounkov test curve relative to  $\Delta$ . Then  $\text{DH}(\Delta_\bullet^k) \rightarrow \text{DH}(\Delta_\bullet)$  as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ .

**Proof** Observe that

$$G[\Delta_\bullet^k] \rightarrow G[\Delta_\bullet]$$

as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ . It follows from the dominated convergence theorem that  $\text{DH}(\Delta_\bullet^k) \rightarrow \text{DH}(\Delta_\bullet)$  as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ . □

## 11.6 Okounkov bodies of b-divisors

[sec:Okounkovbdiv](#)

Let  $X$  be a connected projective manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $(L, \phi)$  be a Hermitian big line bundle on  $X$ .

Fix a smooth flag  $Y_\bullet$  on  $X$ . Let  $\nu = \nu_{Y_\bullet} : \mathbb{C}(X)^\times \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  be the valuation associated with  $Y_\bullet$ .

[thm:pobbd](#)

**Theorem 11.6.1** The partial Okounkov body  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(L, \phi)$  admits the following expression:

$$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(L, \phi) = \nu_{Y_\bullet}(\text{dd}^c \phi) + \lim_{\pi: Z \rightarrow X} \Delta_\nu(c_1(\pi^* L) - [\text{Sing}_Z(\phi)]), \quad (11.55)$$

[{eq:DeltaasHlim}](#)

where  $\pi$  runs over all smooth birational modifications of  $X$ .

lma:valuationincseq

**Lemma 11.6.1** *Let  $E_j$  be a countable family of distinct prime divisors on  $X$ . Consider  $a_{ij} \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  for all  $i, j > 0$ . We assume that the sequence  $(a_{ij})$  for fixed  $j$  is increasing in  $i$ . Moreover, assume that  $a_j := \lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} a_{ij} < \infty$ . Assume that the series  $\sum_j a_j [E_j]$  converges, then*

$$\lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \nu \left( \sum_j a_{ij} [E_j] \right) = \nu \left( \sum_j a_j [E_j] \right).$$

**Proof** We argue by induction on the dimension  $n$ . When  $n = 1$ , there is nothing to argue. Assume that  $n > 1$  and the case  $n - 1$  is known. We may assume that  $Y_1$  is not among the  $E_j$ 's. Write  $\mu$  for the valuation on  $Y_1$  induced by the truncated flag. Then we need to prove the following:

$$\lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \mu \left( \sum_j a_{ij} [E_j]|_{Y_1} \right) = \mu \left( \sum_j a_j [E_j]|_{Y_1} \right).$$

Note that  $[E_j]|_{Y_1}$  is again the current of integration of an effective divisor on  $Y_1$  (this can be seen using the Lelong–Poincaré formula for example), so the desired convergence follows by induction.  $\square$

lma:valuationT

**Lemma 11.6.2** *Let  $T$  be a closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -current on  $X$ . Then we have*

$$\lim_{\pi: Z \rightarrow X} \nu(\text{Sing}_Z(T)) = \nu(T). \quad (11.56)$$

{eq:nuTaslimit}

**Proof** Given  $\pi: Z \rightarrow X$ , we let  $W_1$  denote the strict transform of  $Y_1$  in  $Z$ . The restriction  $\pi_1: W_1 \rightarrow Y_1$  is necessarily birational.

We will argue by induction. The case  $n = 0$  is trivial. Assume that  $n > 0$  and the case  $n - 1$  is known.

We may clearly assume that  $\nu(T, Y_1) = 0$ . By definition, we have

$$\nu(T) = (0, \mu(\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T))),$$

where  $\mu$  denotes the valuation induced by the flag on  $Y_1$  induced by  $Y_\bullet$ .

Observe that modifications of the form  $\pi_1: W_1 \rightarrow Y_1$  is cofinal in the directed set of modifications of  $Y_1$ . This is obvious since the modifications given by compositions of blow-ups with smooth centers on  $Y_1$  are cofinal.

Therefore, by induction, it suffices to argue that for any  $\pi: Z \rightarrow X$ , we have

$$\nu(\text{Sing}_Z(T)) = (0, \mu(\text{Sing}_{\widetilde{W}_1}(\text{Tr}_{Y_1}(T)))) , \quad (11.57)$$

{eq:indstep}

where  $\widetilde{W}_1$  is the normalization of  $W_1$ . Let  $\widetilde{\pi}_1$  denote the normalization of  $\pi_1$  so that we have a commutative diagram



$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\widetilde{W}_1 & \longrightarrow & W_1 & \hookrightarrow & Z \\
\downarrow \widetilde{\pi}_1 & & \downarrow \pi_1 & & \downarrow \pi \\
Y_1 & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y_1 & \hookrightarrow & X.
\end{array}$$

From [Lemma 8.2.1](#), we know that

$$\widetilde{\pi}_1^* \operatorname{Tr}_{Y_1}(T) \sim_P \operatorname{Tr}_{W_1}(\pi^*T).$$

So we only need to prove

$$\nu(\operatorname{Sing}_Z(\pi^*T)) = \left(0, \mu(\operatorname{Sing}_{\widetilde{W}_1}(\operatorname{Tr}_{W_1}(\pi^*T)))\right),$$

In order to prove this, we may add a Kähler form to  $T$  and assume that  $T$  is a Kähler current. Take a quasi-equisingular approximation  $T_j$  of  $T$ . Then  $\pi^*T_j$  is a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\pi^*T$ . By [Proposition 8.2.2](#), [Theorem 6.2.4](#) and [Lemma 11.6.1](#), both sides are continuous along quasi-equisingular approximations, we reduce to the case where  $\pi^*T$  has analytic singularities. In this case, take a suitable resolution and argue as before, we may assume that  $\pi^*T = [D]$  for a snc  $\mathbb{Q}$ -divisor  $D$ . By additivity, we finally reduce to the case where  $D$  is a prime divisor on  $X$  different from  $Y_1$ . The problem is reduced to

$$\nu([D]) = (0, \mu([D]|_{Y_1})),$$

which is clear by definition.  $\square$

**Proof (The proof of [Theorem 11.6.1](#))** We argue by induction on  $n$ . The case  $n = 0$  is of course trivial. Let us assume that  $n > 0$  and the result is known in dimension  $n - 1$ .

It would be more convenient to use the language of currents. We shall write  $T = \operatorname{dd}^c \phi$ . Then one needs to prove two things: first of all, the limit in [\(11.55\)](#) exists; secondly,

$$\Delta_\nu(T) = \nu(T) + \lim_{\pi: Z \rightarrow X} \Delta_\nu(c_1(\pi^*L) - [\operatorname{Sing}_Z(T)]). \quad (11.58)$$

{eq:mainvar}

We may replace  $T$  by  $T - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1]$  and  $L$  by the numerical class  $L - \nu(T, Y_1)[Y_1]$ , so that we may reduce to the case where  $\nu(T, Y_1) = 0$ . But now  $L$  is replaced by a big numerical class  $\alpha$  on  $X$  in the real Néron–Severi group of  $X$ . By perturbation, we may assume  $\alpha$  lies in the rational Néron–Severi group. After a rescaling, we reduce back to the case where  $\alpha$  is represented by a line bundle  $L$ . Eventually we want to show [\(11.58\)](#) assuming that  $\nu(T, Y_1) = 0$ .

Let us prove [\(11.58\)](#). It follows from [Corollary 11.4.4](#) that we have

$$\Delta_\nu(c_1(\pi^*L) - [\operatorname{Sing}_Z(T)]) = \overline{\{\nu(S) : S \in c_1(\pi^*L) - [\operatorname{Sing}_Z(T)]\}}.$$

Therefore,

$$\Delta_\nu(c_1(\pi^*L) - [\text{Sing}_Z(T)] + \nu(\text{Sing}_Z(T))) \subseteq \overline{\{\nu(S) : S \in c_1(L), \pi^*S \geq \text{Sing}_Z(T)\}}.$$

We observe that the right-hand side is decreasing with respect to  $\pi$ , which together with [Lemma 11.6.2](#) implies that the net of convex bodies  $\Delta_\nu(c_1(\pi^*L) - [\text{Sing}_Z(T)])$  for various  $Z$  is uniformly bounded. Suppose that  $\Delta$  is the limit of a subnet. Then we have

$$\Delta + \nu(T) \subseteq \overline{\{\nu(S) : S \in c_1(L), S \leq_I T\}}.$$

As shown in [Theorem 11.4.5](#), the right-hand side is exactly  $\Delta_\nu(T)$ . So

$$\Delta + \nu(T) \subseteq \Delta_\nu(T).$$

But observe that both sides have the same volume, as computed in [Theorem 11.4.2](#) and [Theorem 9.2.1](#). So equality holds.

It follows from the Blaschke selection theorem [Theorem A.6.1](#) that the limit in [\(11.58\)](#) exists and [\(11.58\)](#) holds.  $\square$

## **Part III**

# **Applications**

In this part, we explain a few applications of the theory developed in this book.

## Chapter 12

# Toric pluripotential theory on big line bundles

chap:toricbig

Let  $T$  be a complex torus of dimension  $n$  with character lattice  $M$  and cocharacter lattice  $N$ . Consider a rational polyhedral fan  $\Sigma$  in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  corresponding to an  $n$ -dimensional smooth toric variety  $X$ .

Let  $D$  be a  $T$ -invariant big divisor on  $X$ . Then  $P_D \subseteq M_{\mathbb{R}}$  be the lattice polytope generated by  $u \in M$  such that

$$D + \operatorname{div} \chi^u \geq 0.$$

Let  $L = \mathcal{O}_X(D)$ .

We shall fix a smooth  $T_c$ -invariant metric  $h_0$  on  $L$ . Let  $\theta = c_1(L, h_0)$ . Fix a smooth function  $F_{\theta}: N_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\theta = \operatorname{dd}^c \operatorname{Trop}^* F_{\theta}.$$

Note that  $F_{\theta}$  is well-defined up to a linear term.

## 12.1 Toric partial Okounkov bodies

### 12.1.1 Newton bodies

Let  $\operatorname{PSH}_{\operatorname{tor}}(X, \theta)$  be the set of  $T_c$ -invariant functions in  $\operatorname{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

**Definition 12.1.1** A function  $\varphi \in \operatorname{PSH}_{\operatorname{tor}}(X, \theta)$  can be written as

$$\varphi|_{T(\mathbb{C})} = \operatorname{Trop}^* f$$

for some unique  $f: N_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$ . Then we define

$$F_{\varphi}: N_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

as follows:

$$F_\varphi = F_\theta + f. \quad (12.1)$$

Observe that  $F_\varphi$  is a convex function and takes finite values by [Lemma 5.1.1](#). It is well-defined up to a linear term.

**Definition 12.1.2** Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$ , we define its *Newton body* as

$$\Delta(\theta, \varphi) := \overline{\nabla F_\varphi(N_{\mathbb{R}})} \subseteq M_{\mathbb{R}}.$$

Observe that  $\Delta(\theta, \varphi)$  depends only on the current  $\theta_\varphi$ , not on the choices of  $\theta$ ,  $F_\theta$  and  $D$ .

prop:toricMAandrealMA2

**Proposition 12.1.1** Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$ , then

$$\text{Trop}_* (\theta|_{T(\mathbb{C})} + \text{dd}^c \varphi|_{T(\mathbb{C})})^n = \text{MA}_{\mathbb{R}}(F_\varphi). \quad (12.2)$$

{eq:tropMAmea2}

In particular,

$$\int_X \theta_\varphi^n = \int_{N_{\mathbb{R}}} \text{MA}_{\mathbb{R}}(F_\varphi) = n! \text{vol } \Delta(\theta, \varphi) \quad (12.3)$$

{eq:toricmass2}

and

$$\int_X \theta_{V_\theta}^n = n! \text{vol } P. \quad (12.4)$$

{eq:toricminsingmass}

**Proof** Take  $F_0$  as in (5.3) and  $\omega$  denotes the corresponding Kähler form.

Then for any large enough  $C > 0$ ,  $\theta + C\omega$  is a Kähler form. So we conclude from [Proposition 5.1.5](#) that

$$\text{Trop}_* ((\theta + C\omega)|_{T(\mathbb{C})} + \text{dd}^c \varphi|_{T(\mathbb{C})})^n = \text{MA}_{\mathbb{R}}(F_\varphi + CF_0).$$

Since both sides are polynomials in  $C$ , we conclude that the same holds for  $C = 0$ . Therefore, (12.2) follows.

(12.3) is a direct consequence, while (12.4) follows from [Theorem 12.2.2](#).  $\square$

### 12.1.2 Partial Okounkov bodies

subsec:pobtorgeneral

There are some canonical choices of smooth flags in the toric setting.

Recall that for each  $\rho \in \Sigma(1)$ ,  $u_\rho$  denotes the ray generator of  $\rho$ . Since  $X$  is smooth and projective, we could choose  $\rho_1, \dots, \rho_n \in \Sigma(1)$  such that  $u_{\rho_1}, \dots, u_{\rho_n}$  form a basis of  $N$ . Define

$$Y_i = D_{\rho_1} \cap \dots \cap D_{\rho_i}, \quad i = 1, \dots, n.$$

Then  $Y_\bullet$  is a smooth flag on  $X$ . Let

$$\Phi: M \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^n, \quad m \mapsto (\langle m, u_{\rho_1} \rangle, \dots, \langle m, u_{\rho_n} \rangle). \quad (12.5)$$

{eq:isoMZncanonical}

Then  $\Phi$  is an isomorphism of Abelian groups. It induces an  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear isomorphism

$$\Phi_{\mathbb{R}}: M_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n.$$

prop:toricusual0ko

**Proposition 12.1.2** *We have*

$$\nu_{Y_{\bullet}} \left( H^0(X, L^k)^{\times} \right) = \Phi \left( (kP_D) \cap M \right) \quad (12.6)$$

{eq:DeltakLtoric}

for any  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ . In particular,

$$\Delta_{Y_{\bullet}}(L) = \Phi_{\mathbb{R}}(P_D). \quad (12.7)$$

**Proof** It suffices to prove (12.6) for  $k = 1$ . Let  $s \in H^0(X, L)$  be a non-zero section, say  $\chi^u$  for some  $u \in P_D \cap M$ . The zero-locus of  $s$  is given by

$$D + \sum_{i=1}^n \langle u, u_{\rho_i} \rangle D_{\rho_i}.$$

Therefore,

$$\nu_{Y_{\bullet}}(s) = (\langle u, u_{\rho_1} \rangle, \dots, \langle u, u_{\rho_n} \rangle) = \Phi(u).$$

So (12.6) follows.  $\square$

thm:toricpob

**Theorem 12.1.1** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , then*

$$\Phi_{\mathbb{R}}(\Delta(\theta, \varphi)) = \Delta_{Y_{\bullet}}(\theta, \varphi). \quad (12.8)$$

{eq:toricOkounkovcomp}

The proof follows from a simple but tedious computation based on [Example 7.3.1](#), we refer to [\[Xia21, Theorem 8.3\]](#).

**Proof Step 1.** We first reduce to the case where  $\theta_{\varphi}$  is a Kähler current.

By [Lemma 2.3.2](#), we can find  $\psi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  such that  $\psi \leq \varphi$  and  $\theta_{\psi}$  is a Kähler current. Taking the average along  $T_c$ , we may assume that  $\psi$  is  $T_c$ -invariant.

For each  $t \in (0, 1)$ , we let

$$\varphi_t = (1 - t)\psi + t\varphi.$$

Suppose that Kähler current case is known. Then we get

$$\Phi_{\mathbb{R}}(\Delta(\theta, \varphi_t)) = \Delta_{Y_{\bullet}}(\theta, \varphi_t)$$

for any  $t \in (0, 1)$ . It follows from [Theorem A.4.2](#) that

$$\Phi_{\mathbb{R}}(\Delta(\theta, \varphi)) \supseteq \Phi_{\mathbb{R}}(\Delta(\theta, \varphi_t)) \supseteq \Delta_{Y_{\bullet}}(\theta, \varphi_t)$$

for any  $t \in (0, 1)$ . Thanks to [Theorem 11.3.1](#), we have

$$\Phi_{\mathbb{R}}(\Delta(\theta, \varphi)) \supseteq \Delta_{Y_*}(\theta, \varphi).$$

Compare the volumes of both sides using [Proposition 12.1.1](#) and (11.17), we find that

$$n! \operatorname{vol} \Phi_{\mathbb{R}}(\Delta(\theta, \varphi)) = \int_X \theta_{\varphi}^n = \operatorname{vol} \theta_{\varphi} = n! \operatorname{vol} \Delta_{Y_*}(\theta, \varphi).$$

In particular, we conclude (12.8).

**Step 2.** We handle the case where  $\theta_{\varphi}$  is a Kähler current.

Let  $(\varphi_j)_j$  be a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$  in  $\operatorname{PSH}(X, \theta)$ .

We may assume that  $\varphi_j$  is  $T_c$ -invariant for each  $j \geq 1$  from the construction of [Dem12](#), [Theorem 13.21](#).

Now assume that the result is known for each  $\varphi_j$ . Then

$$\Phi_{\mathbb{R}}(\Delta(\theta, \varphi_j)) = \Delta_{Y_*}(\theta, \varphi_j).$$

In particular, by [Proposition 12.1.1](#) again,

$$\Phi_{\mathbb{R}}(\Delta(\theta, \varphi)) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_*}(\theta, \varphi_j)$$

for each  $j \geq 1$ . It follows from [Theorem 11.3.1](#) that

$$\Phi_{\mathbb{R}}(\Delta(\theta, \varphi)) \subseteq \Delta_{Y_*}(\theta, \varphi).$$

Compare the volumes of both sides using [Proposition 12.1.1](#), (11.17) and [Theorem 5.2.1](#), we conclude (12.8).

**Step 3.** It remains to handle the case where  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities and  $\theta_{\varphi}$  is a Kähler current. In fact, we may assume that  $\varphi$  has the form

$$\varphi = \log \sum_{i=1}^a |s_i|_{h_0}^2 + O(1),$$

where  $s_1, \dots, s_a \in H^0(X, L)$ . This follows from the proof of Step 2 and the construction of [Dem12](#), [Theorem 13.21](#).

Let  $u_1, \dots, u_a \in P_D \cap M$  be the lattice points corresponding to  $s_1, \dots, s_a$ . Observe that  $\Delta(\theta, \varphi)$  is the convex envelope of  $u_1, \dots, u_a$  by [Lemma A.5.2](#).

Then for any  $m \in M$  and  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ ,  $m \in kP_D$  if and only if

$$|\chi^m|_{h_0^k}^2 e^{-k\varphi}$$

is bounded from above. It follows that

$$\Phi(k\Delta(\theta, \varphi) \cap M) \subseteq k\Delta_k(\theta, \varphi).$$

The notation  $\Delta_k$  is defined (11.29). Letting  $k \rightarrow \infty$  and applying [Theorem 11.3.3](#), we find that

$$\Phi_{\mathbb{R}}(\Delta(\theta, \varphi)) \subseteq \Delta(\theta, \varphi).$$



Compare the volumes of both sides using [Proposition 12.1.1](#) and [\(11.17\)](#), we conclude that the equality holds and [\(12.8\)](#) follows.  $\square$

As another consequence we have

cor:toricLelong

**Corollary 12.1.1** *Let  $E$  be a  $T$ -invariant prime divisor on  $X$  corresponding to a ray with ray generator  $n \in N$ . Then for any  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , we have*

$$v(\varphi, E) = \inf \{ \langle m, n \rangle : m \in \Delta(\theta, \varphi) \}.$$

**Proof** This follows immediately from [Theorem 12.1.1](#) and [Theorem 11.3.4](#). In fact, since  $X$  is projective and smooth, there is always a  $T$ -invariant smooth flag  $Y_\bullet$  with  $Y_1 = E$ .  $\square$

cor:toricLelong2

**Corollary 12.1.2** *For any  $T$ -invariant subvariety  $Y \subseteq X$  and any  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  corresponding to a cone  $\sigma$  in  $\Sigma$ . Then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $v(\varphi, Y) = 0$ ;
- (2) *There is a point  $m \in \Delta(\theta, \varphi)$  such that  $m \cdot u_\rho = 0$  for any 1-dimensional face  $\rho$  of  $\sigma$ .*

**Proof** This follows immediately from [Corollary 12.1.1](#) after blowing-up  $Y$ .  $\square$

## 12.2 The pluripotential theory

thm:toricpshbig

**Theorem 12.2.1** *There is a canonical bijection between the following sets:*

- (1) *the set of  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$ ;*
- (2) *the set of  $F \in \mathcal{P}(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P_D)$  satisfying  $F \leq F_{V_\theta}$ , and*
- (3) *the set of closed proper convex functions  $G \in \text{Conv}(M_{\mathbb{R}})$  satisfying*

$$G \geq F_{V_\theta}^*.$$

As before, we write  $F_\varphi, G_\varphi$  for the functions determined by this construction.

**Proof** The proof is similar to that of [Theorem 5.1.1](#), but due to its importance, we give the proof. Again, the correspondence between (2) and (3) is proved in [Proposition A.2.4](#).

Given  $\varphi$ , we can construct  $F_\varphi$  in (2) as explained earlier. Conversely, given  $F \in \mathcal{P}(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P_D)$  such that  $F \leq F_{V_\theta}$ . Then

$$\text{Trop}^*(F - F_\theta) \in \text{PSH}(T(\mathbb{C}), \theta|_{T(\mathbb{C})}).$$

Since  $F \leq F_{V_\theta}$ , we see that  $\text{Trop}^*(F - F_\theta)$  is bounded from above. It follows that Grauert–Riemert’s extension theorem [Theorem 1.2.1](#) is applicable and this function extends to a unique  $\theta$ -psh function  $\varphi$ . The uniqueness of the extension guarantees that  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$ .

The two maps are clearly inverse to each other.  $\square$

We fix a model potential  $\phi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  with Newton body  $\Delta(\theta, \phi)$ .

A similar argument guarantees the following:

**Corollary 12.2.1** *There is a canonical bijection between the following sets:*

- (1) the set of  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta; \phi)$ ,
- (2) the set of  $F \in \mathcal{P}(N_{\mathbb{R}}, \Delta(\theta, \phi))$  satisfying  $F \leq F_{V_\theta}$ , and
- (3) the set of closed proper convex functions  $G \in \text{Conv}(M_{\mathbb{R}})$  satisfying

$$G \geq F_{V_\theta}^*, \quad G|_{M_{\mathbb{R}} \setminus \Delta(\theta, \phi)} = \infty.$$

With an almost identical argument, we arrive at

prop:toricsubgeod

**Proposition 12.2.1** *Let  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$ . There is a canonical bijection between the following sets:*

- (1) the set of  $T_c$ -invariant subgeodesics from  $\varphi_0$  to  $\varphi_1$ ,
- (2) the set of convex functions  $F: N_{\mathbb{R}} \times (0, 1) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that for each  $r \in (0, 1)$ , the function

$$F_r: N_{\mathbb{R}} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, \quad n \mapsto F(n, r)$$

satisfies  $F_r \rightarrow F_{\varphi_1}$  (resp.  $F_r \rightarrow F_{\varphi_0}$ ) everywhere as  $r \rightarrow 1-$  (resp.  $r \rightarrow 0+$ ), and

- (3) the set of convex functions  $\Psi$  on  $M_{\mathbb{R}} \times \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\Psi(m, s) \geq G_{\varphi_0}(m) \vee (G_{\varphi_1}(m) + s).$$

Note that  $\Psi$  in (3) is nothing but the Legendre transform of  $F$ .

As an immediate corollary,

cor:toricgeodgeneral

**Corollary 12.2.2** *Let  $\varphi_0, \varphi_1 \in \mathcal{E}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$ . Then the geodesic  $(\varphi_t)_{t \in (0, 1)}$  from  $\varphi_0$  to  $\varphi_1$  corresponds to the lower convex envelope [Definition A.1.4](#) of the function*

$$N_{\mathbb{R}} \times [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, \quad (n, t) \mapsto tF_{\varphi_1}(n) + (1-t)F_{\varphi_0}(n).$$

Moreover, we have

$$G_{\varphi_t} = (1-t)G_{\varphi_1} + tG_{\varphi_0}. \tag{12.9}$$

{eq:Glinear}

**Proof** The first assertion follows immediately from [Proposition 12.2.1](#). It remains to argue [\(12.9\)](#).

Let  $F: N_{\mathbb{R}} \times [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be the map  $(n, t) \mapsto F_{\varphi_t}(n)$ .

It follows from the correspondence in [Proposition 12.2.1](#) that the Legendre transform of  $F$  is given by  $G_{\varphi_0} \vee (G_{\varphi_1} + s)$ . From this we conclude that

$$G_{\varphi_t}(m) = -\sup_{s \in \mathbb{R}} (st - G_{\varphi_0}(m) \vee (G_{\varphi_1}(m) + s)) = (1-t)G_{\varphi_1}(m) + tG_{\varphi_0}(m).$$

thm:FVtheta

**Theorem 12.2.2** *We have*

$$F_{V_\theta} \in \mathcal{E}(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P_D).$$

**Proof** We will use the notations of [Section 12.1.2](#). Take  $\varphi = V_\theta$  in [Theorem 12.1.1](#), we find

$$\Phi_{\mathbb{R}}(\Delta(\theta, V_\theta)) = \Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, V_\theta) = \Phi_{\mathbb{R}}(P_D),$$

where we applied [Proposition 12.1.2](#) in the second equality. Therefore,

$$\Delta(\theta, V_\theta) = P_D.$$

The proofs of the following results are similar to the ample case studied in [Chapter 5](#). We omit the details.

prop:toricpluscstbig

**Proposition 12.2.2** *Given  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$  and  $C \in \mathbb{R}$ . We have*

$$F_{\varphi+C} = F_\varphi + C, \quad G_{\varphi+C} = G_\varphi - C.$$

prop:toricrooftopbig

**Proposition 12.2.3** *Given  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$ , then  $\varphi \wedge \psi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$  and*

$$F_{\varphi \wedge \psi} = F_\varphi \wedge F_\psi, \quad G_{\varphi \wedge \psi} = G_\varphi \vee G_\psi.$$

prop:toricseqbig

**Proposition 12.2.4** *Let  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i \in I}$  be a family in  $\text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$  uniformly bounded from above. Then  $\sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_i \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$  and*

$$F_{\sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_i} = \sup_{i \in I} F_{\varphi_i}, \quad G_{\sup_{i \in I}^* \varphi_i} = \text{cl} \bigwedge_{i \in I} G_{\varphi_i}.$$

Moreover, if  $I$  is finite, then

$$G_{\max_{i \in I} \varphi_i} = \bigwedge_{i \in I} G_{\varphi_i}.$$

Similarly, if  $\{\varphi_i\}_{i \in I}$  is a decreasing net in  $\text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$  such that  $\inf_{i \in I} \varphi_i \neq -\infty$ , then  $\inf_{i \in I} \varphi_i \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$  and

$$F_{\inf_{i \in I} \varphi_i} = \inf_{i \in I} F_{\varphi_i}, \quad G_{\inf_{i \in I} \varphi_i} = \sup_{i \in I} G_{\varphi_i}.$$

prop:GPenvelopebig

**Proposition 12.2.5** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$ . Then  $P_\theta[\varphi] \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$  and*

$$G_{P_\theta[\varphi]}(x) = \begin{cases} G_{V_\theta}(x), & \text{if } x \in \overline{\{G_\varphi(x) < \infty\}}; \\ \infty, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (12.10)$$

{eq:toricPenvbig}

As a consequence, we have

**Corollary 12.2.3** *Let  $\varphi, \psi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $\varphi \sim_P \psi$ ;
- (2)  $\Delta(\theta, \varphi) = \Delta(\theta, \psi)$ .

Next we consider the trace operator. For this purpose, we will need to fix a  $T$ -invariant subvariety  $Y \subseteq X$ . Since  $X$  is smooth, so is  $Y$ . Let  $\sigma$  be the cone in  $\Sigma$  corresponding to  $Y$  and  $Q$  be the face of  $P$  corresponding to  $Y$ .

Recall that the cocharacter lattice  $N(\sigma)$  of  $Y$  is given by  $N/N \cap \langle \sigma \rangle$ , where  $\langle \sigma \rangle$  is the linear span of  $\sigma$ . See [CLS11, (3.2.6)]. In particular, the character lattice  $M(\sigma)$  of  $Y$  can be naturally identified with the linear span of  $Q$ . Let  $i_\sigma: M(\sigma) \rightarrow M$  be the corresponding inclusion.

Take  $m_\sigma \in M$  so that  $\text{Supp}_{P_D}$  coincides with  $m_\sigma$  on  $\sigma$ .

prop:traceoptoric

**Proposition 12.2.6** *Let  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Consider a  $T$ -invariant subvariety  $Y$  corresponding to a face  $Q$  of  $P$ . Suppose that  $\nu(\varphi, Y) = 0$  and  $\text{vol}(\theta|_Y, \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi)) > 0$ . Then*

$$\Delta(\theta|_Y, \text{Tr}_Y^\theta(\varphi)) = (i_\sigma + m_\sigma)_\mathbb{R}^* (\Delta(\theta, \varphi) \cap Q). \quad (12.11)$$

{eq:tracetoricNewton}

In particular,  $\text{Tr}_Y(\varphi) \sim_\varphi \varphi|_Y$ .

Observe that the condition  $\nu(\varphi, Y) = 0$  means exactly that  $\Delta(\theta, \varphi) \cap Q \neq \emptyset$  by [Corollary 12.1.2](#).

**Proof** Perturbing  $\theta$  slightly, we may assume that  $\theta_\varphi$  is a Kähler current. Let  $(\varphi_j)_j$  be a quasi-equisingular approximation of  $\varphi$  in  $\text{PSH}_{\text{tor}}(X, \theta)$ . It follows from the continuity of the partial Okounkov bodies [Theorem 11.3.1](#) and the continuity of the trace operator [Proposition 8.2.2](#) that it suffices to handle the case where  $\varphi$  has analytic singularities. We need to show that

$$\Delta(\theta|_Y, \varphi|_Y) = (i_\sigma + m_\sigma)_\mathbb{R}^* (\Delta(\theta, \varphi) \cap Q).$$

It is enough to observe that

$$G_{\varphi|_Y} = (i_\sigma + m_\sigma)_\mathbb{R}^* G_\varphi|_Q.$$

The argument is contained in [BGPS14, Proof of Proposition 4.8.9].

Finally, observe that the right-hand side of (12.11) is nothing but  $\Delta(\theta|_Y, \varphi|_Y)$  using [BGPS14, Proof of Proposition 4.8.9]. So we conclude that  $\varphi|_Y \sim_P \text{Tr}_Y(\varphi)$ .  $\square$

## Chapter 13

# Non-Archimedean pluripotential theory

chap:NAapp

### 13.1 The definition of non-Archimedean metrics

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$ . Let  $\text{Käh}(X)$  be the set of Kähler forms on  $X$  with the partial order given as follows: we say  $\omega \leq \omega'$  if  $\omega \geq \omega'$ . Note that the ordered set  $\text{Käh}(X)$  is a directed set.

Let  $\theta$  be a closed smooth real  $(1, 1)$ -form.

**Definition 13.1.1** We define

$$\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta) = \varprojlim_{\omega \in \text{Käh}(X)} \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta + \omega)_{>0}$$

in the category of sets, where the transition maps are given as follows: suppose that  $\omega, \omega' \in \text{Käh}$  and  $\omega \geq \omega'$ , then the transition map is defined in [Proposition 10.3.4](#):

$$P_{\theta+\omega'}[\bullet]_I : \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta + \omega')_{>0} \rightarrow \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta + \omega)_{>0}. \quad (13.1)$$

{eq:PItransPSHNApositive}

In general, we denote the components of  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta + \omega)$  by  $P_{\theta+\omega'}[\Gamma]_I$ .

*Remark 13.1.1* Thanks to [Proposition 10.3.2](#), for any other  $\theta'$  representing  $[\theta]$ , we have a canonical bijection

$$\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta').$$

Moreover, these bijections satisfy the cocycle condition. If we view the set of closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -forms representing  $[\theta]$  as a category with a unique morphism between any two objects, then we can define

$$\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, [\theta]) = \varprojlim_{\theta} \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta).$$

This definition is independent of the choice of the explicit representative of the cohomology class  $[\theta]$ .

However, given the fact that our notations are already quite heavy, we decide to stick to the set  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ . The readers should verify that all constructions below are independent of the choice of  $\theta$  within its cohomology class.

prop:testcminftyPrela

**Proposition 13.1.1** *Let  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ . Then given  $\omega, \omega' \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$  with  $\omega \leq \omega'$ , we have*

$$P_{\theta+\omega} [P_{\theta+\omega'} [\Gamma]_{I, -\infty}] = P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma]_{I, -\infty}.$$

**Proof** Since  $P_{\theta+\omega'} [\Gamma]_{I, -\infty}$  is  $I$ -good by [Example 7.1.2](#), it follows that

$$P_{\theta+\omega} [P_{\theta+\omega'} [\Gamma]_{I, -\infty}] = P_{\theta+\omega} [P_{\theta+\omega'} [\Gamma]_{I, -\infty}]_I.$$

Our assertion follows from [Proposition 3.2.12](#).  $\square$

prop:NAposNAemb

**Proposition 13.1.2** *There is a natural injective map*

$$\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0} \hookrightarrow \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta), \quad \Gamma \mapsto (P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma]_I)_{\omega \in \text{K\"ah}(X)}.$$

In the sequel, we will not distinguish an element in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  with its image in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ .

**Proof** It is obvious that this map is well-defined. It suffices to argue its injectivity. Suppose that  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  and

$$P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma]_I = P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma']_I$$

for some K\"ahler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ . Then for any  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ , we have

$$\Gamma_{\tau} \sim_I \Gamma'_{\tau}$$

by [Proposition 6.1.3](#). It follows again from [Proposition 6.1.3](#) that

$$\Gamma_{\tau} = \Gamma'_{\tau}.$$

**Definition 13.1.2** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ . We define  $\Gamma_{\max}$  as  $P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma]_{I, \max}$  for any K\"ahler form  $\omega$  on  $X$ .

Note that under the identification of [Proposition 13.1.2](#), for any  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ , this definition is compatible with the notion of  $\Gamma_{\max}$  in [Definition 10.1.1](#).

**Definition 13.1.3** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ , we define its volume as follows:

$$\text{vol } \Gamma := \lim_{\omega \in \text{K\"ah}(X)} \int_X (\theta + \omega + \text{dd}^c P_{\theta+\omega'} [\Gamma]_{I, -\infty})^n \in [0, \infty).$$

Observe that the net is decreasing, so the limit exists.

**Proposition 13.1.3** *Let  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Then*

$$\text{vol } \Gamma = \int_X (\theta + \text{dd}^c \Gamma_{-\infty})^n.$$

*Proof* This follows from [Proposition 3.1.8](#), [Corollary 3.1.3](#) and [Proposition 13.1.1](#).  $\square$

def:PSHNAtarangeneral

**Definition 13.1.4** Let  $\omega$  be a closed real smooth positive  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . We define the map

$$P_{\theta+\omega}[\bullet]_I : \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta) \rightarrow \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta + \omega)$$

as follows: given  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ , we define  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma]_I$  as the element such that for any  $\omega' \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$ , we have

$$P_{\theta+\omega+\omega'}[P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma]_I]_I = P_{\theta+\omega+\omega'}[\Gamma]_I.$$

It is straightforward to check that under the identification of [Proposition 13.1.2](#), the map  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\bullet]_I$  extends the map [\(13.1\)](#).

**Proposition 13.1.4** *The maps  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\bullet]_I$  in [Definition 13.1.4](#) together induce a bijection*

$$\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta) \xrightarrow{\sim} \varprojlim_{\omega \in \text{K\"ah}(X)} \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta + \omega). \quad (13.2)$$

{eq:PSHNAprojlimigeneral2}

*Proof* It is a tautology that the maps  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\bullet]_I$  in [Definition 13.1.4](#) are compatible with the transition maps. So the map [\(13.2\)](#) is well-defined. It is injective by the same argument as [Proposition 13.1.2](#). We argue the surjectivity.

By unfolding the definitions, an object in the target of [\(13.2\)](#) is an assignment: with each  $\omega \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$ , we associate a family  $(\Gamma^{\omega, \omega'})_{\omega' \in \text{K\"ah}(X)}$  satisfying:

- (1)  $\Gamma^{\omega, \omega'} \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta + \omega + \omega')_{>0}$  for each  $\omega, \omega' \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$ ;
- (2) for each  $\omega, \omega', \omega'' \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$  satisfying  $\omega'' \geq \omega'$ , we have

$$P_{\theta+\omega+\omega''}[\Gamma^{\omega, \omega'}]_I = \Gamma^{\omega, \omega''};$$

- (3) for each  $\omega, \omega', \omega'' \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$  satisfying  $\omega \leq \omega'$ , we have

$$P_{\theta+\omega'+\omega''}[\Gamma^{\omega, \omega''}]_I = \Gamma^{\omega', \omega''}.$$

The preimage of such an object is given by the family  $(\Gamma^{\omega})_{\omega \in \text{K\"ah}(X)}$  given by

$$\Gamma^{\omega} = \Gamma^{\omega/2, \omega/2}.$$

The fact that the image of  $\Gamma$  is as expected is a tautology, which we leave to the readers.  $\square$

With an almost identical argument involving [Proposition 3.1.8](#), we get

prop:PSHNAreform1

**Proposition 13.1.5** *The maps  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\bullet]_I$  in Definition 13.1.4 and the injective maps Proposition 13.1.2 together induce bijections*

$$\mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(X, \theta) \xrightarrow{\sim} \varprojlim_{\omega} \mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(X, \theta + \omega)_{>0} \xrightarrow{\sim} \varprojlim_{\omega} \mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(X, \theta + \omega), \quad (13.3)$$

{eq:PSHNAprojlimigeneral}

where  $\omega$  runs over either the partially ordered set of all smooth closed real positive  $(1, 1)$ -forms with positive volume on  $X$  or  $\mathrm{K\ddot{a}h}(X)$ .

cor:PSHNAbimero

**Corollary 13.1.1** *Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism from a compact Kähler manifold  $Y$ . Then  $\pi^*$  induces a bijection*

$$\mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(X, \theta) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(Y, \pi^* \theta).$$

**Proof** This follows immediately from Proposition 13.1.5.  $\square$

It is immediate to verify that  $\pi^*$  in Corollary 13.1.1 extends the map Proposition 10.3.3.

## 13.2 Operations on non-Archimedean metrics

Let  $X$  be a connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $\theta, \theta', \theta''$  be closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -forms on  $X$  representing big cohomology classes.

**Definition 13.2.1** Let  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(X, \theta)$ . We say  $\Gamma \leq \Gamma'$  if  $\Gamma_{\max} \leq \Gamma'_{\max}$  and for some  $\omega \in \mathrm{K\ddot{a}h}(X)$ , we have

$$P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma]_I \geq P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma']_I.$$

This notion is independent of the choice of  $\omega$  thanks to (10.13).

Moreover, we have the following:

**Proposition 13.2.1** *Let  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(X, \theta)$  and  $\omega$  be a closed smooth positive  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ , then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $\Gamma \leq \Gamma'$ ;
- (2)  $P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma]_I \leq P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma']_I$ .

**Proof** This follows immediately from (10.13).  $\square$

Observe that this definition coincides with the corresponding definition in Definition 10.4.1 when  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ .

def:sumNAmetrics

**Definition 13.2.2** Let  $\Gamma \in \mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(X, \theta)$  and  $\Gamma' \in \mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(X, \theta')$ . Then we define  $\Gamma + \Gamma' \in \mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(X, \theta + \theta')$  as the unique element such that for any  $\omega \in \mathrm{K\ddot{a}h}(X)$ , we have

$$P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma + \Gamma']_I = P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma]_I + P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma']_I.$$



This definition yields an element in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta + \theta')$  by [Lemma 10.4.3](#).

**Proposition 13.2.2** *Let  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  and  $\Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta')$ . Suppose that  $\omega, \omega'$  are two smooth closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -forms on  $X$ . Then*

$$P_{\theta+\omega+\theta'+\omega'}[\Gamma + \Gamma']_I = P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma]_I + P_{\theta'+\omega'}[\Gamma']_I.$$

**Proof** This is a direct consequence of [Lemma 10.4.3](#).  $\square$

**Proposition 13.2.3** *The operation  $+$  is commutative and associative: for any  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ ,  $\Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta')$  and  $\Gamma'' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta'')$ , we have*

$$\Gamma + \Gamma' = \Gamma' + \Gamma, \quad (\Gamma + \Gamma') + \Gamma'' = \Gamma + (\Gamma' + \Gamma'').$$

**Proof** This is a direct consequence of [Proposition 10.4.1](#).  $\square$

**Definition 13.2.3** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  and  $C \in \mathbb{R}$ . We define  $\Gamma + C \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  as the unique element such that for any  $\omega \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$ , we have

$$P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma + C] = P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma] + C.$$

It is obvious from [Definition 10.4.3](#) that  $\Gamma + C \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ . It is also obvious that this definition extends [Definition 10.4.3](#).

**Proposition 13.2.4** *Let  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  and  $C \in \mathbb{R}$ . Suppose that  $\omega$  is a smooth closed positive  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . Then*

$$P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma]_I + C = P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma + C]_I.$$

**Proof** This is clear by definition.  $\square$

prop:NAmetricplusC

**Proposition 13.2.5** *Let  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ ,  $\Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta')$  and  $C, C' \in \mathbb{R}$ , then*

- (1)  $(\Gamma + \Gamma') + C = \Gamma + (\Gamma' + C) = (\Gamma + C) + \Gamma'$ ;
- (2)  $\Gamma + (C + C') = (\Gamma + C) + C'$ .

**Proof** This is a direct consequence of [Proposition 10.4.2](#).  $\square$

def:PSHNAlor

**Definition 13.2.4** Let  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ , we define  $\Gamma \vee \Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  as the unique element such that for any  $\omega \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$ , we have

$$P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma \vee \Gamma']_I = P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma]_I \vee P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma']_I.$$

It follows from [Lemma 10.4.5](#) that  $\Gamma \vee \Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  and this definition extends the corresponding definition in [Definition 10.4.4](#).

**Proposition 13.2.6** *Let  $\Gamma, \Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  and  $\omega$  be a closed smooth positive  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . Then*

$$P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma \vee \Gamma']_I = P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma]_I \vee P_{\theta+\omega}[\Gamma']_I.$$

**Proof** This is a direct consequence of [Lemma 10.4.5](#).  $\square$

**Proposition 13.2.7** *The operation  $\vee$  is commutative and associative.*

In particular, given a finite non-empty family  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ , we then define  $\bigvee_{i \in I} \Gamma^i$  in the obvious way.

**Proof** This is a direct consequence of [Corollary 10.4.1](#).  $\square$

**Definition 13.2.5** Let  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  be a non-empty family in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ . Assume that

$$\sup_{i \in I} \Gamma_{\max}^i < \infty. \quad (13.4)$$

{eq:supPSHNAmaxfinite}

Then we define  $\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  as the unique element such that for any  $\omega \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$ , we have

$$P_{\theta+\omega} \left[ \sup_{i \in I} \Gamma^i \right] = \sup_{i \in I}^* P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma^i].$$

It follows immediately from [Lemma 10.4.7](#) that  $\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  and this definition extends [Definition 10.4.6](#). Moreover, this definition clearly extends [Definition 13.2.4](#) as well.

**Proposition 13.2.8** *Let  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  be a non-empty in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  satisfying (13.4). Assume that  $\omega$  is a closed smooth positive  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . Then*

$$P_{\theta+\omega} \left[ \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \right] = \sup_{i \in I}^* P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma^i].$$

**Proof** This is a direct consequence of [Lemma 10.4.7](#).  $\square$

prop:NAChoquet

**Proposition 13.2.9** *Let  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  be a non-empty in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  satisfying (13.4). Then there exists a countable subfamily  $I' \subseteq I$  such that*

$$\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i = \sup_{i \in I'}^* \Gamma^i.$$

**Proof** For any fixed  $\omega \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$ , thanks to [Proposition 10.4.5](#), we could find a countable subfamily  $I' \subseteq I$  such that

$$\sup_{i \in I}^* P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma^i]_I = \sup_{i \in I'}^* P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma^i]_I.$$

It suffices to show that for any other  $\omega' \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$ , we have

$$\sup_{i \in I}^* P_{\theta+\omega'} [\Gamma^i]_I = \sup_{i \in I'}^* P_{\theta+\omega'} [\Gamma^i]_I.$$

This is an immediate consequence of [Proposition 6.1.6](#).  $\square$

prop:supGammiotherprop2

**Proposition 13.2.10** Let  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  be a non-empty family in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  satisfying (13.4). Let  $C \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then

$$\sup_{i \in I}^*(\Gamma^i + C) = \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i + C.$$

Suppose that  $(\Gamma'^i)_{i \in I}$  is another family in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  satisfying (13.4). Suppose that  $\Gamma^i \leq \Gamma'^i$  for all  $i \in I$ , then

$$\sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \leq \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma'^i.$$

**Proof** This is an immediate consequence of Proposition 10.4.6.  $\square$

**Definition 13.2.6** Let  $(\Gamma_i)_{i \in I}$  be a decreasing net in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ . Assume that

$$\inf_{i \in I} \Gamma_{i, \max} > -\infty, \quad (13.5)$$

{eq:decretcontition}

then we define  $\inf_{i \in I} \Gamma_i \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  as the unique element such that for each  $\omega \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$ , the component

$$P_{\theta+\omega} \left[ \inf_{i \in I} \Gamma_i \right]_I \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta + \omega)_{>0}$$

is defined as follows:

(1) we set

$$\left( P_{\theta+\omega} \left[ \inf_{i \in I} \Gamma_i \right]_I \right)_{\max} = \inf_{i \in I} \Gamma_{i, \max};$$

(2) For any  $\tau < \inf_{i \in I} \Gamma_{i, \max}$ , we define

$$\left( P_{\theta+\omega} \left[ \inf_{i \in I} \Gamma_i \right]_I \right)_{\tau} = \inf_{i \in I} P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma_i, \tau]_I. \quad (13.6)$$

{eq:decrettestcurdef}

We observe that

$$P_{\theta+\omega} \left[ \inf_{i \in I} \Gamma_i \right]_I \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta + \omega)_{>0}.$$

This follows from Proposition 3.2.11. Now it is clear that  $\inf_{i \in I} \Gamma_i \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ .

prop:infGammiotherprop2

**Proposition 13.2.11** Let  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  be a decreasing net in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  satisfying (13.5). Let  $C \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then

$$\inf_{i \in I} (\Gamma^i + C) = \inf_{i \in I} \Gamma^i + C.$$

Suppose that  $(\Gamma'^i)_{i \in I}$  is another decreasing net in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  satisfying (13.5). Suppose that  $\Gamma^i \leq \Gamma'^i$  for all  $i \in I$ , then

$$\inf_{i \in I} \Gamma^i \leq \inf_{i \in I} \Gamma'^i.$$

**Proof** This is clear by definition.  $\square$

**Definition 13.2.7** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  and  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ , then we define  $\lambda\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \lambda\theta)$  as the unique element such that for any  $\omega \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$ , we have

$$P_{\lambda\theta+\omega}[\lambda\Gamma]_I = \lambda P_{\theta+\lambda^{-1}\omega}[\Gamma]_I.$$

It follows immediately from [Lemma 10.4.8](#) that  $\lambda\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \lambda\theta)$  and this definition extends [Definition 10.4.7](#).

**Proposition 13.2.12** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  and  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ . Then for any closed smooth positive  $(1, 1)$ -form  $\omega$  on  $X$ , we have

$$P_{\lambda\theta+\omega}[\lambda\Gamma]_I = \lambda P_{\theta+\lambda^{-1}\omega}[\Gamma]_I.$$

**Proof** This follows immediately from [Lemma 10.4.8](#).  $\square$

prop:resclacomp2

**Proposition 13.2.13** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ ,  $\Gamma' \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta')$ ,  $C \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $\lambda, \lambda' > 0$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda(\Gamma + \Gamma') &= \lambda\Gamma + \lambda\Gamma', \\ (\lambda\lambda')\Gamma &= \lambda(\lambda'\Gamma), \\ \lambda(\Gamma + C) &= \lambda\Gamma + \lambda C. \end{aligned}$$

Suppose that  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  is a non-empty family in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  satisfying [\(13.4\)](#), then

$$\lambda \left( \sup_{i \in I}^* \Gamma^i \right) = \sup_{i \in I}^* (\lambda \Gamma^i).$$

If  $(\Gamma^i)_{i \in I}$  is a decreasing net in  $\text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$  satisfying [\(13.5\)](#), then

$$\lambda \left( \inf_{i \in I} \Gamma^i \right) = \inf_{i \in I} (\lambda \Gamma^i).$$

**Proof** Everything except the last assertion follows from [Proposition 10.4.8](#). The last assertion is obvious by definition.  $\square$

**Definition 13.2.8** Let  $\Gamma \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)$ . Let  $Y \subseteq X$  be an irreducible analytic subset. We say that the trace operator of  $\Gamma$  along  $Y$  is *well-defined* if

$$\nu(P_{\theta+\omega''}[\Gamma_\tau]_I, Y) = 0$$

for small enough  $\tau$  and any  $\omega'' \in \text{K\"ah}(X)$ . We define

$$(\text{Tr}_Y(\Gamma))_{\max} := \sup \{ \tau < \Gamma_{\max} : \nu(P_{\theta+\omega''}[\Gamma_\tau]_I, Y) = 0 \}.$$

In this case, we define  $\text{Tr}_Y(\Gamma) \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(\tilde{Y}, \theta|_{\tilde{Y}})$  as the unique element such that for any  $\omega \in \text{K\"ah}(\tilde{Y})$ , the component

$$P_{\theta|_{\tilde{Y}}+\omega}[\text{Tr}_Y(\Gamma)]_I \in \text{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(Y, \theta|_{\tilde{Y}} + \omega)_{>0}$$

is defined as follows:

(1) we let

$$\left( P_{\theta|_{\tilde{Y}}+\omega} [\mathrm{Tr}_Y(\Gamma)]_I \right)_{\max} = (\mathrm{Tr}_Y(\Gamma))_{\max}; \quad (13.7) \quad \boxed{\{eq:tracemax\}}$$

(2) For each  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$  less than the common value (13.7), we define

$$P_{\theta|_{\tilde{Y}}+\omega} [\mathrm{Tr}_Y(\Gamma)]_{I,\tau} := P_{\theta|_{\tilde{Y}}+\omega} [\mathrm{Tr}_Y^{\theta+\tilde{\omega}} (P_{\theta+\tilde{\omega}} [\Gamma]_{I,\tau})],$$

where  $\tilde{\omega}$  is an arbitrary Kähler form on  $X$  such that  $\omega \geq \tilde{\omega}|_{\tilde{Y}}$ .

It follows from [GK20, Proposition 3.5] that  $\tilde{Y}$  is a normal Kähler space. We observe that the choice of the trace operator  $\mathrm{Tr}_Y^{\theta+\tilde{\omega}} (P_{\theta+\tilde{\omega}} [\Gamma]_{I,\tau})$  is irrelevant since two different choice are  $I$ -equivalent. Moreover,

$$\left( P_{\theta|_{\tilde{Y}}+\omega} [\mathrm{Tr}_Y(\Gamma)]_I \right)_{\tau}$$

is  $I$ -model by Proposition 8.1.2.

Furthermore,

$$P_{\theta|_{\tilde{Y}}+\omega} [\mathrm{Tr}_Y(\Gamma)]_I \in \mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(Y, \theta|_{\tilde{Y}} + \omega)_{>0}$$

is a consequence of Proposition 8.2.1. It is therefore clear that  $\mathrm{Tr}_Y(\Gamma) \in \mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(X, \theta)$ .

**Proposition 13.2.14** *Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism from a compact Kähler manifold  $Y$ . Then all definitions in this section are invariant under pulling-back to  $Y$ .*

The meaning is clear in most cases. In the case of the trace operator, this means the following: suppose that  $Z \subseteq X$  is an analytic subset and  $\Gamma \in \mathrm{PSH}^{\mathrm{NA}}(X, \theta)$  has non-trivial restriction to  $Z$ . Suppose that  $Z$  is not contained in the non-isomorphism locus of  $\pi$  so that the strict transform  $W$  of  $Z$  is defined. If we write  $\Pi: W \rightarrow Z$  for the restriction of  $\pi$  and  $\tilde{\Pi}: \tilde{W} \rightarrow \tilde{Z}$  the strict transform of  $\Pi$ , then we have

$$\tilde{\Pi}^* \mathrm{Tr}_Z(\Gamma) = \mathrm{Tr}_W(\pi^* \Gamma).$$

**Proof** We only prove the assertion for the trace operator, as the other proofs are similar.

We shall use the notations above. Observe that for any closed positive smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  with positive mass, we have

$$(\tilde{\Pi}^* \mathrm{Tr}_Z(\Gamma))_{\max} = (\mathrm{Tr}_Z(\Gamma))_{\max} = \sup \{ \tau < \Gamma_{\max} : \nu(P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma]_{I,\tau}, Z) = 0 \}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathrm{Tr}_W(\pi^* \Gamma))_{\max} &= \sup \{ \tau < \Gamma_{\max} : \nu(P_{\pi^* \theta + \pi^* \omega} [\pi^* \Gamma]_{I,\tau}, W) = 0 \} \\ &= \sup \{ \tau < \Gamma_{\max} : \nu(\pi^* P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma]_{I,\tau}, W) = 0 \} \\ &= \sup \{ \tau < \Gamma_{\max} : \nu(P_{\theta+\omega} [\Gamma]_{I,\tau}, Z) = 0 \}. \end{aligned}$$

Here we applied implicitly [Proposition 13.1.5](#). Therefore,

$$(\tilde{\Pi}^* \operatorname{Tr}_Z(\Gamma))_{\max} = (\operatorname{Tr}_W(\pi^* \Gamma))_{\max}.$$

Let  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}$  be less than this common value. Take a closed smooth Kähler form  $\omega$  (resp.  $\omega'$ ) on  $\tilde{Z}$  (resp.  $\tilde{W}$ ) with positive mass. We may assume that  $\omega' \geq \tilde{\Pi}^* \omega$ . Take a Kähler form  $\tilde{\omega}$  on  $Y$  (resp.  $\tilde{\omega}'$  on  $X$ ) such that

$$\omega' \geq \tilde{\omega}'|_{\tilde{W}}, \quad \omega \geq \tilde{\omega}|_{\tilde{Z}}.$$

Without loss of generality, we may assume that

$$\tilde{\omega}' \geq \pi^* \tilde{\omega}.$$

It suffices to show that

$$\operatorname{Tr}_W^{\pi^* \theta + \tilde{\omega}'} (P_{\pi^* \theta + \tilde{\omega}'} [\pi^* \Gamma]_{I, \tau}) \sim_P \tilde{\Pi}^* \operatorname{Tr}_Z^{\theta + \tilde{\omega}} [P_{\theta + \tilde{\omega}} [\Gamma]_{I, \tau}].$$

Using [Proposition 8.2.1](#), this is equivalent to

$$\operatorname{Tr}_W (P_{\pi^* \theta + \pi^* \omega} [\pi^* \Gamma]_{I, \tau}) \sim_P \tilde{\Pi}^* \operatorname{Tr}_Z [P_{\theta + \tilde{\omega}} [\Gamma]_{I, \tau}].$$

This is a consequence of [Lemma 8.2.1](#). □

### 13.3 Duistermaat–Heckman measures

sec:DHmeasure

Let  $X$  be an connected compact Kähler manifold of dimension  $n$  and  $\theta$  be a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$  representing a big cohomology class.

We fix a smooth flag  $Y_\bullet$  on  $X$ .

Now suppose that  $\Gamma \in \operatorname{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$ . Recall that  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, \Gamma) \in \operatorname{TC}(\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\theta, V_\theta))$  is defined in [Theorem 11.5.2](#).

**Definition 13.3.1** The *Duistermaat–Heckman measure*  $\operatorname{DH}(\Gamma)$  of  $\Gamma \in \operatorname{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  is defined as the Duistermaat–Heckman measure of the Okounkov test curve  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\Gamma)$ .

thm:DHindep

**Theorem 13.3.1** The *Duistermaat–Heckman measure*  $\operatorname{DH}(\Gamma)$  of  $\Gamma \in \operatorname{PSH}^{\text{NA}}(X, \theta)_{>0}$  is independent of the choice of the flag  $Y_\bullet$ .

**Proof** Assume further more that  $\Gamma$  is bounded, we observe that the moments of the random variable  $G[\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\Gamma)]$  as computed in [\(11.54\)](#) are independent of the choice of the flag. Since the Duistermaat–Heckman measure has bounded support in this case, we conclude that  $\operatorname{DH}(\Gamma)$  is uniquely determined.

In general,  $\Gamma$  is the decreasing limit of the sequence  $\Gamma \vee \Gamma^k$  as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ , where  $\Gamma^k: (-\infty, -k) \rightarrow \operatorname{PSH}(X, \theta)$  takes the constant value  $\Gamma_{-\infty}$ . It follows from the general continuity result [Theorem 11.4.2](#) that  $\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\Gamma)_\tau$  is the decreasing limit of

$\Delta_{Y_\bullet}(\Gamma \vee \Gamma^k)_\tau$  for any  $\tau < \Gamma_{\max}$ . So  $\mathrm{DH}(\Gamma \vee \Gamma^k) \rightarrow \mathrm{DH}(\Gamma)$  by [Lemma 11.5.2](#). It follows that  $\mathrm{DH}(\Gamma)$  is independent of the choice of the flag.  $\square$

More generally, when  $X$  does not admit a smooth flag, we could make a modification  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  so that  $Y$  admits a flag. We define

$$\mathrm{DH}(\Gamma) = \mathrm{DH}(\pi^*\Gamma).$$

It follows from [Theorem 11.4.2](#) that this measure is independent of the choice of  $\pi$ .





## Appendix A

### Convex functions and convex bodies

chap:convex

We study convex functions in this section. Our basic reference is [\[Roc70\]](#).

#### A.1 The notion of convex functions

Let  $N$  be a real vector space of finite dimension.

**Definition A.1.1** Let  $F: N \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty]$  be a function. The *epigraph* of  $F$  is defined as the following set

$$\text{epi } F := \{(n, r) \in N \times \mathbb{R} : r \geq F(n)\}.$$

**Definition A.1.2** A *convex function* on  $N$  is a function  $F: N \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty]$  such that the epigraph  $\text{epi } F$  is a convex subset of  $N \times \mathbb{R}$ .

The *effective domain* of  $F$  is the set

$$\text{Dom } F := \{n \in N : F(n) < \infty\}.$$

A convex function  $F$  on  $N$  such that  $\text{Dom } F \neq \emptyset$  and  $F(n) \neq -\infty$  for all  $n \in N$  is said to be *proper*.

The set of convex functions on  $N$  is denoted by  $\text{Conv}(N)$ . The subset set of proper convex functions is denoted by  $\text{Conv}^{\text{prop}}(N)$ .

The following characterization of convex functions is well-known.

lma:charconvex

**Lemma A.1.1** Let  $F: N \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty]$ . Then  $F$  is convex if and only if the following condition holds: suppose that  $n, r \in N$  and  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $a > F(n)$ ,  $b > F(r)$ , then for any  $t \in (0, 1)$ , we have

$$F(tn + (1-t)r) < ta + (1-t)b.$$

See [\[Roc70\]](#), Theorem 4.2] for the proof.

*Example A.1.1* Let  $A \subseteq N$  be a convex subset. Then the *characteristic function*  $\chi_A: N \rightarrow \{0, \infty\}$  of  $A$  is defined by

$$\chi_A(n) := \begin{cases} 0, & n \in A; \\ \infty, & n \notin A. \end{cases}$$

The function  $\chi_A$  lies in  $\text{Conv}(N)$ .

ex:suppfun

*Example A.1.2* Let  $M$  be the dual vector space of  $N$  and  $P \subseteq M$  be a convex subset. The *support function*  $\text{Supp}_P \in \text{Conv}(N)$  of  $P$  is defined as follows:

$$\text{Supp}_P(n) := \sup\{\langle m, n \rangle : m \in P\}.$$

It is well-known that convexity is preserved by a number of natural operations. We recall a few to fix the notation.

**Definition A.1.3** Let  $F_1, \dots, F_m \in \text{Conv}^{\text{prop}}(N)$  ( $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ ). We define their *infimal convolution*  $F_1 \square \dots \square F_m \in \text{Conv}(N)$  as follows:

$$F_1 \square \dots \square F_m(n) := \inf \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^m F_i(n_i) : n_i \in N, \sum_{i=1}^m n_i = n \right\}.$$

The fact  $F_1 \square \dots \square F_m \in \text{Conv}(N)$  is proved in [Roc70, Theorem 5.4]. One should note that  $F_1 \square \dots \square F_m$  is not always proper.

prop:supconv

**Proposition A.1.1** Let  $\{F_i\}_{i \in I}$  be a non-empty family in  $\text{Conv}(N)$ . Then  $\sup_{i \in I} F_i \in \text{Conv}(N)$ .

This follows from [Roc70, Theorem 5.5]. In particular, this allows us to introduce

def:LCE

**Definition A.1.4** Let  $f: N \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty]$ . The *lower convex envelope* of  $f$  is defined as

$$\text{CE } f := \sup\{F \in \text{Conv}(N) : F \leq f\}.$$

It follows from Proposition A.1.1 that  $\text{CE } f \in \text{Conv}(N)$ .

def:convwedge

**Definition A.1.5** Given a non-empty family  $\{F_i\}_{i \in I}$  in  $\text{Conv}(N)$ , we define

$$\bigwedge_{i \in I} F_i := \text{CE} \left( \inf_{i \in I} F_i \right).$$

When the family  $I$  is finite, say  $I = \{1, \dots, m\}$ , we also write

$$F_1 \wedge \dots \wedge F_m = \bigwedge_{i \in I} F_i.$$

prop:concvhull

**Proposition A.1.2** Let  $F_1, \dots, F_m \in \text{Conv}^{\text{prop}}(N)$ , then

$$F_1 \wedge \dots \wedge F_m(x) = \inf \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i F_i(x_i) : x_i \in \text{Dom}(F_i), \lambda_i \in [0, 1], \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i = 1, \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i x_i = x \right\}.$$

See [\[Roc70, Theorem 5.6\]](#) for the more general result.

lma:convdecnet

**Lemma A.1.2** Let  $\{F_i\}_{i \in I}$  be a decreasing net in  $\text{Conv}(N)$ . Then  $\inf_{i \in I} F_i \in \text{Conv}(N)$ .

**Proof** Write  $F = \inf_{i \in I} F_i$ . We shall apply the characterization in [Lemma A.1.1](#). Take  $n, r \in N$ ,  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $a > F(n)$ ,  $b > F(r)$  and  $t \in (0, 1)$ . We need to show that

$$F(tn + (1-t)r) < ta + (1-t)b. \quad (\text{A.1})$$

{eq:convtemp1}

By definition, there exists  $j \in I$  such that for any  $i \geq j$  with  $i \geq j$ , we have

$$a > F_i(n), \quad b > F_i(r).$$

It follows from [Lemma A.1.1](#) that

$$F_i(tn + (1-t)r) < ta + (1-t)b$$

for any  $i \geq j$ . Since  $F_i$  is decreasing in  $i$ , we conclude [\(A.1\)](#).  $\square$

def:convexclosure

**Definition A.1.6** Let  $F \in \text{Conv}(N)$ . The *closure*  $\text{cl } F \in \text{Conv}(N)$  of  $F$  is defined as follows: if  $F(n) = -\infty$  for some  $n \in N$ , then  $\text{cl } F := -\infty$ . Otherwise, we define  $\text{cl } F$  as the lower semicontinuity regularization of  $F$ .

A convex function  $F \in \text{Conv}(N)$  is *closed* if  $F = \text{cl } F$ . In other words,  $F \in \text{Conv}(N)$  if one of the following conditions hold:

- (1)  $F \equiv -\infty$ ;
- (2)  $F \equiv \infty$ ;
- (3)  $F$  is proper and lower semi-continuous.

**Proposition A.1.3** Let  $F \in \text{Conv}(N)$  be a closed convex function. Then  $F$  is the supremum of all affine functions lying below  $F$ .

See [\[Roc70, Theorem 12.1\]](#).

**Theorem A.1.1** Let  $F \in \text{Conv}^{\text{prop}}(N)$ . Then  $\text{cl } F$  is a closed proper convex function. Moreover,  $\text{cl } F$  agrees with  $F$  except possibly on the relative boundary of  $\text{Dom } F$ .

See [\[Roc70, Theorem 7.4\]](#).

def:partialorderconv

**Definition A.1.7** Given  $F, F' \in \text{Conv}(N)$ , we write  $F \leq F'$  if there is  $C \in \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$F \leq F' + C.$$

We say  $F \sim F'$  if  $F \leq F'$  and  $F' \leq F$  both hold.

## A.2 Legendre transform

Let  $N$  be a real vector space of finite dimension and  $M$  be the dual vector space. The pairing  $M \times N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  will be denoted by  $\langle \bullet, \bullet \rangle$ .

def:Legendregeneral

**Definition A.2.1** Let  $F \in \text{Conv}(N)$  be a convex function. We define the *Legendre transform* of  $F$  as the function  $F^* \in \text{Conv}(M)$ :

$$F^*(m) := \sup_{n \in N} (\langle m, n \rangle - F(n)) = \sup_{n \in \text{RelInt Dom } F} (\langle m, n \rangle - F(n)).$$

The latter equality follows from [Roc70](#), Corollary 12.2.21.

Recall the well-known Legendre–Fenchel duality [Roc70](#), Theorem 12.2].

thm:Legendredual

**Theorem A.2.1** Let  $F \in \text{Conv}(N)$ . Then  $F^*$  is a closed convex function. The function  $F^*$  is proper if and only if  $F$  is.

Moreover, we have  $(\text{cl } F)^* = F^*$  and

$$F^{**} = \text{cl } F.$$

ex:suppfundual

**Example A.2.1** Let  $P \subseteq M$  be a closed convex subset. Then

$$\text{Supp}_P^* = \chi_P, \quad \chi_P^* = \text{Supp}_P.$$

See [Roc70](#), Theorem 13.2].

**Definition A.2.2** Let  $F \in \text{Conv}(N)$  and  $n \in N$ . An element  $m \in M$  is a *subgradient* of  $F$  at  $n$  if

$$F(n') \geq F(n) + \langle n' - n, m \rangle, \quad \forall n' \in N. \quad (\text{A.2})$$

{eq:subgrad}

The set of subgradients of  $F$  at  $n$  is denoted by  $\nabla F(n)$ .

More generally, for any subset  $E \subseteq N$ , we write

$$\nabla F(E) = \bigcup_{n \in E} \nabla F(n).$$

def:convexPorder

**Definition A.2.3** Given  $F, F' \in \text{Conv}(N)$ , we write  $F \leq_P F'$  if

$$\overline{\nabla F(N)} \subseteq \overline{\nabla F'(N)}.$$

We write  $F \sim_P F'$  if  $F \leq_P F'$  and  $F' \leq_P F$ .

**Theorem A.2.2** Suppose that  $F \in \text{Conv}^{\text{prop}}(N)$ . Then the following hold:

- (1) for any  $n \notin \text{Dom } F$ ,  $\nabla F(n) = \emptyset$ ;
- (2) for any  $n \in \text{RelInt Dom } F$ ,  $\nabla F(n) \neq \emptyset$ ; Moreover, for any  $n' \in N$ , we have

$$\partial_{n'} F(n) = \sup \{ \langle n', m \rangle : m \in \nabla F(n) \};$$

- (3) for  $n \in N$ , the set  $\nabla F(n)$  is bounded if and only if  $n \in \text{Int Dom } F$ .

For the proof, we refer to [\[Roc70, Theorem 23.4\]](#).

`prop:gradDomFstar`

**Proposition A.2.1** *Let  $F \in \text{Conv}^{\text{prop}}(N)$ . Then*

$$\nabla F(N) \subseteq \text{Dom } F^*.$$

*If moreover  $F$  is closed, we have*

$$\text{RelInt Dom } F^* \subseteq \nabla F(N). \quad (\text{A.3})$$

`{eq:relintdomFstar}`

*In particular, if  $F$  is a proper closed convex function on  $N$ , then*

$$\overline{\nabla F(N)} = \overline{\text{Dom } F^*}.$$

**Proof** Suppose that  $m \in \nabla F(n)$  for some  $n \in N$ , it follows that (A.2) holds. In particular,

$$\langle m, n' \rangle - F(n') \leq \langle m, n \rangle - F(n).$$

It follows that

$$F^*(m) \leq \langle m, n \rangle - F(n) < \infty.$$

(A.3) is proved in [\[Roc70, Corollary 23.5.1\]](#). For the last assertion, it suffices to observe that  $\overline{\text{RelInt Dom } F^*} = \overline{\text{Dom } F^*}$ . ref?  $\square$

`prop:Legendretranssup`

**Proposition A.2.2** *Let  $\{F_i\}_{i \in I}$  be a non-empty family in  $\text{Conv}^{\text{prop}}(N)$ . Then*

$$\left( \bigwedge_{i \in I} F_i \right)^* = \sup_{i \in I} F_i^*, \quad \left( \sup_{i \in I} \text{cl } F_i \right)^* = \text{cl } \bigwedge_{i \in I} F_i^*.$$

*If  $I$  is finite and  $\overline{\text{Dom } F_i}$  is independent of the choice of  $i \in I$ , then*

$$\left( \sup_{i \in I} F_i \right)^* = \bigwedge_{i \in I} F_i^*.$$

Recall that  $\wedge$  is defined in [Definition A.1.5](#). See [\[Roc70, Theorem 16.5\]](#) for the proof.

`prop:sumLegendre`

**Proposition A.2.3** *Let  $F_1, \dots, F_r \in \text{Conv}^{\text{prop}}(N)$  ( $r \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ ). Assume that*

$$\bigcap_{i=1}^r \text{RelInt Dom}(F_i) \neq \emptyset,$$

*then*

$$\left( \sum_{i=1}^r F_i \right)^*(m) = \inf \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^r F_i^*(m_i) : m_1, \dots, m_r \in M, \sum_{i=1}^r m_i = m \right\}.$$

prop:Fsuppchar

**Proposition A.2.4** Let  $P \subseteq M$  be a convex body<sup>1</sup> and  $F \in \text{Conv}^{\text{prop}}(N)$ . The following are equivalent:

- (1)  $F \leq \text{Supp}_P$ ;
- (2)  $\text{Dom } F = N$  and  $F^*|_{M \setminus P} \equiv \infty$ ;
- (3)  $\text{Dom } F = N$  and  $\nabla F(N) \subseteq P$ .

Moreover, under these conditions,

$$F(n) - \text{Supp}_P(n) \leq F(0), \quad \forall n \in N. \quad (\text{A.4})$$

{eq:Fsupequal}

**Proof** i  $\implies$  ii: It is clear that  $\text{Dom } F = N$  since  $\text{Dom } \text{Supp}_P = N$ . From  $F \leq \text{Supp}_P$  and **Example A.2.1**, we know that

$$\chi_P = \text{Supp}_P^* \leq F^*.$$

So ii follows.

ii  $\implies$  iii: This follows from **Proposition A.2.1**.

iii  $\implies$  i: Taken  $n \in N$ , we know that  $F$  is locally Lipschitz [Roc70, Theorem 10.4], so we can compute

$$\begin{aligned} F(n) - F(0) &= \int_0^1 \left. \frac{d}{dt} \right|_{t=0} F(tn) dt = \int_0^1 \langle \nabla F(tn), n \rangle dt \\ &\leq \int_0^1 \text{Supp}_P(n) dt = \text{Supp}_P(n). \end{aligned}$$

In particular, (A.4) also follows.  $\square$

### A.3 Classes of convex functions

Let  $N$  be a real vector space of finite dimension and  $M$  be the dual vector space.

We shall fix a convex body  $P \subseteq M$ .

The following classes are introduced in [BB13].

def:convexPfunctions

**Definition A.3.1** We define the set  $\mathcal{P}(N, P)$  as the set of proper convex functions  $F \in \text{Conv}(N)$  such that  $F \leq \text{Supp}_P$ .

We define the set  $\mathcal{E}^\infty(N, P)$  as the set of closed convex functions  $F \in \text{Conv}(N)$  such that  $F \sim \text{Supp}_P$ .

We define the set  $\mathcal{E}(N, P)$  as follows: suppose that  $\text{Int } P = \emptyset$ , then  $\mathcal{E}(N, P) := \mathcal{P}(N, P)$ ; otherwise, let

$$\mathcal{E}(N, P) = \left\{ F \in \mathcal{P}(N, P) : P = \overline{\nabla F(N)} \right\}.$$

<sup>1</sup> Here a convex body refers to a non-empty closed convex subset, not necessarily having non-empty interior.

Observe that for any  $F \in \mathcal{P}(N, P)$ , we have  $\text{Dom } F = N$  and  $F$  is necessarily closed.

**Proposition A.3.1** *We have*

$$\mathcal{E}^\infty(N, P) \subseteq \mathcal{E}(N, P) \subseteq \mathcal{P}(N, P).$$

**Proof** When  $\text{Int } P = \emptyset$ , the assertion is clear. We assume that  $\text{Int } P \neq \emptyset$ . The second inclusion follows from definition. We only hand the first inequality. Take  $F \in \mathcal{E}^\infty(N, P)$ . By definition,  $F \sim \text{Supp}_P$  and hence  $F^* \sim \chi_P$ . It follows that  $P = \text{Dom } F^*$ .

By [Proposition A.2.4](#), we already know that

$$\nabla F(N) \subseteq P = \text{Dom } F^*.$$

On the other hand, by [Proposition A.2.1](#), we have

$$\text{Int } P \subseteq \nabla F(N).$$

So it follows that

$$P = \overline{\nabla F(N)}.$$

**Proposition A.3.2** *For any  $F \in \mathcal{E}^\infty(N, P)$ , we have  $F^*|_{M \setminus P} \equiv \infty$  and  $F^*$  is bounded on  $P$ .*

**Proof** From  $F \sim \text{Supp}_P$ , we take the Legendre transform to get  $F^* \sim \text{Supp}_P^* = \chi_P$ , where we applied [Example A.2.1](#).  $\square$

**Definition A.3.2** We endow the topology of pointwise convergence on  $\mathcal{P}(N, P)$ . Note that this topology coincides with the compact-open topology.

**Proposition A.3.3** *Let  $F \in \mathcal{P}(N, P)$ . Then there is a decreasing sequence  $F_j \in \mathcal{E}^\infty(N, P) \cap C^\infty(N)$  converging to  $F$ .*

See [\[BB13, Lemma 2.2\]](#).

We observe that the point  $0 \in N$  plays a special role since it does in the definition of the support function.

**Proposition A.3.4** *For any  $F \in \text{Conv}(N, P)$ , we have*

$$\max_N (F - \text{Supp}_P) = F(0).$$

**Proof** It follows from [\(A.4\)](#) that

$$\sup_N (F - \text{Supp}_P) \leq F(0).$$

The equality is clearly obtained at  $0 \in N$ .  $\square$

### A.4 Monge–Ampère measures

Let  $N$  be a free Abelian group of finite rank (i.e. a lattice) and  $M$  be its dual lattice. There is a canonical Lebesgue type measure on  $M_{\mathbb{R}}$ , denoted by  $\mathrm{d vol}$ , normalized so that the smallest cubes in  $M$  have volume 1. Similarly, the canonical measure on  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  is normalized in the same way and is denoted by  $\mathrm{d vol}$  as well.

We will write

$$N_{\mathbb{R}} = N \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{R}, \quad M_{\mathbb{R}} = M \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{R}.$$

**Definition A.4.1** Let  $F \in \mathrm{Conv}(N_{\mathbb{R}})$ , we define  $\mathrm{MA}_{\mathbb{R}} F$  as the Borel measure on  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  given as follows: for each Borel measurable set  $E \subseteq N_{\mathbb{R}}$ , define

$$\mathrm{MA}_{\mathbb{R}} F(E) := n! \int_{\nabla F(E)} \mathrm{d vol}.$$

**Proposition A.4.1** Let  $P \in M_{\mathbb{R}}$  be a convex body and  $F \in \mathcal{P}(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P)$ . Then  $F \in \mathcal{E}(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P)$  if and only if

$$\int_{M_{\mathbb{R}}} \mathrm{MA}_{\mathbb{R}} F = n! \mathrm{vol} P. \quad (\text{A.5}) \quad \boxed{\text{\{eq:cvxfullmass\}}}$$

*Proof* By definition of  $\mathrm{MA}_{\mathbb{R}}$ , (A.5) is equivalent to

$$\mathrm{vol} \overline{\nabla F(N_{\mathbb{R}})} = \mathrm{vol} P.$$

We first handle the case where  $\mathrm{Int} P \neq \emptyset$ . By [Proposition A.2.4](#), the latter is equivalent to

$$\overline{\nabla F(N_{\mathbb{R}})} = P.$$

Now assume that  $\mathrm{Int} P = \emptyset$ , then  $\mathrm{vol} \overline{\nabla F(N_{\mathbb{R}})} = \mathrm{vol} P = 0$  by [Proposition A.2.4](#). The assertion is clear.  $\square$

thm:realMAcont

**Theorem A.4.1** Let  $F, F_j \in \mathcal{P}(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P)$  ( $j \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ ). Assume that  $F_j \rightarrow F$ , then  $\mathrm{MA}_{\mathbb{R}}(F_j)$  converges to  $\mathrm{MA}_{\mathbb{R}}(F)$  weakly.

See [Fig17](#), Proposition 2.6].

There is a well-known comparison principle.

thm:convcomp

**Theorem A.4.2** Let  $F, F' \in \mathcal{P}(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P)$ . Assume that  $F \leq F'$ , then

$$\overline{\nabla F(N_{\mathbb{R}})} \subseteq \overline{\nabla F'(N_{\mathbb{R}})}.$$

$$\int_{N_{\mathbb{R}}} \mathrm{MA}_{\mathbb{R}}(F) \leq \int_{N_{\mathbb{R}}} \mathrm{MA}_{\mathbb{R}}(F').$$

See [BB13](#), Lemma 2.5].



### A.5 Separation lemmata

lma:polybdd

**Lemma A.5.1** Let  $\alpha, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_m \in \mathbb{Z}^n$ . Let  $\Delta$  be the polytope generated by  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m$ . Then the following are equivalent:

(1)

$$|z^\alpha|^2 \left( \sum_{i=1}^m |z^{\beta_i}|^2 \right)^{-1} \quad (\text{A.6})$$

{eq:zalpha}

is a bounded function on  $\mathbb{C}^{*n}$ .

(2)  $\alpha \in \Delta$ .

**Proof** (2)  $\implies$  (1). Write  $\alpha = \sum_i t_i \beta_i$ , where  $t_i \in [0, 1]$ ,  $\sum_i t_i = 1$ . Then

$$|z^\alpha|^2 \left( \sum_{i=1}^m |z^{\beta_i}|^2 \right)^{-1} = \prod_i |z^{\beta_i}|^{2t_i} \left( \sum_{i=1}^m |z^{\beta_i}|^2 \right)^{-1} \leq \prod_i \sum_j |z^{\beta_j}|^{2t_i} \left( \sum_{i=1}^m |z^{\beta_i}|^2 \right)^{-1} \leq 1.$$

(1)  $\implies$  (2). Assume that  $\alpha \notin \Delta$ . Let  $H$  be a hyperplane that separates  $\alpha$  and  $\Delta$ . Say  $H$  is defined by  $a_1 x_1 + \dots + a_n x_n = C$ . Set

$$z(t) := (t^{a_1}, \dots, t^{a_n}).$$

Then clearly (A.6) evaluated at  $z(t)$  is not bounded.  $\square$

lma:polybdd2

**Lemma A.5.2** Let  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m \in \mathbb{N}^n$  and  $\beta \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . Then the following are equivalent

(1)  $\log \sum_{i=1}^m e^{x \cdot \beta_i} - (x, \beta)$  is bounded from below.(2)  $\beta$  is in the convex hull of the  $\beta_i$ 's.

**Proof** The proof follows the same pattern as Lemma A.5.1.  $\square$

### A.6 Convex bodies

We write  $\mathcal{K}_n$  for the set of convex bodies in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  equipped with the Hausdorff metric.

def:convbodies

**Definition A.6.1** A *convex body* in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is a non-empty compact convex set.

We allow a convex body to have empty interior.

def:Hausdorffmetric

**Definition A.6.2** The *Hausdorff metric* between  $K_1, K_2 \in \mathcal{K}_n$  is given by

$$d_n(K_1, K_2) := \max \left\{ \sup_{x_1 \in K_1} \inf_{x_2 \in K_2} |x_1 - x_2|, \sup_{x_2 \in K_2} \inf_{x_1 \in K_1} |x_1 - x_2| \right\}.$$

It is well-known that the metric space  $(\mathcal{K}_n, d_n)$  is complete. We will need the following fundamental theorem:

thm:Blaschke

**Theorem A.6.1 (Blaschke selection theorem)** *The metric space  $(\mathcal{K}_n, d_n)$  is locally compact.*

We refer to [Sch14, Section 1.8] for details.

lma:Hausdorffconvslice

**Lemma A.6.1** *Let  $K \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  be a convex body. Let*

$$t_{\min} := \min\{t \in \mathbb{R} : \{x_1 = t\} \cap K \neq \emptyset\}, \quad t_{\max} := \max\{t \in \mathbb{R} : \{x_1 = t\} \cap K \neq \emptyset\}.$$

*Then for  $t \in [t_{\min}, t_{\max}]$ , the map*

$$t \mapsto \{x_1 = t\} \cap K$$

*is continuous with respect to the Hausdorff metric.*

Here  $x_1$  denotes the first coordinate in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

**Proof** We may assume that  $t_{\min} < t_{\max}$  as otherwise there is nothing to prove.

For each  $t \in [t_{\min}, t_{\max}]$ , we write  $K_t = \{x_1 = t\} \cap K$ . Let  $t_j \rightarrow t$  be a convergent sequence in  $[t_{\min}, t_{\max}]$ , we want to show that  $K_{t_j}$  converges to  $K_t$  with respect to the Hausdorff metric. Recall that this amounts to the following two assertions:

- (1) For each convergent sequence  $x_j \in K_{t_j}$  with limit  $x$ , we have  $x \in K_t$ ;
- (2) Given any  $x \in K_t$ , up to replacing  $t_j$  by a subsequence, we can find  $x_j \in K_{t_j}$  converging to  $x$ .  $\square$

The first assertion is obvious. Let us prove the second. Take  $x = (t, x') \in K_t$ . Up to replacing  $t_j$  by a subsequence and taking the symmetry into account, we may assume that  $t_j > t$  for all  $t$ . In particular,  $t < t_{\max}$ .

We can find a point  $y = (y^1, y') \in K$  such that  $y^1 > t$  (for example, there is always such a point with  $y^1 = t_{\max}$ ). Replacing  $t_j$  by a subsequence, we may assume that  $t_j \in (t, y^1)$  for all  $j$ . Then it suffices to take

$$x_j = \frac{y^1 - t_j}{y^1 - t} x + \frac{t_j - t}{y^1 - t} y.$$

lma:intconvexset

**Lemma A.6.2** *Let  $D_j \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  ( $j \geq 1$ ) be a decreasing sequence of convex sets. Assume that  $\text{vol} \bigcap_j D_j > 0$ , then*

$$\overline{\bigcap_{j=1}^{\infty} D_j} = \bigcap_{j=1}^{\infty} \overline{D_j}.$$

**Proof** The  $\subseteq$  direction is clear. By convexity, it suffices to show that both sides have the same positive volume. As the boundary of convex sets has zero Lebesgue measure, it follows that the volumes of both sides are equal to  $\lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} \text{vol } D_j$ .  $\square$

thm:contvol

**Theorem A.6.2** *The Lebesgue volume  $\text{vol} : \mathcal{K}_n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  is continuous.*

thm:Hausconvcond

**Theorem A.6.3** Let  $K_i, K \in \mathcal{K}_n$  ( $i \in \mathbb{N}$ ). Then  $K_i \xrightarrow{d_n} K$  if and only if the following conditions hold

- (1) Each point  $x \in K$  is the limit of a sequence  $x_i \in K_i$ .
- (2) The limit of any convergent sequence  $(x_{i_j})_{j \in \mathbb{N}}$  with  $x_{i_j} \in K_{i_j}$  lies in  $K$ , where  $i_j$  is a subsequence of  $1, 2, \dots$

lma:latcvb

**Lemma A.6.3** Let  $K \in \mathcal{K}_n$  be a convex body with positive volume and  $K' \in \mathcal{K}_n$ . Assume that for some large enough  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ ,  $K'$  contains  $K \cap (k^{-1}\mathbb{Z})^n$ , then  $K' \supseteq K^{n^{1/2}k^{-1}}$ .

**Proof** Let  $x \in K^{n^{1/2}k^{-1}}$ , by assumption, the closed ball  $B$  with center  $x$  and radius  $n^{1/2}k^{-1}$  is contained in  $K$ . Observe that  $x$  can be written as a convex combination of points in  $B \cap (k^{-1}\mathbb{Z})^n$ , which are contained in  $K'$  by assumption. It follows that  $x \in K'$ .  $\square$

Given a sequence of convex bodies  $K_i$  ( $i \in \mathbb{N}$ ), we set

$$\varliminf_{i \rightarrow \infty} K_i = \overline{\bigcup_{i=0}^{\infty} \bigcap_{j \geq i} K_j}.$$

Suppose  $K$  is the limit of a subsequence of  $K_i$ , we have

$$\varliminf_{i \rightarrow \infty} K_i \subseteq K.$$

(A.7)

{eq:liminflimsup}

This is a simple consequence of [Theorem A.6.3](#).



## Appendix B

### Pluripotential theory on unibranch spaces

chap:unib

In this appendix, we extend the theory in the book to compact unibranch Kähler spaces.

#### B.1 Complex spaces

A complex space is assumed to be reduced, Hausdorff and paracompact in the whole book.

def:primdiv

**Definition B.1.1** A *prime divisor* over an irreducible complex space  $Z$  is a connected smooth hypersurface  $E \subseteq X'$ , where  $X' \rightarrow Z$  is a proper bimeromorphic morphism with  $X'$  smooth. Such a morphism  $X' \rightarrow Z$  is also called a *resolution* of  $Z$ .

Two prime divisors  $E_1 \subseteq X'_1$  and  $E_2 \subseteq X'_2$  over  $Z$  are *equivalent* if there is a common resolution  $X'' \rightarrow Z$  dominating both  $X'_1$  and  $X'_2$  such that the strict transforms of  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  coincide.

The set  $Z^{\text{div}}$  is the set of pairs  $(c, E)$ , where  $c \in \mathbb{Q}_{>0}$  and  $E$  is an equivalence class of a prime divisor over  $Z$ . For simplicity, we will denote the pair  $(c, E)$  by  $c \text{ ord}_E$ , although one should not really think of this object as a valuation unless  $Z$  is projective and irreducible.

Note that a prime divisor on  $Z$  does not always define a prime divisor over  $Z$  if  $Z$  is singular.

**Definition B.1.2** A complex space  $X$  is *unibranch* if for all  $x \in X$ , the local ring  $\mathcal{O}_{X,x}$  is unibranch.

It is shown in the arXiv version of [\[Xia23Mabuchi, Remark 2.7\]](#) that when  $X$  is a projective variety, this notion coincides with the corresponding algebraic notion of unibranchness.

thm:Zariskimain

**Theorem B.1.1 (Zariski's main theorem)** Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism between complex spaces. Assume that  $X$  is unibranch, then  $\pi$  has connected fibers.

We refer to [Dem85](#), Proof of Théorème 1.7].

def:modif

**Definition B.1.3** A *modification* of a compact complex space  $X$  is a finite composition of blow-ups with smooth centers.

thm:HironakaChow

**Theorem B.1.2 (Hironaka's Chow lemma)** *Suppose that  $X$  is a compact complex space. Then every proper bimeromorphic morphism to  $X$  can be dominated by a modification.*

This follows from the proof of [Hir75](#), Corollary 2].

thm:res

**Theorem B.1.3** *Let  $X$  be a compact complex space. Then there is a modification  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $Y$  is smooth.*

See [BM97](#), [Wlo09](#).  
See [BM97](#), [WTo09](#)].

cor:primerealization

**Corollary B.1.1** *Let  $X$  be a compact complex space and  $E$  be a prime divisor over  $X$ . Then there is a modification  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $Y$  is smooth and  $E$  can be realized as a prime divisor on  $Y$ .*

## B.2 Plurisubharmonic functions

Let  $X$  be a complex space.

Given a function  $f: X \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$ , we define

$$f^*: X \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty], \quad f^*(x) = \overline{\lim}_{X^{\text{Reg}} \ni y \rightarrow x} f(y)$$

**Definition B.2.1** A function  $\varphi: X \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  is *plurisubharmonic* if

- (1)  $\varphi$  is not identically  $-\infty$  on any irreducible component of  $X$ ;
- (2) For any  $x \in X$ , there is an open neighbourhood  $V$  of  $x$  in  $X$ , a domain  $\Omega \subseteq \mathbb{C}^N$ , a closed immersion  $V \hookrightarrow \Omega$  and a plurisubharmonic function  $\tilde{\varphi} \in \text{PSH}(\Omega)$  such that  $\varphi|_{\Omega \cap V} = \tilde{\varphi}|_{\Omega \cap V}$ .

The set of plurisubharmonic functions on  $X$  is denoted by  $\text{PSH}(X)$ .

Similarly, if  $\theta$  is a smooth closed<sup>1</sup> real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ , then a function  $\varphi: X \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  is  *$\theta$ -plurisubharmonic* if for any  $x \in X$ , there is an open neighbourhood  $V$  of  $x$  in  $X$ , a domain  $\Omega \subseteq \mathbb{C}^N$ , a closed immersion  $V \hookrightarrow \Omega$  and a smooth function  $g$  on  $\Omega$  such that  $\theta = (\text{dd}^c g)|_{V \cap \Omega}$  and  $g + \varphi|_V \in \text{PSH}(V)$ .

thm:FN

**Theorem B.2.1 (Fornaess–Narasimhan)** *Let  $\varphi: X \rightarrow [-\infty, \infty)$  be a function. Assume that  $\varphi$  is not identically  $-\infty$  on any irreducible component of  $X$ , then the following are equivalent:*

- (1)  $\varphi$  is *psh*;

<sup>1</sup> Here *closed* means that locally  $\theta$  is defined by a closed form under a local embedding.

- (2)  $\varphi$  is usc and for any morphism  $f: \Delta \rightarrow X$  from the open unit disk  $\Delta$  in  $\mathbb{C}$  to  $X$  such that  $f^*\varphi$  is not identically  $-\infty$ , the pull-back  $f^*\varphi$  is psh.

If further more  $X$  is unibranch, then these conditions are equivalent to

- (3)  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X^{\text{Reg}})$ , locally bounded from above near  $X^{\text{Sing}}$  and  $\varphi = \varphi^*$ .

See [FN80] and [Dem85, Section 1.8].

cor:PSH

**Corollary B.2.1** Let  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  be a proper bimeromorphic morphism between compact Kähler spaces. Let  $\theta$  be a smooth closed real  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . Assume that  $X$  is unibranch, then the pull-back induces a bijection

$$\pi^*: \text{PSH}(X, \theta) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{PSH}(Y, \pi^*\theta).$$

See [Dem85, Théorème 1.7] for the details.

### B.3 Extension of the results in the smooth setting

Let  $X$  be an irreducible unibranch compact Kähler space of dimension  $n$ . Let  $\theta$  be a closed real smooth  $(1, 1)$ -form on  $X$ . We say the cohomology class  $[\theta]$  is big if for any proper bimeromorphic morphism  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  from a compact Kähler manifold  $Y$ ,  $[\pi^*\theta]$  is big.

The non-pluripolar products can be defined exactly as in Chapter 2 and the results in that chapter holds *mutadis mutandis*.

The results in Chapter 3 can be also be easily extended. The definition of the  $P$ -envelope remains unchanged. As for the  $I$ -envelope, we define

**Definition B.3.1** Given  $\varphi \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$ , we define  $P_\theta[\varphi]_I \in \text{PSH}(X, \theta)$  as the unique element with the following property: if  $\pi: Y \rightarrow X$  is a proper bimeromorphic morphism from a compact Kähler manifold  $Y$ , then

$$\pi^* P_\theta[\varphi]_I = P_{\pi^*\theta}[\pi^*\varphi]_I.$$

It follows from Corollary B.2.1 and Proposition 3.2.5 that  $P_\theta[\varphi]_I$  is independent of the choice of  $\pi$  and is well-defined. The other results can be easily extended.

Chapter 4 and Chapter 6 can be extended without big changes. The only exception is Theorem 6.2.6, where we do not have the notion of multiplier ideal sheaves. So we do not know how to extend this theorem.

Chapter 7 can be extended except for Section 7.3 for the same reason as above.

The trace operator defined in Chapter 8 can be extended as long as  $Y$  is not contained in  $X^{\text{Sing}}$  using the embedded resolution. In general, due to the lack of Demailly regularization, we do not know how to define the trace operator.

Chapter 9 is unchanged, since we always take projective limits with respect to all models in that section.

Chapter 10 can be extended easily.

**Chapter 11** is easy to extend since the partial Okounkov bodies are bimeromorphically invariant in the sense of **Theorem 11.4.2**.

**Chapter 13** can be extended except for the parts involving the trace operator.

I do not know how to extend the results in **Chapter 5** and **Chapter 12** to the singular setting.



# Comments

chap:history

Here we recall the origin of various results.

## Chapter 1.

The extension theorem [Theorem 1.2.1](#) was proved in [\[GR56\]](#). In fact, they proved a more general version for complex spaces. See their Satz 3 and Satz 4. Here we reproduce their arguments almost word by word for the convenience of the readers.

The plurifine topology was introduced by Bedford–Taylor [\[BT87\]](#) based on Caran’s works on the fine topology. This area lacks a rigorous foundation until the appearance of [\[EMW06\]](#), giving the first proof of [Theorem 1.3.2](#).

The strong openness was first established by Guan–Zhou [\[GZ15\]](#). The first proof which I can understand was due to Hiep [\[Hie14\]](#).

The idea of [Theorem 1.4.3](#) first appeared in the ground-breaking work of Boucksom–Favre–Jonsson [\[BFJ08\]](#).

[Proposition 1.2.6](#) was due to Kiselman [\[Kis78\]](#).

The semicontinuity theorem was due to Siu [\[Siu74\]](#).

**Chapter 2** The Monge–Ampère operators for bound plurisubharmonic functions were introduced by Bedford–Taylor [\[BT76, BT82\]](#). The non-pluripolar product is due to Bedford–Taylor [\[BT87\]](#), Guedj–Zeriahi [\[GZ07\]](#) and Boucksom–Eyssidieux–Guedj–Zeriahi [\[BEGZ10\]](#).

## Chapter 3

The notion of the  $P$ -envelope is due to Ross–Witt Nyström [\[RWN14\]](#) based on the ideas of Rashkovskii–Sigurdsson [\[RS05\]](#).

The  $I$ -envelope was introduced by Darvas–Xia [\[DX22\]](#), inspired by the work of Dano Kim [\[Kim15\]](#) and Boucksom–Favre–Jonsson [\[BFJ08\]](#).

## Chapter 4

The notion of weak geodesics was studied in detail by Darvas [\[Da17\]](#) in the Kähler case.

The case of general big classes was partly handled in [\[DDNL18fullma\]](#), [\[DDNL18big\]](#), [\[DDNL18c\]](#), [\[DDNL18a\]](#). However, the key fact that the geodesics between two full mass potentials have the correct limit at the end points does not seem to have been proved in any references. We give a proof in [Proposition 4.3.1](#). We also extend the relevant results to the relative setting.

Previously, [Proposition 4.3.2](#) and [Proposition 4.3.4](#) were only known in the Kähler case. The proofs in the big case are kind of involved. The original treatment of Darvas in [\[Dar17, Lemma 3.1\]](#) in the Kähler setting is slightly flawed. In the Kähler setting, [\[Dar17, Lemma 3.1\]](#) can be fixed by requiring better regularity of  $u_0$  and  $u_1$ . In the big setting, the hidden difficulty becomes essential. This explains our long proof of [Proposition 4.3.2](#).

### Chapter 5

The toric framework was first written down by Coman–Guedj–Sahin–Zeriahi in [\[CGSZ19\]](#).

The beautiful theorem [Theorem 5.2.1](#) was first proved by Yi Yao, who did not publish the result. Later on, a new proof was found by Botero–Burgos Gil–Holmes–de Jong [\[BBGHdJ21\]](#). We chose to present the approach of Yao, which integrates naturally with our framework.

### Chapter 6

The notion of  $P$ - and  $I$ -partial orders are new, as well as most results in [Section 6.1](#).

The  $d_S$ -pseudometric was introduced in [\[DDNLmetric\]](#). The basic properties are proved in [\[DDNL21b\]](#) and [\[Xia21\]](#).

[Theorem 6.2.4](#) is proved in [\[Xia22b\]](#). [Theorem 6.2.6](#) and [Theorem 6.2.5](#) appear to be new. These results appeared previously in the form of lecture notes.

### Chapter 7

The notion of  $I$ -good singularities was due to [\[DX21\]](#). The name  *$I$ -good* was chosen in [\[Xia22b\]](#).

[Theorem 7.1.1](#) and [Eq. \(7.4\)](#) are due to [\[DX21, DX22\]](#).

### Chapter 8

The trace operator was introduced in [\[DX24\]](#). Here we present a different point of view. [Theorem 8.3.1](#) was proved in [\[DX24\]](#).

The analytic Bertini theorem [Theorem 8.4.1](#) was proved in [\[Xia22a\]](#), based on the works of Matsumura–Fujino [\[FM21\]](#) and [\[Fuj23\]](#). A weaker result was established by Meng–Zhou [\[MZ23\]](#).

### Chapter 9

The application of b-divisors in pluripotential theory begins with [\[BFJ09\]](#). The intersection theory of nef b-divisors was introduced by Dang–Favre [\[DF20\]](#). The technique of singularity b-divisors was due to [\[Xia23c\]](#) and [\[Xia22b\]](#).

### Chapter 10

The technique of test curves originates from [\[RWN14\]](#). It was generalized by Darvas–Di Nezza–Lu [\[DDNL18a\]](#), [\[DX21\]](#), [\[DZ22\]](#) and [\[DXZ23\]](#). The proofs in these literature omit some non-trivial details when the underlying cohomology class is not ample. We give the full details.

Test curves in [Definition 10.1.1](#) is called *maximal test curves* in the literature, a terminology which I do not like. I prefer to call the usual notion of test curves in the literature *sub-test curves*.

Results in [Section 10.4](#) are easy generalizations of the results proved in [\[Xia23b\]](#).

### Chapter 11

The algebraic theory of partial Okounkov bodies was developed in [Xia21]. The transcendental Okounkov body was first defined by Deng [Deng17] as suggested by Demailly. The volume identity was proved in [DRWN<sup>+</sup>23]. The transcendental theory of partial Okounkov bodies is new. Results in Section 11.6 are also new.

### Chapter 12

The whole chapter appears to be new. The study of toric pluripotential theory on big line bundles was made possible by the development of partial Okounkov bodies. The key result is Theorem 12.2.2.

The toric situation of the trace operator Proposition 12.2.6 resulted from a discussion with Yi Yao.

### Chapter 13

Most results from this chapter are from [Xia23Operations]. Results from Section 13.3 are new, although the main idea was already contained in [Xia21].



## References

- BB13. Robert J. Berman and Bo Berndtsson. Real Monge-Ampère equations and Kähler-Ricci solitons on toric log Fano varieties. *Ann. Fac. Sci. Toulouse Math.* (6), 22(4):649–711, 2013.
- BBGHdJ21. A. Botero, J. I. Burgos Gil, D. Holmes, and R. de Jong. Chern–Weil and Hilbert–Samuel formulae for singular hermitian line bundles, 2021.
- BEGZ10. Sébastien Boucksom, Philippe Eyssidieux, Vincent Guedj, and Ahmed Zeriahi. Monge-Ampère equations in big cohomology classes. *Acta Math.*, 205(2):199–262, 2010.
- BFJ08. Sébastien Boucksom, Charles Favre, and Mattias Jonsson. Valuations and plurisubharmonic singularities. *Publ. Res. Inst. Math. Sci.*, 44(2):449–494, 2008.
- BFJ09. Sébastien Boucksom, Charles Favre, and Mattias Jonsson. Differentiability of volumes of divisors and a problem of Teissier. *J. Algebraic Geom.*, 18(2):279–308, 2009.
- BGPS14. José Ignacio Burgos Gil, Patrice Philippon, and Martín Sombra. Arithmetic geometry of toric varieties. Metrics, measures and heights. *Astérisque*, pages vi+222, 2014.
- BM97. Edward Bierstone and Pierre D. Milman. Canonical desingularization in characteristic zero by blowing up the maximum strata of a local invariant. *Invent. Math.*, 128(2):207–302, 1997.
- Bon98. Laurent Bonavero. Inégalités de morse holomorphes singulières. *J. Geom. Anal.*, 8(3):409–425, 1998.
- Bou02. S. Boucksom. *Cônes positifs des variétés complexes compactes*. PhD thesis, Université Joseph-Fourier-Grenoble I, 2002.
- Bou02b. Sébastien Boucksom. On the volume of a line bundle. *Internat. J. Math.*, 13(10):1043–1063, 2002.
- Bou17. Sébastien Boucksom. Singularities of plurisubharmonic functions and multiplier ideals. <http://sebastien.boucksom.perso.math.cnrs.fr/notes/L2.pdf>, 2017.
- BT76. Eric Bedford and B. A. Taylor. The Dirichlet problem for a complex Monge-Ampère equation. *Invent. Math.*, 37(1):1–44, 1976.
- BT82. Eric Bedford and B. A. Taylor. A new capacity for plurisubharmonic functions. *Acta Math.*, 149(1-2):1–40, 1982.
- BT87. Eric Bedford and B. A. Taylor. Fine topology, Šilov boundary, and  $(dd^c)^n$ . *J. Funct. Anal.*, 72(2):225–251, 1987.
- CDG03. David M. J. Calderbank, Liana David, and Paul Gauduchon. The Guillemin formula and Kähler metrics on toric symplectic manifolds. *J. Symplectic Geom.*, 1(4):767–784, 2003.
- CDM17. JunYan Cao, Jean-Pierre Demailly, and Shin-ichi Matsumura. A general extension theorem for cohomology classes on non reduced analytic subspaces. *Sci. China Math.*, 60(6):949–962, 2017.

- CFKLS17 CFK<sup>+</sup>17. Ciro Ciliberto, Michal Farnik, Alex Küronya, Victor Lozovanu, Joaquim Roé, and Constantin Shramov. Newton-Okounkov bodies sprouting on the valuative tree. *Rend. Circ. Mat. Palermo* (2), 66(2):161–194, 2017.
- CGSZ19 CGSZ19. Dan Coman, Vincent Guedj, Sibel Sahin, and Ahmed Zeriahi. Toric pluripotential theory. *Ann. Polon. Math.*, 123(1):215–242, 2019.
- CLS11 CLS11. David A. Cox, John B. Little, and Henry K. Schenck. *Toric varieties*, volume 124 of *Graduate Studies in Mathematics*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2011.
- Da17 Dar17. Tamás Darvas. Weak geodesic rays in the space of Kähler potentials and the class  $\mathcal{E}(X, \omega)$ . *J. Inst. Math. Jussieu*, 16(4):837–858, 2017.
- DDNL18big DDNL18a. Tamás Darvas, Eleonora Di Nezza, and Chinh H. Lu.  $L^1$  metric geometry of big cohomology classes. *Ann. Inst. Fourier (Grenoble)*, 68(7):3053–3086, 2018.
- DDNL18mono DDNL18b. Tamás Darvas, Eleonora Di Nezza, and Chinh H. Lu. Monotonicity of nonpluripolar products and complex Monge-Ampère equations with prescribed singularity. *Anal. PDE*, 11(8):2049–2087, 2018.
- DDNL18fullmass DDNL18c. Tamás Darvas, Eleonora Di Nezza, and Chinh H. Lu. On the singularity type of full mass currents in big cohomology classes. *Compos. Math.*, 154(2):380–409, 2018.
- DDNL19log DDNL21a. Tamás Darvas, Eleonora Di Nezza, and Chinh H. Lu. Log-concavity of volume and complex Monge-Ampère equations with prescribed singularity. *Math. Ann.*, 379(1-2):95–132, 2021.
- DDNLmetric DDNL21b. Tamás Darvas, Eleonora Di Nezza, and Hoang-Chinh Lu. The metric geometry of singularity types. *J. Reine Angew. Math.*, 771:137–170, 2021.
- DDNLsurv DDNL23. Tamás Darvas, Eleonora Di Nezza, and Chinh H. Lu. Relative pluripotential theory on compact kähler manifolds, 2023.
- Dem85 Dem85. Jean-Pierre Demailly. Mesures de Monge-Ampère et caractérisation géométrique des variétés algébriques affines. *Mém. Soc. Math. France (N.S.)*, page 124, 1985.
- Dem12 Dem12a. Jean-Pierre Demailly. *Analytic methods in algebraic geometry*, volume 1 of *Surveys of Modern Mathematics*. International Press, Somerville, MA; Higher Education Press, Beijing, 2012.
- DemBook Dem12b. Jean-Pierre Demailly. *Complex analytic and differential geometry*, 2012. Available on personal website, [link](#).
- Dem15 Dem15. Jean-Pierre Demailly. On the cohomology of pseudoeffective line bundles. In *Complex geometry and dynamics*, volume 10 of *Abel Symp.*, pages 51–99. Springer, Cham, 2015.
- Deng17 Den17. Ya Deng. Transcendental Morse inequality and generalized Okounkov bodies. *Algebr. Geom.*, 4(2):177–202, 2017.
- DF20 DF22. Nguyen-Bac Dang and Charles Favre. Intersection theory of nef  $b$ -divisor classes. *Compos. Math.*, 158(7):1563–1594, 2022.
- EGAIV-2 DG65. J. Dieudonné and A. Grothendieck. *Éléments de géométrie algébrique: IV. Étude locale des schémas et des morphismes de schémas, Seconde partie*, volume 24. Institut des hautes études scientifiques, 1965.
- DPS01 DPS01. Jean-Pierre Demailly, Thomas Peternell, and Michael Schneider. Pseudo-effective line bundles on compact Kähler manifolds. *Internat. J. Math.*, 12(6):689–741, 2001.
- DRWNXZ DRWN<sup>+</sup>23. Tamás Darvas, Rémi Reboulet, David Witt Nyström, Mingchen Xia, and Kewei Zhang. Transcendental okounkov bodies, 2023.
- DX21 DX21. T. Darvas and M. Xia. The volume of pseudoeffective line bundles and partial equilibrium. *Geometry & Topology (to appear)*, 2021.
- DX22 DX22. Tamás Darvas and Mingchen Xia. The closures of test configurations and algebraic singularity types. *Adv. Math.*, 397:Paper No. 108198, 56, 2022.
- DX24 DX24. Tamás Darvas and Mingchen Xia. The trace operator of quasi-plurisubharmonic functions on compact Kähler manifolds, 2024.
- DXZ23 DXZ23. Tamás Darvas, Mingchen Xia, and Kewei Zhang. A transcendental approach to non-Archimedean metrics of pseudoeffective classes, 2023.
- DZ22 DZ22. T. Darvas and K. Zhang. Twisted kähler-einstein metrics in big classes, 2022.

- ELMNP05. ELM\*05. L. Ein, R. Lazarsfeld, M. Mustață, M. Nakamaye, and M. Popa. Asymptotic invariants of line bundles. *Pure Appl. Math. Q.*, 1(2):379–403, 2005.
- EMSW06. EMW06. Said El Marzguioui and Jan Wiegerinck. The pluri-fine topology is locally connected. *Potential Anal.*, 25(3):283–288, 2006.
- Fig17. Fig17. Alessio Figalli. *The Monge-Ampère equation and its applications*. Zurich Lectures in Advanced Mathematics. European Mathematical Society (EMS), Zürich, 2017.
- Fin22. Fin22. Siarhei Finski. On the metric structure of section ring, 2022.
- FK18. FK18. Kazuhiro Fujiwara and Fumiharu Kato. *Foundations of rigid geometry. I*. EMS Monographs in Mathematics. European Mathematical Society (EMS), Zürich, 2018.
- FM21. FM21. Osamu Fujino and Shin-ichi Matsumura. Injectivity theorem for pseudo-effective line bundles and its applications. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. Ser. B*, 8:849–884, 2021.
- FN80. FsN80. John Erik Fornæss and Raghavan Narasimhan. The Levi problem on complex spaces with singularities. *Math. Ann.*, 248(1):47–72, 1980.
- Fuj23. Fuj23. Osamu Fujino. Relative Bertini type theorem for multiplier ideal sheaves. *Osaka J. Math.*, 60(1):207–226, 2023.
- GK20. GK20. Patrick Graf and Tim Kirschner. Finite quotients of three-dimensional complex tori. *Ann. Inst. Fourier (Grenoble)*, 70(2):881–914, 2020.
- GR56. GR56. Hans Grauert and Reinhold Remmert. Plurisubharmonische Funktionen in komplexen Räumen. *Math. Z.*, 65:175–194, 1956.
- CAS. GR84. Hans Grauert and Reinhold Remmert. *Coherent analytic sheaves*, volume 265 of *Grundlehren der mathematischen Wissenschaften [Fundamental Principles of Mathematical Sciences]*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1984.
- SHC6. Gro60. Alexander Grothendieck. Techniques de construction en géométrie analytique. VI. étude locale des morphismes: germes d’espaces analytiques, platitude, morphismes simples. *Séminaire Henri Cartan*, 13(1):1–13, 1960.
- Gui94. Gui94. Victor Guillemin. Kaehler structures on toric varieties. *J. Differential Geom.*, 40(2):285–309, 1994.
- GZ07. GZ07. Vincent Guedj and Ahmed Zeriahi. The weighted Monge-Ampère energy of quasi-plurisubharmonic functions. *J. Funct. Anal.*, 250(2):442–482, 2007.
- GZ15. GZ15. Qi’an Guan and Xiangyu Zhou. Effectiveness of Demailly’s strong openness conjecture and related problems. *Invent. Math.*, 202(2):635–676, 2015.
- GZ17. GZ17. Vincent Guedj and Ahmed Zeriahi. *Degenerate complex Monge-Ampère equations*, volume 26 of *EMS Tracts in Mathematics*. European Mathematical Society (EMS), Zürich, 2017.
- Har. Har13. R. Hartshorne. *Algebraic geometry*, volume 52 of *GTM*. Springer Science & Business Media, 2013.
- Hiep14. Hie14. Pham Hoang Hiep. The weighted log canonical threshold. *C. R. Math. Acad. Sci. Paris*, 352(4):283–288, 2014.
- Hir75. Hir75. Heisuke Hironaka. Flattening theorem in complex-analytic geometry. *Amer. J. Math.*, 97:503–547, 1975.
- His12. His12. Tomoyuki Hisamoto. Restricted Bergman kernel asymptotics. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 364(7):3585–3607, 2012.
- HK76. HK76. W. K. Hayman and P. B. Kennedy. *Subharmonic functions. Vol. I*, volume No. 9 of *London Mathematical Society Monographs*. Academic Press [Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Publishers], London-New York, 1976.
- HPS18. HPS18. C. Hacon, M. Popa, and C. Schnell. Algebraic fiber spaces over abelian varieties: around a recent theorem by Cao and Păun. In *Local and global methods in algebraic geometry*, volume 712 of *Contemp. Math.*, pages 143–195. Amer. Math. Soc., [Providence], RI, 2018.
- Kho92. Kho92. A. G. Khovanskii. The Newton polytope, the Hilbert polynomial and sums of finite sets. *Funktsional. Anal. i Prilozhen.*, 26(4):57–63, 96, 1992.
- Kim15. Kim15. Dano Kim. Equivalence of plurisubharmonic singularities and Siu-type metrics. *Monatsh. Math.*, 178(1):85–95, 2015.
- Kis78. Kis78. Christer O. Kiselman. The partial Legendre transformation for plurisubharmonic functions. *Invent. Math.*, 49(2):137–148, 1978.

- KK12. Kiumars Kaveh and A. G. Khovanskii. Newton-Okounkov bodies, semigroups of integral points, graded algebras and intersection theory. *Ann. of Math. (2)*, 176(2):925–978, 2012.
- LM09. Robert Lazarsfeld and Mircea Mustață. Convex bodies associated to linear series. *Ann. Sci. Éc. Norm. Supér. (4)*, 42(5):783–835, 2009.
- Mat89. Hideyuki Matsumura. *Commutative ring theory*, volume 8 of *Cambridge Studies in Advanced Mathematics*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, second edition, 1989. Translated from the Japanese by M. Reid.
- MM07. Xiaonan Ma and George Marinescu. *Holomorphic Morse inequalities and Bergman kernels*, volume 254 of *Progress in Mathematics*. Birkhäuser Verlag, Basel, 2007.
- MZ23. Xiankui Meng and Xiangyu Zhou. On the restriction formula. *J. Geom. Anal.*, 33(12):Paper No. 369, 30, 2023.
- PT18. Mihai Păun and Shigeharu Takayama. Positivity of twisted relative pluricanonical bundles and their direct images. *J. Algebraic Geom.*, 27(2):211–272, 2018.
- Rau15. Hossein Raufi. Singular hermitian metrics on holomorphic vector bundles. *Ark. Mat.*, 53(2):359–382, 2015.
- Roc70. R. Tyrrell Rockafellar. *Convex analysis*. Princeton Mathematical Series, No. 28. Princeton University Press, Princeton, N.J., 1970.
- RS05. Alexander Rashkovskii and Ragnar Sigurdsson. Green functions with singularities along complex spaces. *Internat. J. Math.*, 16(4):333–355, 2005.
- RWN14. Julius Ross and David Witt Nyström. Analytic test configurations and geodesic rays. *J. Symplectic Geom.*, 12(1):125–169, 2014.
- Sch14. Rolf Schneider. *Convex bodies: the Brunn-Minkowski theory*, volume 44 of *Encyclopedia of Mathematics and its Applications*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1993.
- Siu74. Yum Tong Siu. Analyticity of sets associated to Lelong numbers and the extension of closed positive currents. *Invent. Math.*, 27:53–156, 1974.
- Wlo09. J. Włodarczyk. Resolution of singularities of analytic spaces. In *Proceedings of Gökova Geometry-Topology Conference 2008, Gökova Geometry/Topology Conference (GGT)*, pages 31–63, 2009.
- WN14. David Witt Nyström. Transforming metrics on a line bundle to the Okounkov body. *Ann. Sci. Éc. Norm. Supér. (4)*, 47(6):1111–1161, 2014.
- Xia20. M. Xia. Pluripotential-theoretic stability thresholds, 2020.
- Xia21. M. Xia. Partial Okounkov bodies and Duistermaat–Heckman measures of non-Archimedean metrics, 2021.
- XiaBer. Mingchen Xia. Analytic Bertini theorem. *Math. Z.*, 302(2):1171–1176, 2022.
- Xia22. Mingchen Xia. Non-pluripolar products on vector bundles and Chern–Weil formulae. *Math. Ann.*, 2022.
- Xia23Mabuchi. Mingchen Xia. Mabuchi geometry of big cohomology classes. *J. Reine Angew. Math.*, 798:261–292, 2023.
- Xia23Operations. Mingchen Xia. Operations on transcendental non-Archimedean metrics, 2023.
- Xia23c. Mingchen Xia. Pluripotential-theoretic stability thresholds. *Int. Math. Res. Not. IMRN*, pages 12324–12382, 2023.